2641A
2645A
2645S/N
Display Station
Reference Manual

HEWLETT hp PACKARD

2641A
2645A
2645S/N
Display Station
Reference Manual

HEWLETT hp PACKARD

HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY
19400 HOMESTEAD ROAD, CUPERTINO, CALIFORNIA, 95014

ART NO. 02645-90005

Printed in U.S.A. 11/78

PREFACE

This manual contains detailed programming and accessory information for the HP 2641A, HP 2645A, HP 2645S, and HP 2645N Display Terminals. It is written to provide a system programmer with the information needed to use the terminal in a variety of applications. Extensive information explaining the operation of the terminal's data communication function is provided in a separate section.

The HP 2641A terminal allows the user to access either the ASCII or APL character sets. A discussion of APL characters and APL terminal operation is given in the various sections where applicable.

The HP 2645S terminals use special Swedish/Finnish character sets for both the keyboard and display characters. The HP 2645N terminals use special Norwegian/Danish character sets for both the keyboard and display characters. The graphic symbols for some of the ASCII character codes have been changed to provide these special character graphics.

The programming functions selected by these ASCII codes remain the same. All references in this manual to ASCII characters used in escape or control sequences will use the standard ASCII character graphic. A table of the changed character graphics for the HP 2645S and HP 2645N is given below.

OCTAL VALUE	DECIMAL VALUE	ASCII GRAPHIC	2645S GRAPHIC	2645N GRAPHIC
133	91	[	Ä	AE
134	92	\	Ö	Ø
135	93	]	Å	Å
36	94	^	^	Ü
173	123	{	ä	ae
174	124	|	ö	ø
175	125	}	å	å
176	126	~	—	ü

In addition, the placement of characters on the terminal keyboard has been altered on the HP 2641A and HP 2645S terminals to accommodate the new graphic characters. Additional information on the HP 2641A, HP 2645S, and HP 2645N is contained in the respective *User Manual.*

This manual assumes that you are already familiar with operating the terminal from the keyboard. Operating information is given in the following manuals:

2641A —*HP 2641A Display Station User's Manual* (02645-90001).

2645A —*HP 2645A Display Station User's Manual* (02645-90005).

2645S —*HP 2645S Display Station User's Manual* (02645-90024).

2645N —*HP 2645N Display Station User's/Reference Manual Supplement* (02645-90044).

The *HP 2641A, HP 2645A, HP 2645S Service Manual* (02645-90003), and the *HP 2645N Display Station Service Manual Supplement* (02645-90045), provide a discussion of troubleshooting, repair, and theory of operation for all of the above terminals.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

This manual describes all of the terminal's programmable features. The various functional groups such as display control and communications are described in separate sections. If you have not used an HP terminal before you should read Section I for a brief overview of the terminal and its capabilities. If you are familiar with the HP 2645 series terminals you can use the index at the back of the manual to locate answers to specific questions.

This manual is made up of the following sections and appendices (any differences between terminals are covered at the end of the section):

Section I. *General Description* — This section provides a brief description of the terminal, its operating modes, and overall capabilities.

Section II. *Display Memory Functions* — This section contains information for controlling the terminal display. Included are cursor sensing and positioning, fields, edit operations, and display enhancements.

Section III. *Terminal Control Functions* — This section contains information for programmatically controlling the terminal's various switch settings.

Section IV. *Device Control* — This section describes how to control optional input/output devices (cartridge tape drives, printers, etc.)

Section V. *Data Communications* — This section describes the terminal's communication function and gives procedures for configuring the terminal to meet various communication requirements.

Section VI. *Status* — This section describes how to obtain and interpret terminal status.

Section VII. *Installation* — This section contains step-by-step procedures for installing and configuring the terminal and its accessories.

Appendix A. *Applications* — This appendix contains examples of various terminal applications.

Appendix B. *Reference Tables* — This appendix contains condensed reference information for all of the terminal's features.

Appendix C. *Communications Flowcharts* — This appendix contains flowcharts of the communication function.

Appendix D. *Cartridge Tape Rethreading Procedure* — This appendix contains a procedure for re-threading cartridge tapes.

TERMS AND CONVENTIONS

The descriptions in this manual use the following text conventions:

<character>^{c} or CNTL <character> — When a character is shown followed by a superscript c or is shown preceded by the CNTL key, it indicates a control character. Control characters are normally generated from the keyboard by holding the CNTL key down while pressing the character.

Example: G^c = bell character

[<>] — The right and left bracket, less than, and greater than characters are used to set off variable parameters in some escape code sequences. These characters are added for descriptive purposes and are not a part of the escape sequence. They should not be transmitted.

Example: Esc & p [<"from" device code>s]

CONTENTS

ILLUSTRATIONS

TABLES

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

SECTION I

INTRODUCTION

The Display Station (hereinafter referred to as a terminal) uses a microprocessor under firmware control. It operates in character or block mode, with full editing capability. The terminal is designed for such applications as data entry and preparation, information display and editing, interactive programming, data communications, and time-sharing operations.

In addition to the features of the basic terminal, option 007 provides an integrated mass storage capability of up to 220 kilobytes of data using two tape cartridges. This terminal is designed particularly for stand-alone or on-line operation. For example, forms designed at the terminal using the line drawing and/or other character sets can be stored on a tape cartridge and selectively retrieved from the keyboard or through commands from a remote computer.

Data communications accessories are also available to provide a choice of communications capability. The standard terminal is teletypewriter compatible (EIA RS232-C serial asynchronous, ASCII, half or full duplex). It operates at speeds up to 9600 bits per second, and transmits either character-by-character as a fully interactive terminal or operates on variable length blocks of information. Optional capabilities include 20mA current loop; and either asynchronous or synchronous polling for multipoint communications networks. Also, the terminal can be used with a wide selection of modems over dialed or leased lines.

A block diagram of the terminal is shown in figure 1-1. The terminal has three major and mechanically independent sections: keyboard, CRT monitor, and mainframe. The specific functional properties of the terminal are determined by firmware programs resident in ROM (read-only-memory). It is these programs, occupying up to 24K bytes of ROM (26K in the 2641A), that make it possible for the terminal to have many powerful features such as self test, dynamic memory allocation, transparent control codes, and off-screen storage.

MAINFRAME

The heart of the system is the mainframe section, which can be considered a microcomputer system. In the mainframe is the power supply and a bus-oriented logic system containing the microprocessor, program and data memory, video display subsystem, keyboard interface, and data communications interface. The basic terminal contains seven slots for options and accessories (five slots in the 2641A). All mainframe modules are functionally, mechanically, and electrically independent, giving a high degree of flexibility and reducing service time.

TERMINAL BUS

A major element of the logic system is the terminal bus (a printed circuit board with connectors) which is attached to the bottom of the mainframe and to the power supply. The bus distributes power to the individual modules and provides data, address, and control lines for communication between the various logic functions. The terminal bus provides communication paths between processor, memory, input/output, and display refresh on a shared basis.

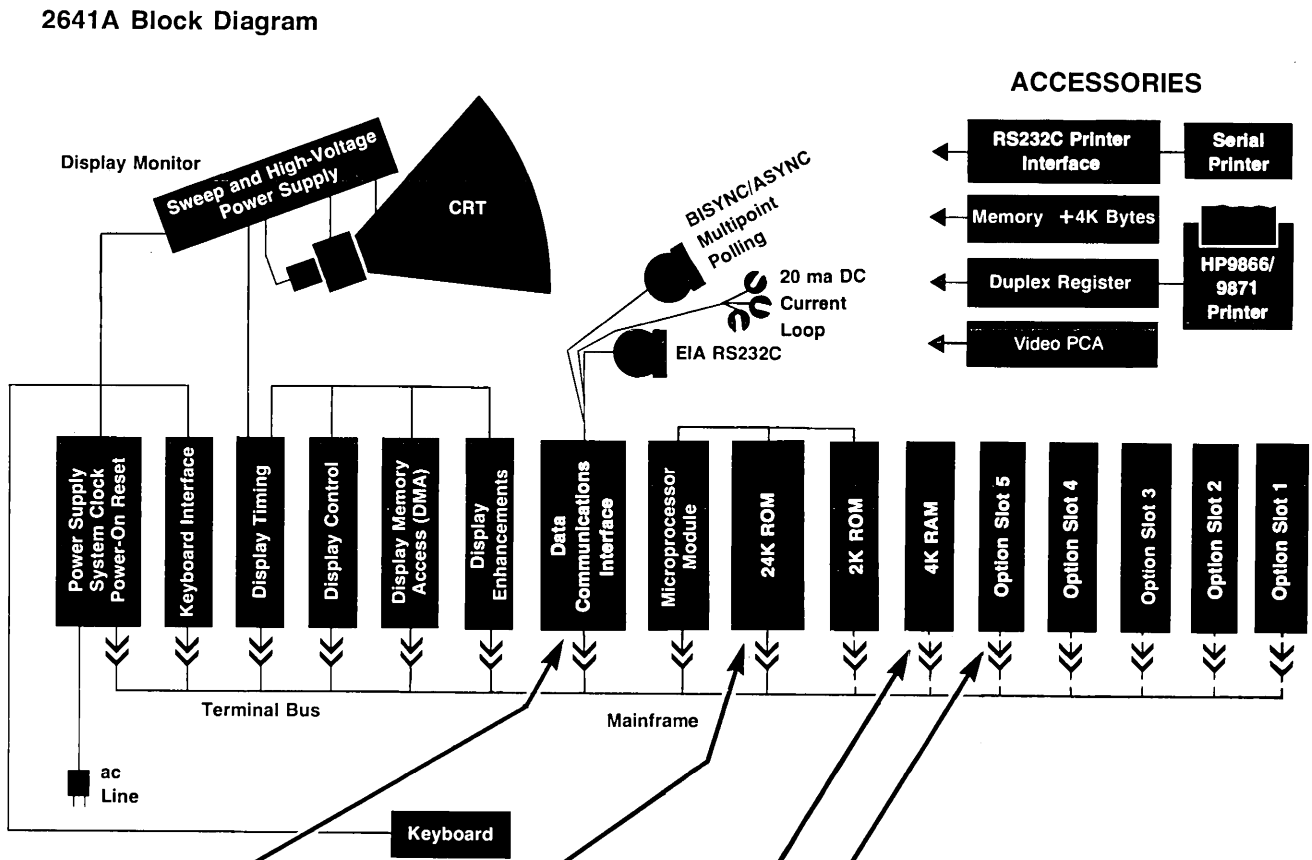
All modules are slot-independent and carry their own select code or memory address. There are only two rules: group the three display modules together, and leave no empty slots between the power supply and the last module. However, the two cartridge tape modules (part of option 007) can be plugged into the connectors on the far end, opposite the power supply.

A bus access cycle begins when a requesting module determines it needs the terminal bus for instruction or data fetch or input/output. If the terminal bus is busy, the requesting module must wait until it is available. To determine who gets the bus next, a priority chain has been incorporated. The modules nearest the power supply are first in the priority chain, and a module wanting the bus next breaks the chain for modules farther away from the power supply.

TERMINAL MEMORY

Like any other computer system, the microcomputer module is useful only if it has a program to execute and memory in which to store data. This is the function of the terminal memory modules, which are two types, read/write or random-access memory (RAM) and read-only memory (ROM). The RAM stores display characters and data; the ROM stores terminal programs (firmware). Terminal programs are called firmware because the ROM makes them more permanent than software but less permanent than hardware. In the terminal three- quarters of the available memory is dedicated to ROM or program memory and the balance of the available memory locations (16K bytes) can be used for RAM. All of the terminal memory is MOS semiconductor memory.

Optional +4K RAM modules are added when more random-access memory is required for display and data storage.



- Choice of Data Communications Capability:
  - Standard Asynchronous
  - Extended Asynchronous (Current Loop)
  - Async. Multipoint
  - Sync. Multipoint (Bisync)
- Microprocessor now controls terminal with 26K ROM providing additional user-oriented features
- Display memory now 4K bytes standard, expandable to 12K bytes maximum.
- Optional cartridge tape drives (also field installable) —Tape electronics requires two option slots—

Figure 1-1. 2641A Architecture

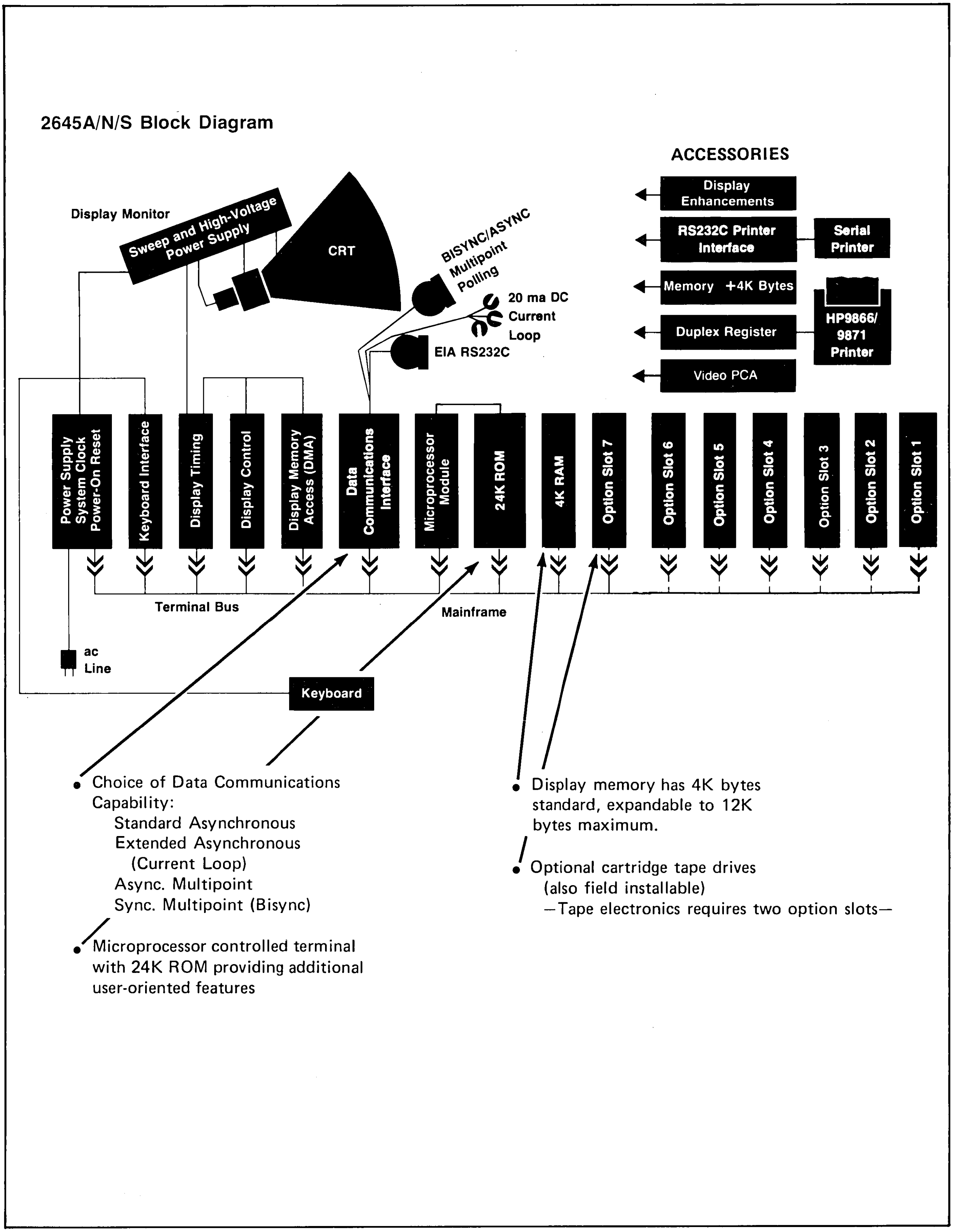


Figure 1-2. 2645A/N/S Architecture

INPUT/OUTPUT MODULES

Also a part of the logic system are several terminal input/output modules: the keyboard interface PCA, the data communications PCA, the eight-bit duplex register PCA (used for the HP 9866A and HP 9871A Printer interface), and the serial printer interface PCA. These never request control of the bus, but all must respond to commands from the microcomputer and its programs.

The basic I/O commands output data or control from the microprocessor and input data or status from the interface module. Each of the I/O cards has different data and control formats, but all are controlled by the microcomputer. Each I/O module has a rear edge connector for the attachment of a connector hood and cable assembly to carry the signals out the back of the terminal.

The display subsystem has two functions that use the bus. Cursor control is an output function and the DMA refresh is a bus requestor for memory read operations.

CRT MONITOR

The CRT monitor section contains sweep and high voltage circuits, the high-resolution, low-profile cathode-ray tube, and fan.

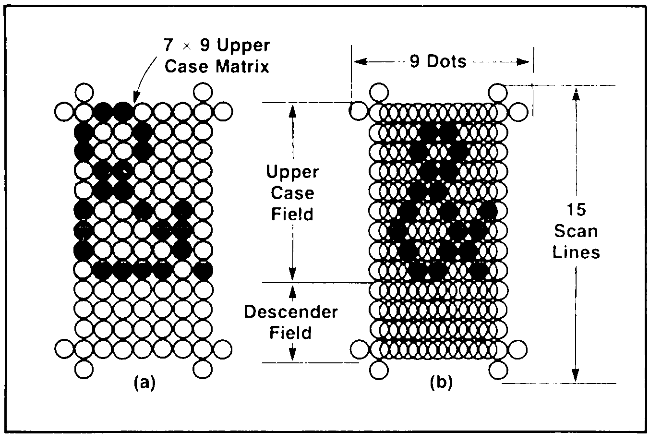
THE RASTER

The terminal uses raster scan deflection method, similar to that used in television sets. In a raster scan display, the electron beam traverses the screen in a series of closely spaced horizontal lines, starting from the top. Characters are formed from line segments and dots produced by turning the beam intensity on and off at appropriate times.

The terminal uses a low-profile CRT to keep overall height to a minimum while maintaining a screen capacity of 1920 characters, partitioned into 24 rows of 80 characters each. All of the character positions are fundamentally rectangles 7 dots wide by 9 scan lines high. Four additional scan lines beneath the 7×9 matrix are used for the descender areas of lower-case characters, for underlining, and for the blinking underscore cursor. One other dot is used on either side for character-to-character spacing, and one scan line is reserved at the top and bottom for row-to-row spacing. This results in a character cell of 9 dots by 15 scan lines replicated over the entire screen area (see figure 1-2).

ALPHANUMERIC AND MICROVECTOR CHARACTER SETS

Two types of character sets can be stored within the terminal: alphanumeric sets and microvector sets. Alphanumeric sets support the primary use of the terminal, displaying textual and numeric information. Characters are designed around a basic 7×9 dot matrix with provision for lower-case descenders. The characters are embellished



by use of the half-shift. With this type of set the character-to-character spacing of two dots is hardwired. This prevents the design of characters that would form continuous horizontal lines. However, all 15 scan lines of the row are available so that vertically contiguous symbol segments can be designed. An example of this is the three-row-high integral sign found in the math symbol set.

Microvector sets use the entire 9-dot-by-15-scan-line character cell without the half-shift. This allows characters to be designed with both horizontal and vertical continuity. This type of set finds its greatest application where a minimal set of graphic kernels is needed to represent more complex pictorial information. The figure on page 3-6 illustrates the use of the line drawing set in representing a form.

DISPLAY FEATURES AND ALTERNATE CHARACTER SETS

The basic 2641A terminal has a repertoire of 64 alphanumeric characters (128 optional), 128 APL characters, 64 overstrike characters, inverse video fields (black characters on white background), half-bright, underline, and blinking fields. One additional 128-character set can be stored in the terminal.

The basic 2645A/N/S Terminal has a repertoire of 64 alphanumeric characters (128 optional) and one display feature, inverse video fields (black characters on white backgrounds). **With the addition of the display enhancements board, up to three additional 128-character sets can be stored within the terminal. Three display features are also added: half-bright, underline, and blinking fields.**

All sixteen possible combinations of the four display features can be applied to any character or characters on the screen. No displayable character positions are required to start, stop, or modify either the features or the character sets. Therefore, consecutive characters on the screen may be from different sets or have different display features.

KEYBOARD

The processor scans the keyboard at discrete intervals for a depressed key. Each key is assigned a position in a matrix of 14 columns and 8 rows. This matrix provides a reference to a look-up table that the firmware uses to display the character and/or send the character code over the data communications line.

THE FIRMWARE

SYSTEM MONITOR

The system monitor is a section of the firmware that dispatches data within the terminal. The processor normally executes a basic loop, in which it scans the keyboard and the data communications interface and waits for something to happen (see figure 1-3). When a character is received from either the keyboard or the data communications interface, a general character interpretation routine is executed to determine the action to be taken. The monitor then performs the specified functions, such as putting a character on the display, transmitting a character over the data communications interface, or moving the cursor. When this has been completed, the monitor returns to the basic scan loop to look for the next input.

The firmware operates under both scan and interrupt methods. The keyboard is scanned at regular intervals, and inputs from the devices such as the data communications interface and cartridge tape units are interrupt driven.

KEYBOARD AND I/O SUBSYSTEM

The I/O subsystem contains the firmware required for performing all input/output functions. The firmware operates under both scan and interrupt methods. The keyboard is scanned at regular intervals, and inputs from the devices such as the data communications interface and cartridge tape units are interrupt driven. If a new key depression is detected, the key number associated with this key is calculated and used as an index into a table that assigns a code to the key. If the key is one of the ASCII keys, the proper code is determined based on the state of the CNTL, SHIFT, and CAPS LOCK keys.

If the key in question is not one of the ASCII keys, the firmware may be required to generate a multiple character sequence consisting of an ASCII escape character followed by one or more characters that define the escape sequence. Keys in a third group do not generate codes at all, but simply perform internal terminal functions, such as BLOCK MODE, REMOTE, and CAPS LOCK.

I/O associated with the display is minimal because the display memory access module (DMA) causes the display to be refreshed without processor intervention. Display I/O control mainly involves transmitting the cursor coordinates to the display whenever necessary.

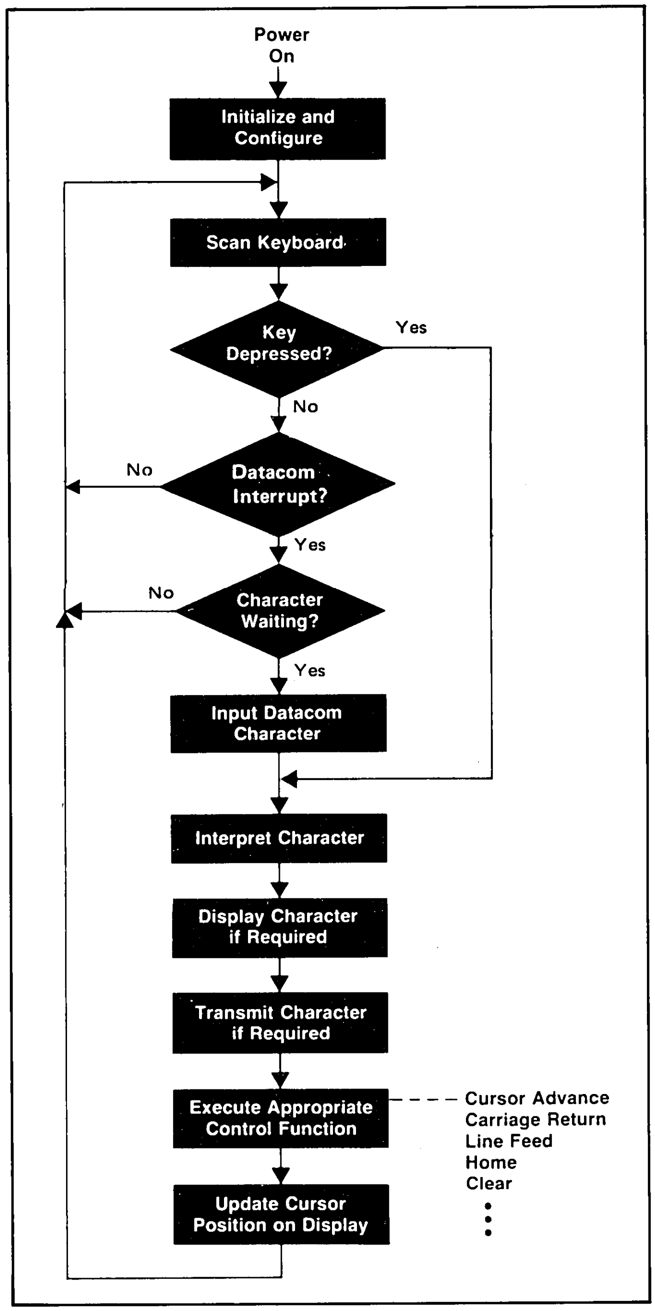


Figure 1-3. System Monitor Basic Loop

CURSOR MOVEMENT

The terminal firmware contains many subroutines for moving the cursor on the display. All cursor movement is handled by the firmware. When a character is typed on the keyboard and appears on the display, the cursor moves to the next column position because a cursor advance subroutine has been executed and has calculated a new cursor position. Similar subroutines exist for moving the cursor up, down, right, left, and home. The tab function is also a firmware routine; it uses a one-bit-per-column table to determine the next tab stop.

DISPLAY MEMORY MANAGEMENT

A large part of the terminal firmware is devoted to management of the display memory. Most conventional terminals use a byte of display memory for every displayable position on the CRT screen. If there are many short lines, as is frequently the case, there is a substantial amount of unused memory. The terminal does not allocate memory for character positions to the right of the last character entered, so this memory is available for other purposes. Turn on and turn off of the various display enhancements and character set selections, or start and end of unprotected fields between individual characters can be accomplished without an intermediate blank character position. With these features, the address of a character occupying a given row and column cannot be directly computed without some sort of scanning process.

The display memory consists basically of a linked list of fixed-sized blocks of RAM (see figure 1-4). This list is set up in such a way that the DMA can start at the first address on the screen and follow the list to produce an entire screen of information. All memory not currently allocated for display use is kept on a free-storage link list. Individual rows are linked with next and preceding rows, while blocks within a row are linked only in a forward direction. The storage allocated for a row may be as little as one block (16 bytes), or much larger than 80 characters, depending upon the number of displayable and non-displayable characters needed to create the row on the CRT.

The firmware finds the address corresponding to a given character position by starting at the last known position and moving through the list either backward or forward until it finds the new address. If the end of the list is found before the row in question has been found, blocks are removed from the free-storage list and used to create new rows. Once the correct row has been found, the firmware searches for the cursor column. If the end of the row is found before the column has been found, additional blocks are removed from the free-storage list and used to build the length of the row out to the column required. Whenever a block is required and free list is empty, an existing row must be released from display memory. This row is the first row of memory if the addition is at the end of memory, and is the last row of memory if a row other than the last row is being lengthened.

DATA COMMUNICATIONS

Data communications in the terminal is both a hardware and a firmware function. The data communications interface is a basic terminal module. This module has the necessary logic to interface the terminal bus to the communication line.

The communication interface accepts parallel data from the terminal, serializes it, and adds framing or synchronizing bits (start and stop). It performs the reverse process on incoming data, converting serial data to parallel and removing start and stop bits. The interface can generate and check parity and can also detect data overruns. A status word keeps the processor informed of the status of the interface.

The terminal firmware for communications has three main functions. First, the program reads the control settings on the keyboard, keyboard interface, and the data communications interface. Second, it processes input characters and transmits output characters. Many decisions are made on incoming characters, especially on control characters. The third function is modem control using control lines on the communications interface. Direct connections to a computer and Bell 103 type modems require a minimum of firmware control while Bell 202 type modems require more control. A more detailed description of the data communications operation is given in Section V.

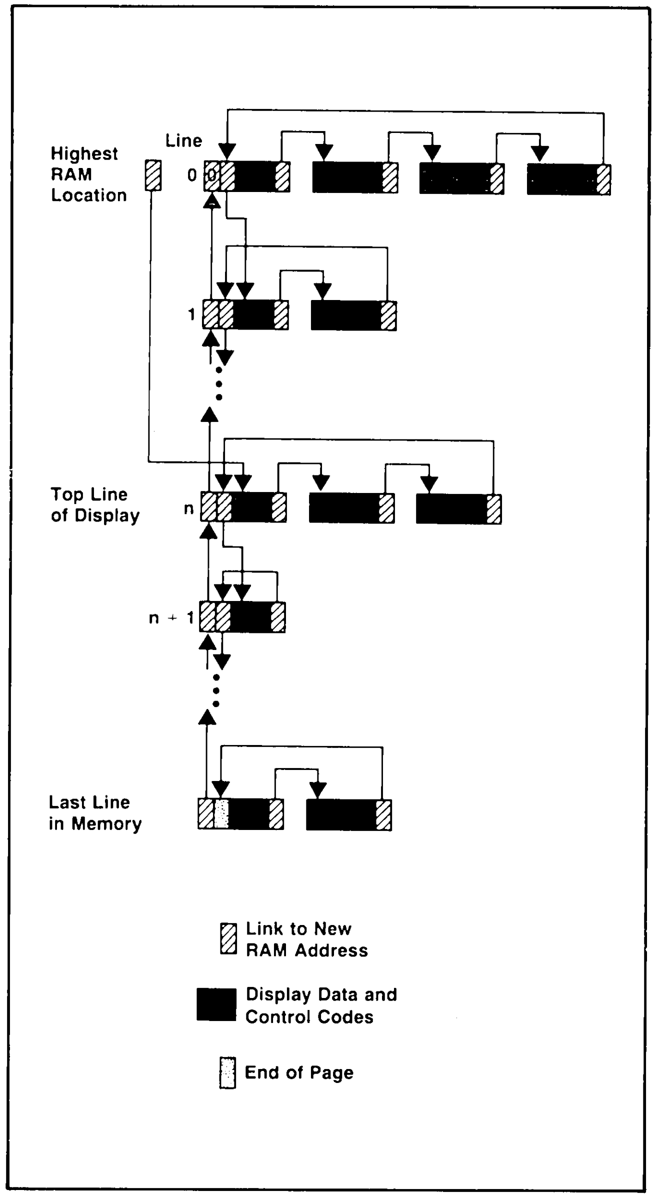


Figure 1-4. Display Memory Linked List Structure

THE TAPE UNITS

Cartridge tape operations is divided between the cartridge tape hardware and firmware. The hardware maintains constant speed and provides for selection of fast or slow speed and the direction of tape motion.

A line of data on the screen is recorded on the tape as a record. The information is stored serially on the tape at a recording density of 800 bits per inch and a read/write speed of 10 inches per second. Data is organized into files, records, bytes, and bits. Separating the files are file marks, special-length gaps (areas of unidirectional magnetization) with a file identification record between them.

Holes are punched at each end of the tape to provide reference for beginning of tape and end of tape. If a hole is detected in the tape, indicating tape location, tape motion is stopped until the firmware commands it to start again.

The hardware encodes and decodes data bytes into bit patterns on the tape and records interrecord gaps. The hardware reacts to commands given by the firmware and presents status information to the firmware.

The firmware controls all tape motion and maintains tape-position information. The firmware dictates whether the hardware is reading, recording, or writing gaps. It formats data into records and generates special tape marks that have significance in organizing the tape into records and files.

DISPLAY MEMORY FUNCTIONS

SECTION II

INTRODUCTION

This section contains information for controlling the terminal's display memory functions. The display memory functions change the position of display data or assign special attributes to blocks or fields of display data. The special attributes alter the way data is displayed or transmitted. These functions consist of the following groups:

- Display Control
- Edit Operations
- Forms Mode
- Display Enhancements
- Alternate Character Sets

The following paragraphs describe how to control the display memory functions from a computer program. Each of the display functions can also be entered from the terminal keyboard or read from a cartridge tape. In addition to escape sequences, most of the display memory functions have been assigned to special keys on the keyboard. Refer to the User's Manual for a description of keyboard functions.

DISPLAY CONTROL

The display control functions are made up of cursor and display positioning operations. The individual functions available are as follows:

- Cursor Sensing
  - Absolute
  - Relative
- Cursor Positioning
  - Absolute Addressing
  - Screen Relative Addressing
  - Cursor Relative Addressing
  - Space
  - Backspace
  - Set Tab
  - Clear Tab
  - Tab
  - Backtab
  - Set Margins
  - Home Up
  - Home Down
- Display Positioning
  - Roll Up
  - Roll Down
  - Next Page
  - Previous Page
  - Display Lock (Memory Lock)

MEMORY ADDRESSING SCHEME

Display memory positions can be addressed using absolute or relative coordinate values. Display memory is made up of 80 columns (0-79) and a number of rows determined by the memory options installed in the terminal. There can be as many as 100 lines of 80 characters (5 screens). The amount of memory in the terminal can be determined from byte 0 of the primary terminal status (refer to Section VI). The types of addressing available are:

- Absolute
- Screen Relative
- Cursor Relative

ROW ADDRESSING. Figure 2-1 illustrates the way the three types of addressing affect row or line numbers. The cursor is shown positioned in the fourth row on the screen. Screen row 0 is currently at row 6 of display memory. In

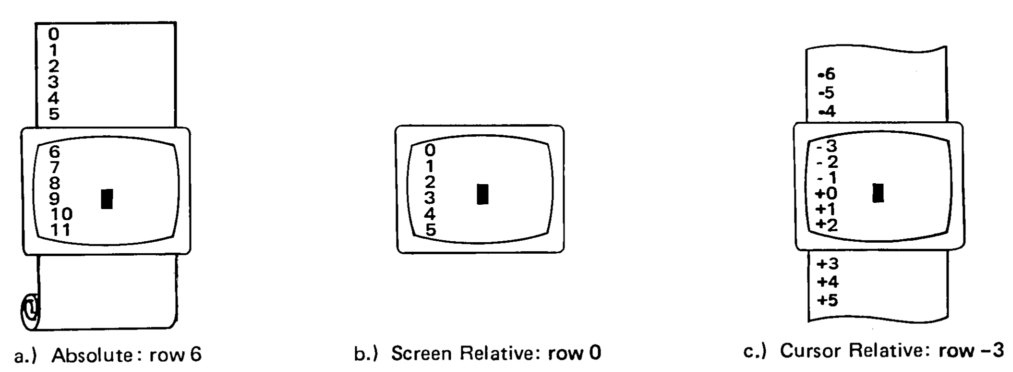


Figure 2-1. Row Addressing

order to reposition the cursor to the first line of the screen the following three destination rows could be used:

a. Absolute: row 6
b. Screen Relative: row 0
c. Cursor Relative: row −3

COLUMN ADDRESSING. Column addressing is accomplished in a manner similar to row addressing. There is no difference between screen and cursor relative column addressing. Figure 2-2 illustrates the difference between absolute and relative addressing. The cursor is shown in column 5.

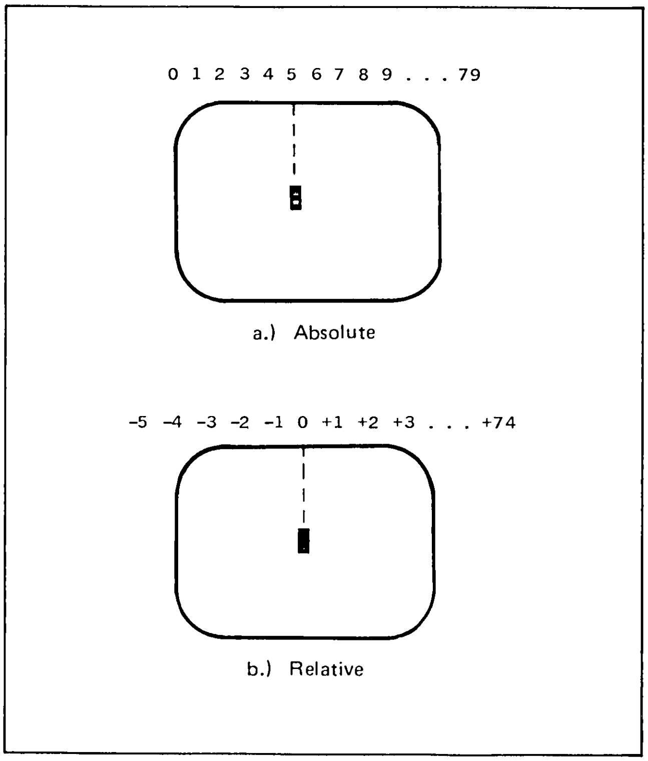


Figure 2-2. Column Addressing

Whenever the row or column addresses exceed those available, the largest possible value is substituted. In screen relative addressing, the cursor cannot be moved to a row position that is not currently displayed. For example, in figure 2-1c a relative row address of −10 would cause the cursor to be positioned at the top of the current screen (relative row −3). Column positions are limited to the available screen positions (0 to 79 in figure 2-2a and −5 to 74 in figure 2-2b). The cursor cannot be wrapped around from column 0 to column 79 by specifying large negative values for relative column positions.

CURSOR SENSING

The current position of the screen cursor can be sensed. The position returned can be the absolute position in display memory or the location relative to the current screen position. (Absolute and relative addresses are discussed under Cursor Addressing.)

Absolute Sensing ESC a

Example: The cursor is at column 20, row 40.

computer: ESC a

terminal: ESC & a 020c 040R

Relative Sensing ESC `

Example: The cursor is again at column 20, row 40, but screen row 0 begins at row 35 of display memory.

computer: ESC `

terminal: ESC & a 020c 005Y

CURSOR POSITIONING

The cursor can be positioned directly by giving memory or screen coordinates, or by sending the escape codes for any of the keyboard cursor positioning operations.

ABSOLUTE ADDRESSING. The cursor can be positioned to any displayable position using absolute coordinates. Absolute cursor positioning is accomplished using the following sequence:

ESC & a <row number> r <column number> C

where: row number is 0 to 255.

Example: Position the cursor at row 35, column 6.

ESC & a 35r 6C
or
ESC & a 6c 35R

Absolute addressing cannot be used while Memory Lock is on.

SCREEN RELATIVE ADDRESSING. The cursor can be positioned to any position currently displayed on the screen by using screen relative coordinates:

ESC & a <screen row number> y
<column number> C

where: the top row of the screen is row 0.

Example: Position the cursor to screen relative row 15, column 53.

ESC & a 15y 53C
or
ESC & a 53c 15Y

CURSOR RELATIVE ADDRESSING. The cursor can be positioned to any displayable position by using cursor relative coordinates. (±row, ±column). Cursor relative addressing cannot be used while Memory Lock is on.

Example: The cursor is currently at row 7 and column 10 of the screen. Move the cursor to row 9 column 6.

```
ESC & a +2r -4C
    or
ESC & a -4c +2R
```

COMBINATIONS OF ABSOLUTE AND RELATIVE ADDRESSING.

Example. Move cursor from its current row down 8 rows and to column 60.

```
ESC & a +8r 60C
    or
ESC & a 60c +8R
```

Example. Move cursor from its current position 15 columns left, and to relative screen row 4.

```
ESC & a 4y -15C
    or
ESC & a -15c 4Y
```

OTHER CURSOR OPERATIONS

In addition to positioning the cursor using coordinates, you can use a variety of keyboard equivalent operations. These operations normally require only one or two characters to be sent to the terminal. Table 2-1 lists each of the operations together with its code and a brief description.

Table 2-1. Cursor/Display Operations

FUNCTION	CODE	DESCRIPTION
Cursor		
Line Feed	LF (J^c)	Move the cursor to the next line.
Return	CR (M^c)	Return the cursor to the left margin, halt I/O operations, and clears messages.
	ESC G	Move cursor to first column of current row.
Backspace	BS (H^c)	Move the cursor one column to the left. If the cursor is in column 0, it remains there.
↑	ESC A	Move the cursor up one row. If the cursor is in row 0, it wraps around to row 23.
↓	ESC B	Move the cursor down one row. If the cursor is in row 23, it wraps around to row 0.
→	ESC C	Move the cursor right one column. If the cursor is in column 79, it wraps around to column 0 of the next row. If the cursor is in row 23, column 79, it wraps around to row 0, column 0.
←	ESC D	Move the cursor left one column. If the cursor is in column 0, it wraps around to column 79 of the previous row. If the cursor is in row 0, column 0, it wraps around to row 23, column 79.
↖	ESC h	Move the cursor to the beginning of the first line of memory (excluding transmit-only fields in Format Mode.)
Home Up Cursor	ESC H	Move cursor to the beginning of the first line in display memory (including transmit only fields in Format Mode).
Home Down Cursor	ESC F	Move the cursor to the beginning of the line following the last data in display memory.
Tabs		
Tab	HT (I^c) or ESC I	Move the cursor forward to the next tab position.
Back Tab	ESC i	Move the cursor back to the previous tab position.
Set Tab	ESC 1	Place a tab at the current cursor column.
Clear Tab	ESC 2	Clear the tab at the current cursor column.
Clear All Tabs	ESC 3	Clear all tabs in display memory.

Table 2-1. Cursor/Display Operations (Continued)

FUNCTION	CODE	DESCRIPTION
Margins		
Set Left Margin	ESC 4	Set the left margin at the current cursor column.
Set Right Margin	ESC 5	Set the right margin at the current cursor column.
Display		
Clear Display	ESC J	Clear display memory from the cursor position to the end of memory.
Clear Remaining Line	ESC K	Clear current line beginning at the column containing the cursor.
Roll Up	ESC S	Roll the screen up one row (until the last row of memory is located at the top of the display). Cursor is stationary.
Roll Down	ESC T	Roll the screen down one row (until the first row of memory is located at the top of the display). Cursor is stationary.
Next Page	ESC U	Display the next 24 rows of memory (until the last row of memory is located at the top of the display). The cursor is moved to the first unprotected location on the new page when in forms mode.
Prev Page	ESC V	Displays the previous 24 rows of memory (until the first row of memory is located at the top of the display). The cursor is moved to the first unprotected location on the new page when in forms mode.
Memory Lock	ESC l	Turn on memory lock (overflow protect). Note that when Memory Lock is on, only screen relative addressing can be used.
	ESC m	Turn off memory lock. Refer to the User Manual for additional information on Memory Lock.

TABS

SETTING TABS. To set a tab, move the cursor to the desired column and send ESC 1. Once a tab is set, the tab function or TAB key can be used to move the cursor to the next tab setting. In Forms Mode, previously set tabs are ignored; however, when Forms Mode is turned off, previously set tabs are in effect.

USING TABS. Once tab positions have been set you can tab in the same manner that you would on a typewriter. You can even tab backwards to the previous tab position by sending ESC i. When you are at the first tab position in a line and you backtab, the cursor moves to the last tab position in the previous line. Once the cursor has reached the first tab position in the first line of memory, no further backtabbing movement can be made.

CLEARING TABS. You can clear individual tabs by moving the cursor to the tab position and send ESC 2. All of the tabs can be cleared at once without having to position the cursor by sending ESC 3.

MARGINS

You can set the left and right margins to make the entry of data easier. When the terminal is turned on or a full reset performed, the margins are set at columns 0 and 79. This gives a full 80 character line. You can define new margins as follows:

LEFT MARGIN. Move the cursor to the desired left margin setting. Send ESC 4.

RIGHT MARGIN. Move the cursor to the desired right margin setting. Send ESC 5.

The terminal will beep when you are eight characters from the right margin. When the right margin is reached, the cursor will move to the left margin of the next line.

Example: Set the margins for a 40 column page centered on the screen.

Move the cursor to column 20 and set the left margin. Move the cursor to column 59 and set the right margin. Place the cursor back at column 20 and begin sending data.

$$\underbrace{\texttt{ESC \& a 20C}}_{\text{position cursor}}\ \underbrace{\texttt{Esc 4}}_{\text{set margin}}\quad \underbrace{\texttt{Esc \& a 59C}}_{\text{position cursor}}\ \underbrace{\texttt{Esc 5}}_{\text{set margin}}$$

```
          column numbers
2         3         4         5         6
0         0         0         0         0
 This is an example using margins to cont
 rol data entry.
```

Margins are cleared or changed by setting new margins (or a full reset) or by entering forms mode, where the margins are reset to columns 0 and 79.

EDIT OPERATIONS

The terminal allows you to edit data displayed on the screen. This can be done by simply overstriking the old data. In addition, several edit operations are available. These edit operations are listed in table 2-2.

INSERT CHARACTER WITH WRAPAROUND

You can insert characters **with** wraparound by sending ESC N. This will cause the INSERT CHAR indicator to blink. While in this mode characters that overflow a line due to insertion are moved to the next line. Sending ESC R returns the terminal to normal operation.

If the current line is full and additional characters are inserted, they will push characters from the end of the first line to the beginning of the next line. If the second line becomes full while the cursor is still in the first line, a blank line will be inserted between line one and two. The characters overflowing line one will then be entered on the new line.

DELETE CHARACTER WITH WRAPAROUND

When characters are deleted using ESC O, one character from the left margin on the next line is moved up to the right margin of the line containing the cursor. If the next line is blank, no wraparound is performed.

When margins are used together with the Delete Character and wraparound operations, the characters to the right of the cursor are moved as shown in figures 2-3 and 2-4.

Table 2-2. Edit Operations

FUNCTION	CODE	DESCRIPTION
Insert Line	ESC L	The line containing the cursor and all lines below it are rolled down one line. A blank line is inserted where the line containing the cursor was. The cursor is moved to the left margin of the blank line.
Delete Line	ESC M	The line containing the cursor is deleted. The lines below the cursor are rolled up and the cursor is positioned at the left margin.
Insert Character	ESC Q	Turn on Insert Character Mode (and indicator). New characters will be inserted in the line at the current cursor position. Characters that are moved past the right margin are lost.
Insert Character with Wraparound	ESC N	Turn on Insert Character with Wraparound (indicator blinks). Characters extending beyond the right margin are wrapped to the next line. Refer to the User Manual for additional information.
	ESC R	Turn off Insert Character Mode (and indicator).
Delete Character	ESC P	The character at the current cursor position is deleted. Characters to the right of the cursor are moved one column to the left (see figure 2-2).
Delete Character with Wraparound	ESC O	The character at the cursor is deleted. Characters from the next line are wrapped to the end of the current line (see figure 2-3).

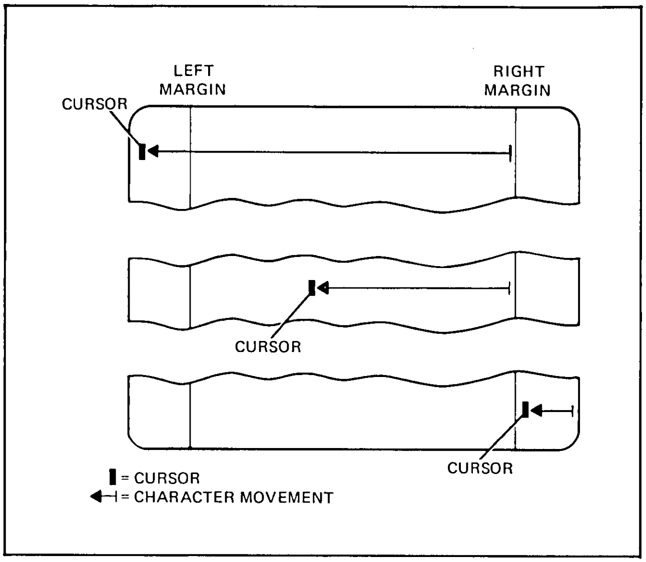


Figure 2-3. Character Delete With Margins

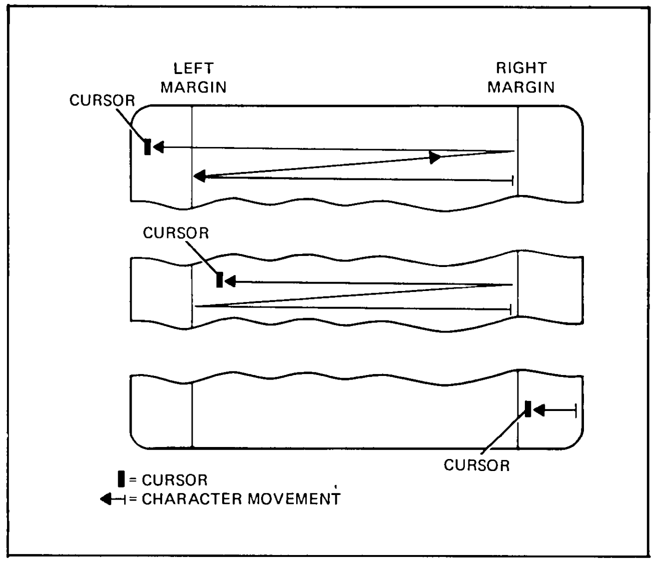


Figure 2-4. Character Delete With Wraparound

MOVING TEXT BLOCKS

You can move blocks of text or data using Memory Lock.

Example: In the following text, move the paragraphs into the proper order. The current top of screen is Row 1 of display memory.

Initial order:

```
(Top of screen) 3. This is paragraph 3. It
                   should be last in the
                   group.
                2. This is paragraph 2. It
                   should be second.
                1. This is paragraph 1. It
                   should be first
                   (blank line)
```

Step 1. Position the cursor in the first line of paragraph 2.

Step 2. Turn on Memory Lock.

Step 3. Roll up the display until the remaining paragraphs have rolled up under the cursor position and off the screen (4 lines).

Step 4. Turn off Memory Lock.

Step 5. Home the cursor.

$\underbrace{\texttt{ESC \& a 4R}}_{\text{Position cursor}}\ \underbrace{\texttt{ESC l}}_{\text{Turn on Memory Lock}}$

$\underbrace{\texttt{ESC S ESC S ESC S ESC S}}_{\text{Roll display up four lines}}$

$\underbrace{\texttt{ESC m}}_{\text{Turn off Memory Lock}}\ \underbrace{\texttt{ESC h}}_{\text{Home cursor}}$

The display should appear as follows:

```
(Top of screen) 2. This is paragraph 2. It
                   should be second.
                1. This is paragraph 1. It
                   should be first.
                3. This is paragraph 3. It
                   should be last in the
                   group.
```

Step 6. Now move paragraph 1 by positioning the cursor in the first line of paragraph 1 and turning on Memory Lock.

Step 7. Roll up the display until the cursor is in the first line of paragraph 3.

Step 8. Turn off Memory Lock and home the cursor. The paragraphs should now be in order.

$\underbrace{\texttt{ESC \& a 3R}}_{\text{Reposition Cursor}}\ \underbrace{\texttt{ESC l}}_{\text{Turn on Memory Lock}}\ \underbrace{\texttt{ESC S ESC S}}_{\text{Roll display up 2 lines}}\ \underbrace{\texttt{ESC m}}_{\text{Turn off Memory Lock}}\ \underbrace{\texttt{ESC h}}_{\text{Home Cursor}}$

FORMS MODE (FORMAT MODE)

In Forms Mode the terminal prevents you from overwriting or transmitting data in protected fields. Forms mode is normally entered under control of the computer or through commands recorded on a cartridge tape. Forms Mode is turned on by sending ESC W (the cursor is homed to the beginning of the first unprotected field). Normal operation is returned with ESC X (the cursor remains in its present position).

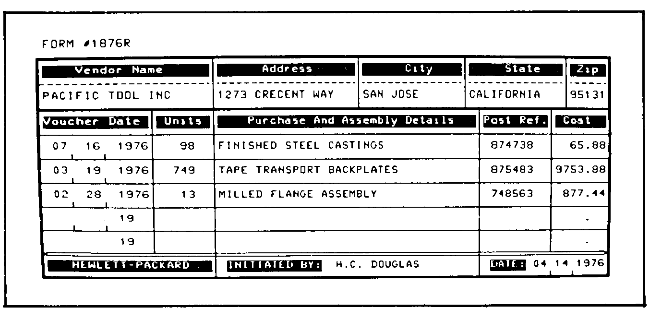
PROTECTED FIELDS

Fields can be protected so that displayed data cannot be overwritten or sent to a computer. When the terminal is placed in "Forms Mode" (Format Mode) all character positions on the screen are protected except those fields that have been specifically defined as "unprotected" or "transmit only".

UNPROTECTED FIELDS

Data can be written into unprotected fields in the normal manner. After reaching the end of an unprotected field, the cursor moves to the beginning of the next unprotected field. The tab functions can be used to move from one unprotected field to the beginning of the next unprotected field. ESC i causes the cursor to be positioned at the beginning of the previous unprotected field. Fields are defined as "unprotected" by using ESC [at the start of the field. ESC] or the end of the line is used to end the field.

In the following figure only the fields shown in white are unprotected or transmit only. Even if the operator moves the cursor to a protected field and types a character the cursor will move to the nearest unprotected field before displaying the character.



Example: Define column 1 through 9 of line 3 as "Unprotected".

Step 1. Position the cursor at column 1 in line 3.
Step 2. Send ESC [.
Step 3. Move the cursor to column 10 of line 3.
Step 4. Send ESC].

Now try turning on Forms Mode (ESC W) and sending data. Note that data can only be entered into the unprotected field. (Remember to turn off Forms Mode with ESC X.)

TRANSMIT ONLY FIELDS

It is often desirable to be able to return fixed data used as labels or headings to the computer. Transmit only fields are similar to protected fields except that they are sent to a computer along with the data that you enter. Normally data can only be entered in unprotected fields. But by positioning the cursor in the transmit only fields (using the cursor functions), you can also enter data into transmit only fields. The tab functions skip over transmit only fields. After reaching the end of the transmit only field the cursor moves to the beginning of the next unprotected field. Fields are defined as "transmit only" by using ESC { at the beginning of the field. ESC] or the end of the line will end the field.

Example: Continue the previous example and define column 11 through 14 of line 3 as transmit only.

Step 1. Turn forms mode off (ESC X).

Step 2. Position the cursor at column 11 line 3.

Step 3. Send ESC {.

Step 4. Move the cursor to column 15 in line 3.

Step 5. Send ESC]

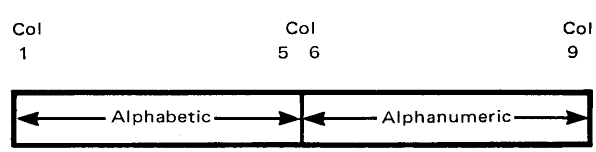
Position the cursor in column 0 and turn on Forms Mode (ESC W). Try typing data. Note that the cursor moves over the Transmit Only field without entering data.

DATA CHECKING

While in Format Mode the terminal can test data in unprotected and transmit-only fields to make sure that it is numeric or alphabetic. If a field is defined as numeric and an alphabetic character is entered the terminal will beep and the keyboard will lock. This condition can be cleared by pressing (RETURN). You can then continue entering data. Data checking fields are defined by beginning the field with one of the following sequences:

- ESC 6 — begin alphabetic field (A thru Z, a thru z, space only).
- ESC 7 — begin numeric field (space, 0 thru 9, − , + , ., and ,)
- ESC 8 — alphanumeric field (all keyboard characters)

Example: Define columns 1 through 5 on line 4 to be alphabetic and columns 6 through 9 to be alphanumeric.



Step 1. Turn off forms mode (ESC X).

Step 2. Position the cursor at column 1 of line 4.

Step 3. Send ESC [to define the beginning of an unprotected field.

Step 4. Send ESC 6 to define an alphabetic field.

Step 5. Move the cursor to column 6 of line 4.

Step 6. Send ESC 8 to define normal alphanumeric data.

Step 7. Move the cursor to column 10 of line 4.

Step 8. Send ESC] to end the unprotected field.

Step 9. Turn on forms mode (ESC W).

When a number is typed in the alphabetic field the keyboard is locked, the terminal beeps, and the cursor remains under the invalid character. Press the RETURN key to unlock the keyboard. The operator can then make the correct entry.

The numeric character may be left in the alphabetic field by moving the cursor to the next character position using the cursor control keys. This has the effect of overriding the data check.

CAUTION

Deleting characters while in Forms Mode can destroy the data checking field or alter the unprotected field length. Use CLEAR DSPLY (ESC J) or CNTL CLEAR DSPLY (ESC K) to delete information.

TABBING

Tabs are automatically set at the beginning of each unprotected field when Forms Mode is turned on; any tabs set previously are ignored. When Forms Mode is turned off, any previously set tabs are reinstated. Tabs cannot be set within any unprotected field.

EDITING

While in Forms Mode, the unprotected fields can be edited (inserting and deleting characters). The INSERT LINE and DELETE LINE functions are disabled in Forms Mode.

INSERTING CHARACTERS. Characters may be inserted in any unprotected field by turning on Insert Character Mode (ESC Q). Characters received or typed are inserted at the cursor position. Characters moved out of the end of the unprotected field are lost.

Insert Character with Wraparound acts the same as insert character without wraparound explained above (the wraparound function has no effect).

DELETING CHARACTERS. Characters may be deleted in any unprotected field by the Delete Character function (ESC P). The character at the cursor position is deleted and all characters to the right of the deleted character in the field are moved left one column.

Delete Character with Wraparound acts the same as delete character without wraparound explained above (the wraparound function has no effect).

Characters may be deleted from the current cursor position to the end of the field by sending ESC K (clear to end of line). Also, characters may be deleted from the current cursor position to the end of the last field by sending ESC J (clear display).

BUILDING THE FORM

Appendix A contains a method for building forms using the cartridge tapes and soft keys.

SENDING DATA TO THE COMPUTER.

Refer to "Block Mode", page 5-9.

DISPLAY ENHANCEMENTS

The standard terminal can display data using inverse video (black on white). In addition, if your terminal has the 13231A Display Enhancement accessory you can also use half bright, underline, and blinking characters. Each character position on the screen can be displayed with various combinations of these features.

- **Half Bright** — characters are displayed at half intensity (grey).
- **Underline** — an underline is displayed below the normal character.
- **Inverse Video** — the screen is white and characters are black.
- **Blinking** — characters including the inverse video, underline, and half bright features blink.

The display enhancements are used by assigning one or more of them to a field. The selection sequence is: ESC & d <enhancement character>.

The enhancement character (@, A through O) is used to select the combination of display enhancements to be assigned to the field. The following table lists the enhancement character for each of the combinations. The field is ended by selecting another enhancement, the end of the current line, or by ESC & d@.

ENHANCEMENT CHARACTER

	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
Half-Bright									X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Underline					X	X	X	X					X	X	X	X
Inverse Video			X	X			X	X			X	X			X	X
Blinking		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X
End Enhancement	X															

Example: Define columns 10 through 14 of line 5 to be inverse video and blinking.

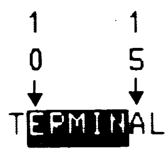
Step 1. Position the cursor at column 10 in line 5.

Step 2. Send ESC & d C

Step 3. Move the cursor to column 15 in line 5.

Step 4. Send ESC & d @ (this ends the enhancements). The field should be white.

Step 5. Send the word TERMINAL beginning in column 9 of line 5. It should appear as shown below. (If your terminal does not have the 13231A accessory installed the characters will not blink.)



ALTERNATE CHARACTER SETS

The terminal can display up to four different character sets. Each character set can contain up to 128 characters or symbols. In addition to the Math, Line Drawing, and Large Character sets available as options, you can create character sets tailored for special applications. Contact your nearest Hewlett-Packard Sales Office for additional information on special character sets.

Switching from one character set to another can be done on a character-by-character basis. For example, a character from the Math Symbol Set can be displayed next to characters from the Roman set. This is done by defining one or more character positions in a line to be from alternate character sets. (Each group of characters can be thought of as a field.)

NOTE

> The following discussion assumes that the Math and Line Drawing character sets are present and are installed as alternate sets A and B respectively.

SELECTING ALTERNATE SETS

To use optional character sets, first select the character set to be used as the alternate. (With the terminal in its initial state, character set A is defined to be the alternate.) An alternate set is selected with the following sequence:

Esc) <set> where set = @ or A or B or C

Note that if @ is used, the Roman or basic terminal set would be selected as the alternate. To find out which character set corresponds to @, A, B, or C, generate the test pattern by pressing the TAPE TEST key). This displays the order of the character sets as shown below.

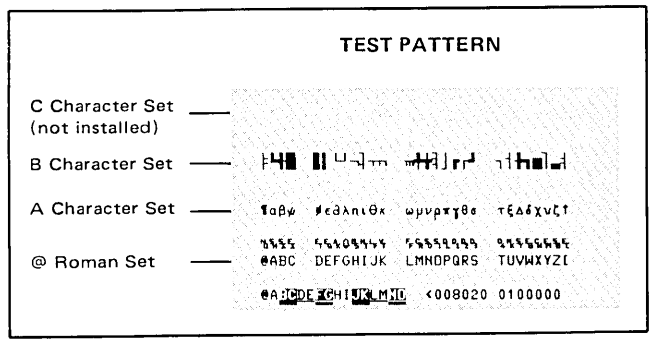


Figure 2-5. Character Set Locations

USING ALTERNATE SETS

Once the alternate character set is defined, you can switch from the Roman to the alternate set with a N^c (SO).

The terminal automatically returns to the base or Roman set at the end of a line. To return to the base set within a line, send a O^c (SI). This means that you must send another N^c to turn on the alternate set if it extends to the next line.

Example: Define the Math Set as the alternate character set.

From the test pattern the Math Symbol Set is found to be the A alternate character set.

An alternate set is selected with the following sequence:

ESC) A

To display AαBβ send the following sequence:

A N^c A O^c B N^c B

The screen should display AαBβ:

AaBβ

Once a field has been defined as from the alternate set the field moves with the display. To change to a different alternate character set another ESC) <set> sequence must be sent.

Once a field in display memory has been defined as an alternate character field, it will continue to display alternate characters whenever data is written in the field until the terminal is reset.

The Math Set is useful for applications requiring the use of equations or formulas. The elements of the optional Math Symbol Set are shown in figure 2-8. An example of the use of the Math Set is shown in figure 2-6.

$$\int\int\int_0^\infty \Psi^* \left[\frac{-h}{2\pi i}\;\frac{\partial\Psi}{\partial t}\right] dv = \int\int\int_0^\infty \Psi^* E \Psi dv$$

Figure 2-6. Example Using the Math Set

The Large Character set allows you to create alphabetic characters that are three times the size of normal characters. The elements of the Large Character set are shown in figure 2-9. An example of how to use the Large Character Set to build the character "B" is shown in figure 2-7. Table B-16 in Appendix B shows the keys required to build each character. Appendix A gives a program to build each character.

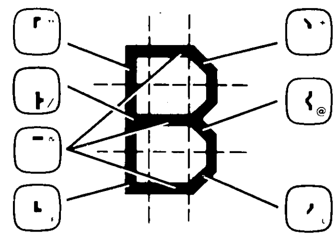


Figure 2-7. Example Using the Large Character Set

The Line Drawing Set provides a limited graphics capability. Simple line drawings and fairly complex forms for data entry applications can be generated. The elements of the optional Line Drawing Set are shown in figure 2-10. Figure 2-11 shows how the line drawing set can be used to build a data entry form.

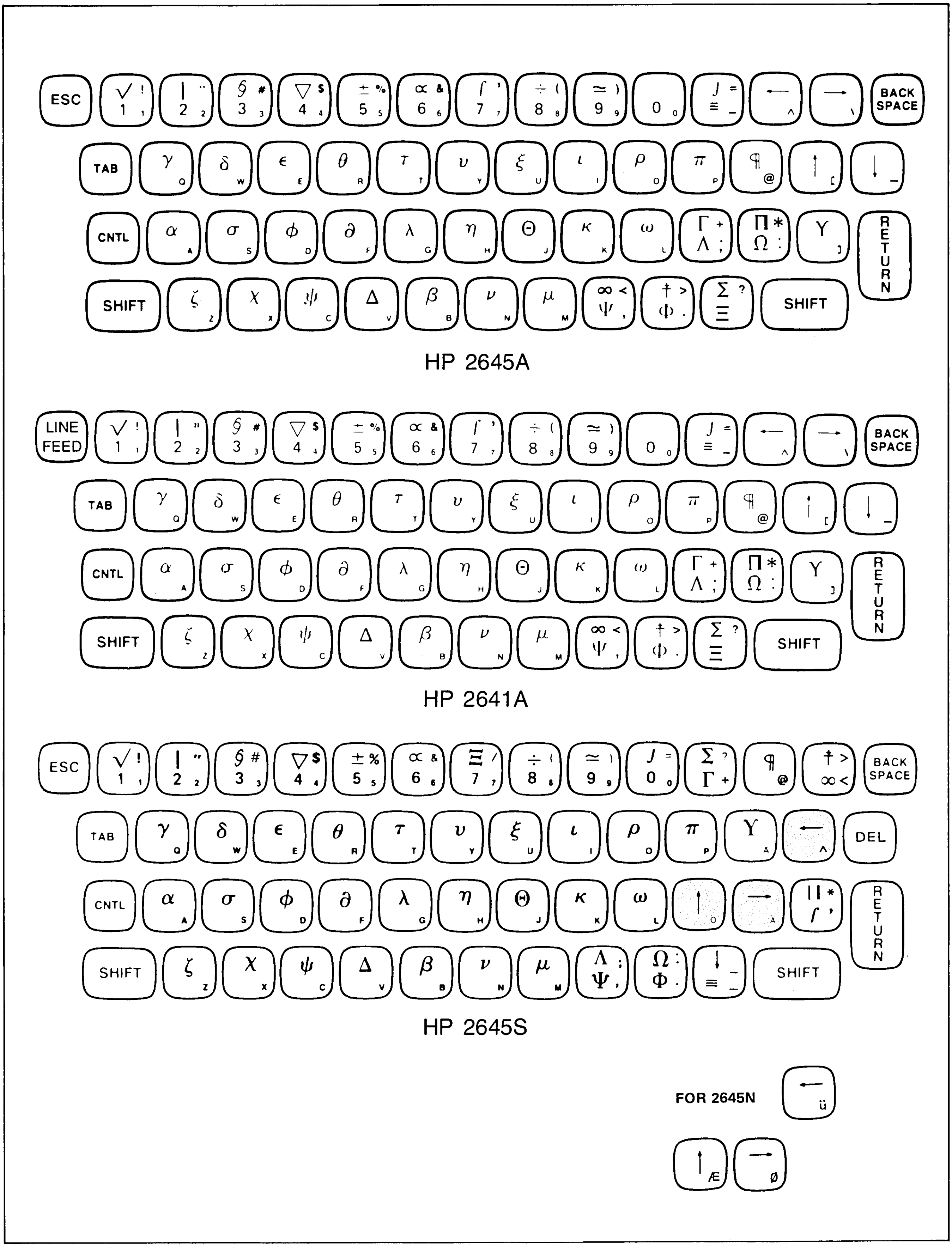


Figure 2-8. Math Set Elements

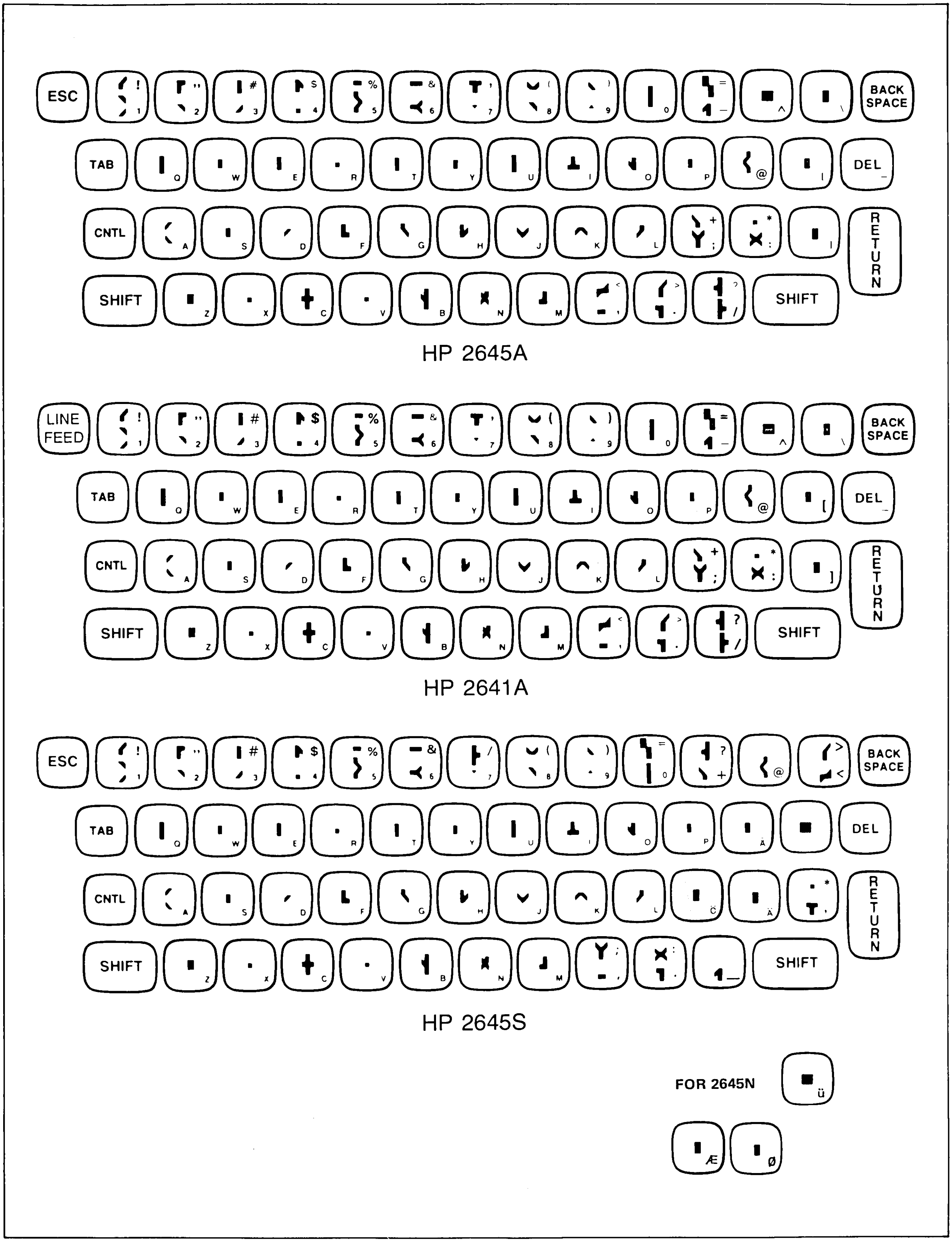


Figure 2-9. Large Character Set Elements

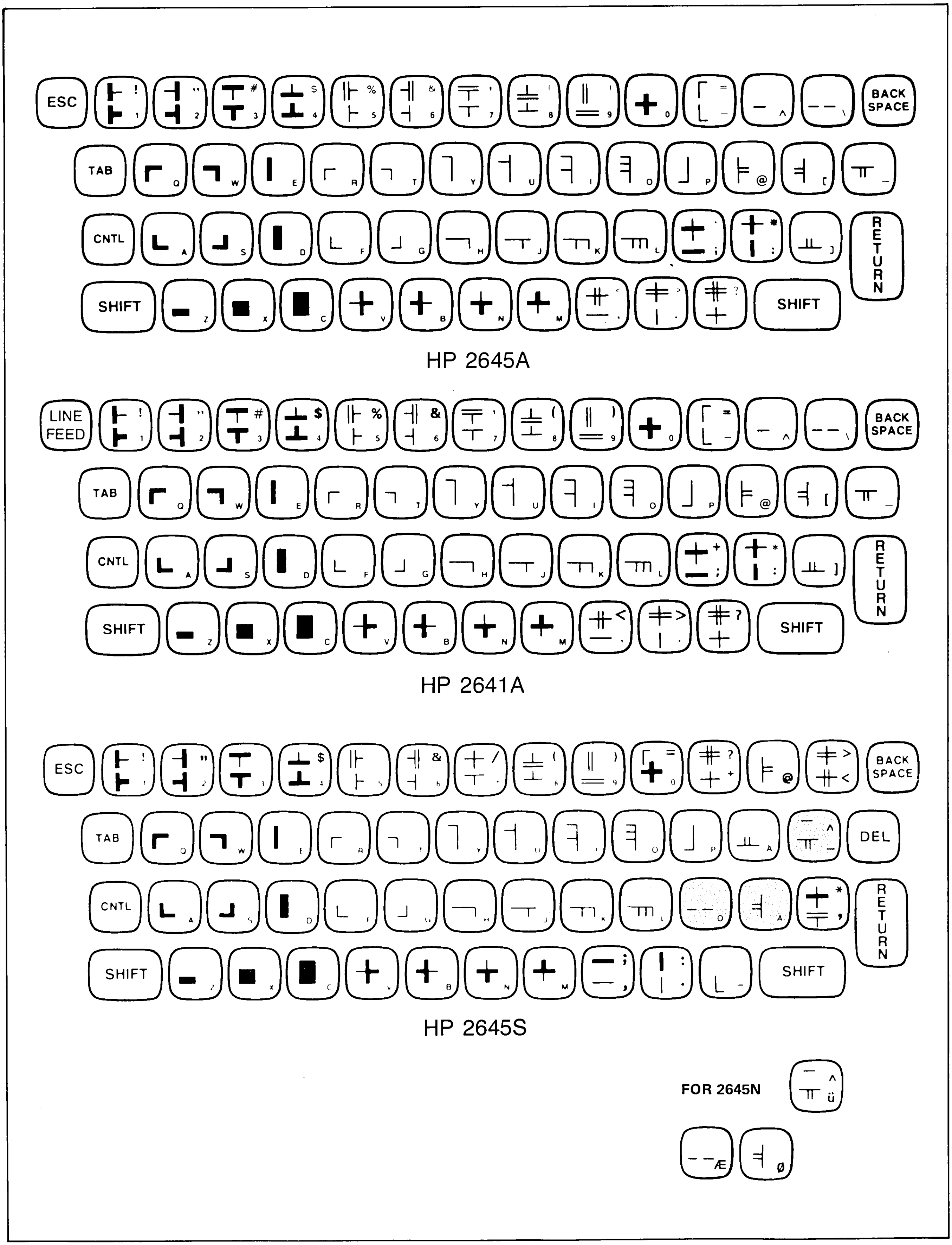


Figure 2-10. Line Drawing Set

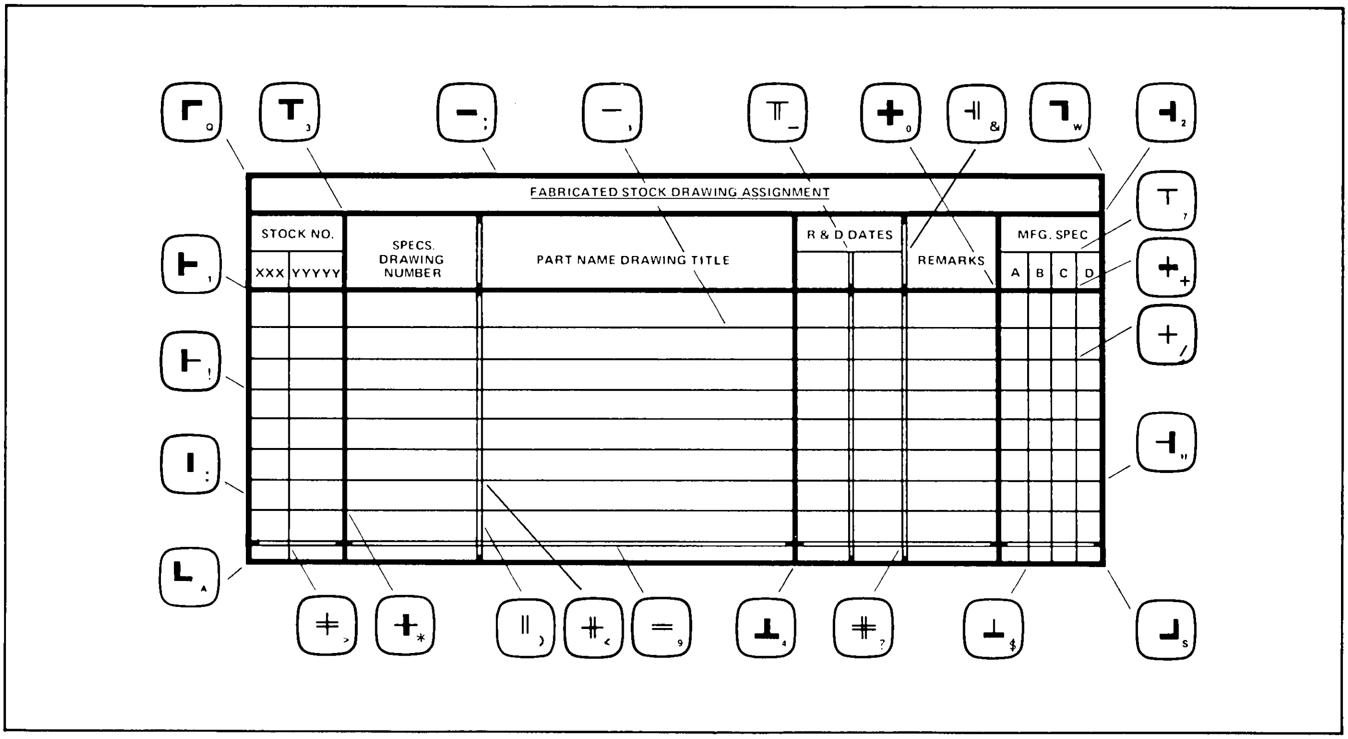


Figure 2-11. Sample Form

HP 2641A TERMINAL DIFFERENCES

NOTE

The 2641A terminal does not have an ESCape key, therefore, you must press CNTL [to create the escape function.

EDIT OPERATIONS

When the 2641 terminal is in APL Mode, certain functions operate differently as described below.

FORWARD SPACING. The SPACE bar may be used to forward space over typed characters; blanks are non-destructive (they do not overwrite existing APL characters). The blanks perform a cursor-right function when the terminal is in APL Mode and the cursor is in an APL or overstrike field. If the cursor is in base set (Roman) or in set C, then blanks will overwrite characters unless the SPOW latch is disabled. Note that the special features of APL operation apply only to APL and Overstrike fields during APL mode. Base Set fields and Set C fields are always treated as though the terminal is in ASCII Mode.

BACKSPACING. The BACKSPACE key is used during data input to position the cursor for character overstrikes. If the cursor is in column 0, the backspace function will move the cursor to column 79 of the previous line. This permits overstriking the last character in a line when using the backspace function. The margin settings have no effect. In ASCII Mode, the backspace functions normally.

OVERSTRIKES. Overstrikes are performed by positioning the cursor to the character to be overstruck, then sending the overstrike character. Table B-3 in Appendix B shows the combinations of characters that make up the Overstrike Set. If an invalid overstrike is attempted, the OUT character is displayed.

UNDERLINING. Underlining of any APL or Overstrike character can be accomplished by placing the cursor under the character and overstriking with a shift F (ASCII code for uppercase F). Base Set fields and Set C fields can be underlined by using the underline enhancement escape sequence (refer to "Display Enhancements" in this section). Presently, APL systems allow only the alphabetic APL characters and a few of the special symbols to be underlined although the terminal can underline any APL or Overstrike character.

INPUTTING DATA

CHARACTER MODE. When inputting data in character mode, the overstrikes may be done in any order on the current line. You may type several characters, then backspace as far as necessary to begin generating the overstrike characters, skipping over characters when necessary by using the space bar. (The APL System keeps track of your current cursor position by monitoring the number of backspaces and forward spaces.) When the line is complete, press RETURN to indicate to the system that the line is terminated.

Since blanks do not overwrite existing APL characters on the display and all attempts to overwrite will result in overstriking, the method for input correction is to use the Line Feed (LF) character. You backspace to the character to be edited, then send an LF which effectively erases (according to the APL System) all characters to the right of the point where the LF occurred. The new characters to be typed are appended to the current characters at the point where the LF occurred to complete the meaning of the input data or command.

When using the 2641 with the HP APL\3000, an additional means of input editing is available. The CNTL-Y character (Em) can be used for input correction. When you input CNTL-Y, the HP APL\3000 will send an escape sequence to the terminal to clear the line from the current cursor position. It is an easy matter to append the corrected data to the line. Also, the HP APL\3000 recognizes CNTL-Y as an attention command code which is useful to break infinite loops when running a program.

BLOCK MODE. When operating in Block Mode, the ENTER key is used to input data (as in ASCII Mode) after the data on the screen has been edited (corrections made where necessary and overstrikes generated). Overstrikes are decomposed to their component characters with a backspace character between them. For example, the ⌽ character would be sent as [, Bs, ∘. Any number of overstrikes (up to 80 characters, maximum) may be sent on an input line.

DISPLAY ENHANCEMENTS

The 2641A Terminal has the display enhancement feature as standard equipment. Also, the enhancement characters can be entered in ASCII Mode or APL Mode. When in APL Mode, either the SHIFT key or the CAPS LOCK key must be down when pressing the enhancement character key (A through O) except the @ key.

ALTERNATE CHARACTER SETS

The 2641A terminal has three character sets as standard equipment:

- 64-character Roman base set (Set @)
- 128-character APL set (Set A)
- 64-character APL Overstrike set (Set B)

A 64-character lowercase Roman set can be optionally added. Also, either a Math, Line Drawing, Large Character, or User-Defined character set can be optionally added as Set C.

When the terminal is in ASCII Mode, Set @ is the base set. In APL Mode, Set A is the base set. Alternates may be defined by the user as described earlier in this section.

For block transfers to the CPU in APL Mode initiated by the READ key or ENTER key, whether from the display or cartridge tapes, the default character set to be transmitted will be the APL set (Set A). No shift-in (SI,17 octal) or shift-out (SO,16 octal) characters will be transmitted when APL-only data is transmitted. The overstrike characters will be decoded and transmitted as APL characters separated by a backspace character.

TERMINAL CONTROL FUNCTIONS

SECTION III

INTRODUCTION

NOTE

The 2641A terminal does not have an ESC key. Therefore, you must press CNTL [(in ASCII mode to produce the code equivalent to the Escape key.

This section describes how to programmatically change most of the terminal's control settings and perform various other control functions. The settings consist of the following:

- Latching Keys AUTO LF, BLOCK MODE, CAPS LOCK
- Keyboard Interface Switch Settings (A-Z)
- Programmable Soft Keys (F1-F8)

When the terminal is powered on or reset, the states of the various keyboard and internal switches are stored in memory. Most of these stored settings can be changed programmatically without physically changing the switch setting. (Note that if the terminal is reset the terminal will return to the physical settings.)

You can select a specific operating configuration from within the application program. This eliminates the problem of requiring the terminal operator to make the settings before continuing with the application program. It also allows individual programs or even subroutines to change terminal configuration for a specific function and then return the terminal to the original state before passing control back to the main program. .

LATCHING KEYS

Three of the mechanically latching keys, AUTO LF, BLOCK MODE, and CAPS LOCK can have their electronic state changed programmatically. The escape code sequence is as follows:

ESC & k <state> <key> . . .

where: <state> is $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{0 (up)}\\ \text{or}\\ \text{1 (down)}\end{array}\right\}$

<key> is $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{a (AUTO LF)}\\ \text{or}\\ \text{b (BLOCK MODE)}\\ \text{or}\\ \text{c (CAPS LOCK)}\end{array}\right\}$

The ESC & k is followed by one or more groups of state and key parameters. The state is a 0 or 1 to indicate that the key is to be up or down respectively. The key is a single letter a, b, or c. The groups can be in any order (CAPS LOCK can come before BLOCK MODE). The last key letter in the sequence must be capitalized to indicate the end of the sequence.

Example: Set AUTO LF up and CAPS LOCK down.

```
ESC & k 0 a 1 C
```

An invalid character (any character other than 0, 1, a, b, or c) will cause the entire sequence to be ignored. An improper setting, (0 b when the terminal is operating in a multipoint configuration) will cause only the invalid setting to be ignored. The rest of the sequence will be accepted. If the terminal is initialized while configured for multipoint operation, the BLOCK MODE key will be read as down regardless of the switch's physical setting.

KEYBOARD INTERFACE SWITCHES

The switches on the Keyboard Interface allow you to alter terminal operation for specific applications. Table 2-1 contains a summary of the switches and their function. A more complete description of the switches is given in Section VII, pages 7-18 through 7-24.

The switch settings are made using the following sequence:

ESC & s <state><switch> . . .

where: <state> is $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{0 (closed)}\\ \text{or}\\ \text{1 (open)}\end{array}\right\}$

<switch> is $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{A through Z}\\ \text{less I and O}\end{array}\right\}$

An invalid character in the sequence will cause the entire sequence to be ignored. The sequence must be terminated with an upper case switch character. A full reset will cause the terminal to return to the physical settings of the switches. Switches S and T cannot be changed if the terminal is configured for Main Channel protocol.

Example: Set switches A, B, and D open and switch C closed.

```
ESC & s 1 a 1 b 1 d 0 C
```

In certain operating configurations (i.e. multipoint), some switch settings cannot be changed. If attempted, the new setting for the switch will be ignored.

Table 3-1. Keyboard Interface Switch Summary

SWITCH	POINT-TO-POINT FUNCTION	MULTIPOINT FUNCTION
A	Function key transmission	same
B	Space overwrite latch	same
C	Cursor end-of-line wraparound	same
D	Block mode (Line/Page)	same
E	Paper tape mode	same
F	Fast binary read	(not used)
G	Block transfer handshake	(not used)
H	Inhibit DC2	(not used)
J	Auto terminate	same
K	Clear terminator	same
L	Self-test inhibit	same
M	Reverse CNTL key effect on INSERT CHAR and DELETE CHAR keys	same
N	Escape code transfer to printer	same
P	Printer pairing code (2641A only)	same
Q	(not used)	same
R	Circuit Assurance	Internal Data Set Ready
S	Main Channel Protocol	Space Compression
T	Main Channel Protocol	Output Buffer size. (Switches T and U cannot be modified programmatically.)
U	CPU break	Synch Mode for Asynchronous operation.
V	Carrier Detect	
W	Data Comm self-test enable	same
X	Data speed select	same
Y	Transmit LED	same
Z	Parity	Transparency

PROGRAMMABLE SOFT KEYS

The terminal has 8 programmable keys [f1] – [f8]. Each key can be assigned a string of up to 80 characters. The keys can be defined to be used at the terminal only (L), transmitted to the computer only (T), or to be treated as normal keyboard input (N). The keys can be programmed with escape code sequences to control or modify terminal operation. The keys can be used in application programs to create "menu" lists of special commands.

CONTROLLING THE SOFT KEY DISPLAY

You can cause the current soft key assignments to be displayed using the following escape sequence:

ESC j

This will also allow the terminal operator to enter new key assignments from the keyboard. Procedures for entering new soft key assignments by escape sequences are given next in this section. The soft key display is in the following format:

F#type
string

where: # is the key number (1-8)

type is { L (local only) / N (normal keyboard operation) / T (transmit only) }

string is any series of up to 80 characters

The soft key assignments are displayed in place of the normal screen display. Data in display memory is not lost. When the key assignment is completed and the terminal returned to normal operation, the old display is returned to the screen. Normal operation is restored using the following escape sequence:

ESC k

DEFINING SOFT KEYS

The key assignment operation displays the current key assignments in format mode. The attribute and string fields are unprotected allowing the operator to enter new values. In addition, the values are tested during input to make sure that only valid parameter values are used. When the terminal is initialized the soft keys are assigned default values as follows:

[f1] = ESC p	[f5] = ESC t
[f2] = ESC q	[f6] = ESC u
[f3] = ESC r	[f7] = ESC v
[f4] = ESC s	[f8] = ESC w

NOTE

Adding characters to the soft key string may delete lines in normal display memory if the memory is full.

The soft keys can be loaded by the terminal operator (refer to the *User Manual*) or under program control. It is not necessary to display the current key assignments to enter new ones. Soft Key assignments can be made directly using the following escape sequence:

ESC & f <attribute> <key> <length> <string> ...

where:

<attribute> = 0 (normal), 1 (local only), 2 (transmit only) a (0 is default)

<key> is 1-8 k (1 is default)

<length> is 1-80 l (1 is default)

<string> is the character sequence to be assigned

If a carriage return (CR) is included in the string portion of the soft key definition, the CR will be translated to a CR,LF if the [AUTO LF] key is down.

If the transmit only attribute (2) is used, the key will have no effect unless the terminal is set for remote operation.

Also, it may invoke a Block transfer handshake and append the appropriate terminator to the string. (See Appendix C, figure C-2, sheet 2.) The key assignment sequence must be terminated with an upper case character.

Example: Assign "HELLO-C905,PASWRD,3" to the [f1] key.

ESC&f0a1k19LHELLO-C905,PASWRD,3C_R

After the key assignment in the previous example has been made, a display of the key assignments would appear as follows:

```
f1 N
HELLO-C905,PASWRD,3
f2 T
Ecq
f3 T
Ecr
f4 T
Ecs
f5 T
Ect
f6 T
Ecu
f7 T
Ecv
f8 T
Ecw
```

CAUTION

Do not include line feeds (LF's) or block terminators (RS/GS) in soft key string (other than at the end of the string) if the soft key assignment is to be stored on cartridge tape from the soft key display.

SOFT KEY APPLICATIONS

There are many applications of the soft keys. One application is the creation of "menu" operations. For example, the keys can be loaded with the escape sequences to find and read various files on a tape cartridge.

Example: Program the soft keys to find a file on the left tape drive and copy the file to the display. This can be done using the following technique:

ESC & pnp1s2C ESC & p3dF

where: n = the number of the file to be read

To program the f1 key to find and display file number 1

```
   15 characters                          Copy File
        / \                                /     \
ESC & f 1 a 1 5 1 1 K ESC & p 1 p 1 s 2 C ESC & p 3 d F
       /        / \               /
    Local      Key f1          Find File 1
```

The same procedure could be used for the remaining function keys.

Another application would be to change the control settings on the Keyboard Interface to configure the terminal for use with different computer system.

Example: To program the f2 key to change the settings of Switches D, G, and H to open, closed, and open, the following sequence could be used:

```
      9 characters                      open
          \                            /     \
ESC & f 1 a 9 1 2 K ESC & s 1 d 0 g 1 H
        /        /                   /
     Local      Key f2             closed
```

The soft keys can be used to hold log-on, program control, and log-off messages. This makes it easier for the terminal operator to use unfamiliar computer systems.

Example: A sample key assignment to log-on to the Hewlett-Packard 2000 Series Timeshare System might be as follows:

f1 = HEL-C500,PASWRD,3 RETURN

```
      18 characters
            \
ESC & f 0 a 1 8 1 1 K HEL-C500,PASWRD, 3CR
        /           \
     Normal         Key f1
```

A second key could be used to call and execute a library program:

f2 = EXE-$TEST1

```
          11 characters
              \
ESC & f 0 a 1 1 1 2 K EXE-$TEST1CR
        /           \
     Normal         Key f2
```

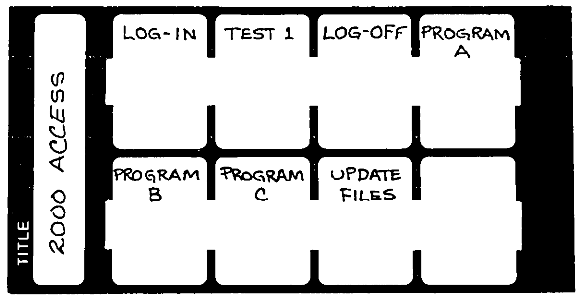
A third key could be used to log off of the system:

f3 = BYE RETURN

```
        4 characters
             \
ESC & f 0 a 4 1 3 K BYECR
        /           \
     Normal         Key f3
```

USING SOFT KEY LABELS

The terminal comes with 5 blank soft key templates. These templates can be labeled with the functions assigned to the soft keys. The template can be dropped over the function key group for easy reference.



ADDITIONAL CONTROL FUNCTIONS

In addition to the control settings there are several control operations that can be controlled programmatically. These control functions are as follows:

- Bell — G^c
- Send Display — ESC d
- Wait — ESC @
- Keyboard Disable — ESC c
- Keyboard Enable — ESC b
- Reset Terminal (Soft) — ESC g
- Reset Terminal (Full) — ESC E
- Turn On Monitor Mode — ESC y
- Terminal Self-Test — ESC z
- Data Comm Self-Test — ESC x
- Modem Disconnect — ESC f
- Program Down Loading — ESC & b or ESC & c

BELL

The G^c character causes the terminal to "beep". A beep is automatically generated at the end of each unprotected field in format mode and as the cursor passes within eight positions of the right margin.

SEND DISPLAY

The ESC d sequence causes the terminal to send a block of display memory data to the computer. The data sent depends on the Line/Page setting of Keyboard Interface switch D and whether the terminal is in format mode or not.

Data is transmitted beginning at the current cursor position. If the terminal is strapped for page, data is transmitted until the end of the current display. If strapped for line, transmission stops at the end of the current line for non format mode or at the end of the current field if in format mode.

WAIT

The terminal can be made to pause for approximately 1 second by sending it an ESC @. Multiple commands can be used to obtain any desired time period.

KEYBOARD DISABLE/ENABLE

The terminal keyboard can be locked by sending an ESC c. It must then be unlocked by sending an ESC b or by pressing the RESET TERMINAL key.

RESET TERMINAL

A programmatic "Soft Reset" can be made by sending an ESC g to the terminal. A "Full Reset" can be made using ESC E.

Soft Reset (ESC g). A soft reset results in the following:

1. Any error messages present are cleared, the normal display is returned and the keyboard is unlocked.
2. If DISPLAY FUNCTIONS is enabled, it is turned off.
3. Incomplete device selections are cleared. (Previous selections are retained.)
4. If the terminal is set for REMOTE, RECORD operations are ended.
5. Device operations (tape or printer) are stopped. If a tape drive was moving at the time the command was received, the tape will be rewound. In addition, if the tape drive was recording data, an end-of-data mark will be recorded before the tape is rewound.
6. Current transmission of data stops. Data waiting to be sent to the computer is not sent. Partial messages from the computer are lost. The data communications facility is re-initialized.
7. All keyboard lights are turned on for 0.5 seconds.

Full Reset (ESC E). A full reset has the same effect as turning power on and consists of the following:

1. The screen and memory are cleared, then TERMINAL READY is displayed. Format mode, display functions, and all programmable functions including the function keys (F1-F8) are turned off or set to their default values.
2. Device assignments are set to their default values, tapes (if present) are rewound to their load point. (An end-of-data mark is not written.)

NOTE

The CPU must wait 200 milliseconds after issuing ESC E before sending additional data.

MONITOR MODE

Monitor Mode can be turned on by sending ESC y. Refer to Section V for a discussion of Monitor Mode.

SELF-TEST

The Terminal Self-Test can be executed by sending an ESC z. The Data Comm Self-Test can be executed by sending an ESC x. Descriptions of the self-tests are given in section VII.

MODEM DISCONNECT

The terminal can be directed to "hang up" the modem by sending an ESC f. The terminal does this by lowering the CD (Data Terminal Ready) line for 1 second if standard data comm is used or 10 seconds if the terminal is configured for multipoint.

PROGRAM DOWN LOAD

The ESC & b and ESC & c sequences allow special diagnostic programs to be loaded into the terminal and executed. The escape sequence must precede the program to be loaded. This function can be used by HP diagnostics only. The ESC & c functions the same as ESC & b except that the LOADER message is not present on the display.

HP 2641A TERMINAL DIFFERENCES

KEYBOARD INTERFACE SWITCHES

Switch B — space overwrite latch function. When this switch is closed in APL Mode, blanks will not overwrite existing APL characters. When this switch is open in APL mode, blanks will overwrite existing APL characters. This provides an additional editing capability which improves off-line usage of the terminal.

Switch P — APL Printer Bit-Pairing Codes. When this switch is closed in APL Mode, the code output from the terminal to the printer for APL characters will be bit-paired (see table B-3 in Appendix B). When this switch is open in APL Mode, the code output from the terminal to the printer for APL characters will be typewriter-paired (see table B-4 in Appendix B). When the terminal is in ASCII Mode, the code output is bit-paired regardless of the switch setting.

DEFINING SOFT KEYS

In the 2641A terminal, the special function keys can be defined only in ASCII (i.e., if the terminal is in APL Mode, the characters defining the keys will be ASCII characters); however, when a special function key is pressed during APL Mode, the APL characters will be displayed.

APL Overstrike characters cannot be stored in the soft keys; however, the decoded character can be stored (e.g., S BS 1 will display $ when the soft key is pressed).

SOFT KEY APPLICATIONS

Example: To demonstrate the APL overstrike capability on the 2641A terminal, the [f3] key could be programmed as follows:

```
ESC & f 0 a 3 k 7 L h p BS BS FF CR
```

When the above sequence has been sent to the terminal and the terminal is in APL mode the [f3] key will generate the following:

<u>HP</u>

Example: An APL command can be assigned to the [f2] key. The)LOAD command can be assigned with the following sequence:

```
ESC & f 1 a 2 k 6 L * load (space)
```

When the above sequence has been sent and the terminal is in APL mode, a user could press the [f2] key and then type in a file name. This would load the file into the user's workspace.

Example (2641A only): A sample key assignment for the 2641A to log on the Hewlett-Packard APL\3000 System might be as follows:

```
[f1] = +apl* john.physicslab
```

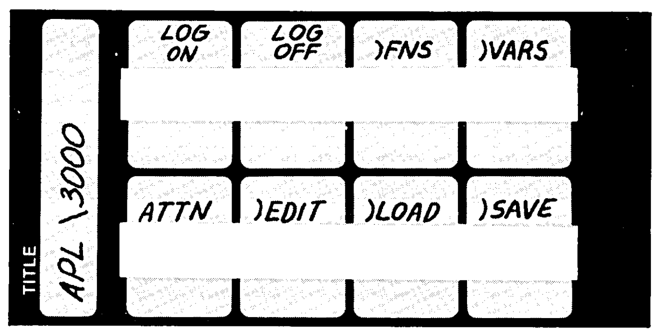
The second key could be used to log off the system.

```
[f2] = *off
```

The [f3] thru [f8] keys could contain some APL commands.

```
[f3] = *fns
[f4] = *vars
[f5] = EM   (CNTL Y)
[f6] = *edit
[f7] = *load
[f8] = *save
```

The corresponding soft key template for the above example would look like the following:



ADDITIONAL CONTROL FUNCTIONS

The APL Mode can be turned on and off programatically by sending ESC < (on) or ESC > (off). In APL Mode, the effects of the editing functions (backspace, character insert, clear to end of line, and clear display) differ from the standard ASCII Mode (refer to Section II). Also, two keyboard interface switches (B and P) change their function (mentioned earlier in this section).

DEVICE CONTROL

INTRODUCTION

The 2645 I/O devices (display, cartridge tape units, and printer) can be program-controlled from a computer through use of the generalized escape sequences.

The following are examples of the escape sequence used to control a device and/or transfer information.

ESC & p 2s 3d M	Transfer all information stored on the right cartridge tape unit to the display.
ESC & p 1u C	Rewind the left cartridge tape unit.
ESC & p 1 ^	Fetch the status of the left cartridge tape unit.
ESC & p 2d 25W	Write the next 25 bytes sent from the computer on the right cartridge tape unit.

USING THE GENERALIZED ESCAPE SEQUENCE.

The generalized escape sequence for I/O device control is as shown in table 4-1. Items in angle brackets (<>) are replaced by an appropriate numerical value. Items in square brackets [] are optional.

The I/O control escape sequence is initiated by the characters ESC & p and terminated by an upper case character (B, C, D, F, M, P, R, S, U, W, or ^).

Table 4-1. Device Control Escape Sequences

ESC & p	[<"from" device code>s]	Source Device Assignment
	[<"to" device code>d]	Destination Device Assignment
	[<control parameter>p][<device code>u]<control code>c	Device Command
	[<device code>]^	Status
	[<read control byte>]r	Read
	[<byte count>]w	Write
	[<control bit>]b	Copy (Compare) Record
	[<control bit>]f	Copy (Compare) File
	[<control bit>]m	Copy (Compare) All

where:

device codes (s, d, u) are:

1 = left cartridge tape unit
2 = right cartridge tape unit
3 = display
4 = printer

(If no value is specified, previous device assignments are in effect.)

control code (c) is:

Control Code (c)	Default Device	Function
0	"from"	Rewind
1	"from"	Space "p" records
2	"from"	Space "p" files
3	"from"	Locate end-of-data mark
4	"from"	Condition tape
5	"to"	Record file mark
6	"to"	Record end-of-data mark
7	"to"	Test cartridge tape unit
8	"to"	Skip "p" records immediately without recording end-of-data mark
9		Turn on write-backspace-read mode
10		Turn off write-backspace-read mode

(If no value is specified, 0 is assumed.)

control parameter (p) is:

a positive (+ n), negative (– n), or (unsigned) (n) integer, specifying the number of records or files for (c) control codes 1 and 2.

(If no value is specified, +1 is assumed.)

read control byte (r) is:

0 = transmit next record
1 = retransmit last record only
2 = send byte count before transmitting next record
3 = send byte count before retransmitting last record read
4 = transmit file
6 = transmit file with byte count before each record

(If no value is specified, 0 is assumed.)

byte count (w) is:

if no value is specified, ASCII is assumed. Data is received until a Line Feed (LF) character or 256 characters (maximum) are received.

if a value is specified, binary data is assumed.

control bits (b, f, m) are:

0 or no integer = copy record (b), file (f), or all (m) from source device to destination device.
1 = compare record (b), file (f), or all (m) on source and destination devices.

The characters b, c, f, m, r, w, and ~ (lower case ^) indicate a command is to be performed. All other letters define parameters for the commands. For a given escape sequence, only one command character may be specified. Also, a device operation (other than a status request) should not be initiated before the previous device operation has been completed. For example, after initiating a read command, the data record must be read by the CPU before another device operation is initiated. Otherwise, the read operation may not be executed properly.

During the execution of a command, input from the data communications interface is ignored and the keyboard is locked out except for the RETURN key during device-to-device transfer and read file operations. Pressing the RETURN key will terminate the operation in progress, set a flag to indicate user interrupt to the CPU, and unlock the keyboard. Other operations (such as rewind, condition tape, etc.), cannot be terminated by the return key.

Any errors in the escape sequence will cause the entire sequence to be ignored by the terminal. This may cause the CPU to go into a wait loop if a response is expected from the escape sequence. A programmed time-out can be used to counteract this problem.

SELECTING INPUT/OUTPUT DEVICES

The devices to be controlled are selected by the following escape sequence format:

ESC & p [<"from" device code>s]
[<"to" device code>d]

where device codes are:

1 = left cartridge tape unit
2 = right cartridge tape unit
3 = display
4 = printer

Example:

ESC & p 2s 1d 4D

(Specifies the right cartridge tape unit as the source of the information, and the left cartridge tape unit and printer as destinations for the information).

Only one "from" device may be specified for a given escape sequence. Multiple "to" devices may be specified.

At power on or hard reset, the "preset" assignments are left tape unit for "from" device and right tape unit for "to" device.

CONTROLLING THE DEVICES

The device functions are controlled by escape sequences in the following format:

ESC & p [<"from" device code>s]
[<"to" device code>d]
[<control parameter>p][<device code>u]
<control code>c

Examples:

ESC & p 2u 0C	Rewind the right cartridge tape unit.
ESC & p 2u − 1p 1C	Backspace one record on the right cartridge tape unit.
ESC & p 1u + 3p 2C	Forward space three files on the left cartridge tape unit.
ESC & p 1u 6p 2C	Find the sixth file on the left cartridge tape unit.
ESC & p 2u 3C	Locate end-of-data mark on the right cartridge tape unit.
ESC & p 1u 4C	Condition the tape on the left cartridge tape unit.
ESC & p 2u 5C	Record a file mark on the right cartridge tape unit.
ESC & p 2u 6C	Record end-of-data mark on the right cartridge tape unit.
ESC & p 1u 7C	Perform a cartridge tape test on the left cartridge tape unit.
ESC & p −5p 8C	Backspace five records immediately without recording end-of-data mark on the "to" device.
ESC & p 9C	Turn on write-backspace-read mode.
ESC & p 10C	Turn off write-backspace-read mode.

If the (p) parameter is omitted (control code 1,2, or 8) or zero is specified, a default value of +1 is assumed.

CARTRIDGE TAPES

For the skip record functions (1 or 8), all movements are relative. Backspacing is indicated with a minus (−) sign preceding the p parameter number, while forward spacing is indicated by a plus (+) sign or no sign preceding the number. If a file mark is the last record encountered while backspacing, the tape is spaced forward so that the tape is positioned immediately after the file mark (i.e., just before the first record of the file). Also, the end-of-file mark status bit is set (bit 4 of cartridge tape unit status byte 0). In order to backspace past a file mark, you must specify at least 2 records.

For the locate file function (2), the (p) parameter may be either an absolute file number, or a relative file count indicated by a plus (+) or minus (−) sign preceding the number. The tape is positioned before the first record of the specified file (i.e., after the file mark of the previous file). Files are numbered from 1 to 255.

Skip/locate functions (1,2,3, or 8) are limited to the bounds of load point and end-of-data (or end of tape). Any attempt to exceed these bounds will cause the command to be aborted, and the appropriate bits in the device status will be set. To append a new file on a cartridge, first find the end-of-data mark (3), then record a file mark (5) to terminate the last file before starting a new file. If a file mark is not written, the new data will be appended to the end of the last file.

Unless the "skip p records immediately" function (8) is used, an end-of-data mark will be written before a skip, locate, rewind, or condition tape operation (0-4) is performed, if the last function performed on the cartridge was a record operation. "Skip p records immediately" inhibits the writing of the end-of-data mark and is intended primarily for write verification in a write-backspace-read operation sequence. After using the "skip p records immediately" function, a file mark must be written on the tape before rewinding the tape. This function should not be used to skip forward on a cartridge on which a record function was the last operation.

DISPLAY

The display ignores all control functions. Any control functions applied to the display will be flagged as executing successfully.

PRINTER

All functions, except the skip lines functions (1), cause one ASCII Form Feed character (octal 14) to be sent to the printer. The Form Feed character will cause some printers to skip to the top of the next page. The skip lines function will cause the printer to skip p lines using the absolute value of p.

Generally, the terminator sent by the terminal in response to the I/O control escape sequence may be a CR(LF), RS, or GS depending on the communications protocol and terminal configuration (refer to section V). Whenever the terminator is specified, the characters CR(LF)/RS/GS will be used to denote the above conditions.

TRANSFERRING DATA FROM DEVICE TO COMPUTER

Data may be transferred from the cartridge tape units or display to the computer by the following escape sequence.

ESC & p [<"from" device code>s]
[<read control byte>]r

Examples:

ESC & p 2s 2R	Right tape unit is selected as the new "from" device; send byte count before sending next record
ESC & p 0R	Send next record from the "from" device

The read control byte has the following meanings:

0 = Transmit next record with no byte count
1 = Retransmit last record only
2 = Send byte count before transmitting next record
3 = Send byte count before retransmitting last record read
4 = Transmit file
6 = Transmit file with byte count before each record

ASCII TRANSFERS

An ASCII transfer is specified by a read *without* byte count. For reads without byte count (0R, 1R, 4R) an enabling multicharacter transfer trigger (DC1) from your program (following the escape sequence) causes one record to be read and transmitted to the computer.

For reads without byte count (0R,1R), an enabling block transfer from your program (following the escape sequence) causes one record to be read and transmitted to the computer. A CR(LF)/RS/ GS terminator is appended to the end of the record. Any Line Feed characters in a record will not be transmitted if the AUTO LF key is not latched down. When a file mark is read, the terminal sends an RS (Record Separator) or GS (Group Separator) followed by CR(LF). If the terminal is in BLOCK MODE strapped for page, only RS or GS is sent. The escape sequence must be repeated to read each record from a device.

If a byte count is specified in the escape sequence (2R, 3R, or 5R), the information is sent in two steps.

STEP 1. When your program issues a block transfer enable (following the escape sequence), the byte count (the number of bytes in the record to be sent) will be transmitted to the computer.

STEP 2. When your program enables the next block transfer from the terminal, the record will be sent to the computer. All characters within the record will be sent (including LFs). No record terminator will be appended to the record. (After the record has been sent, the Request to Send (CA) line from the terminal will be dropped for about 5 milliseconds. This may be used as an interrupt condition for the computer.)

BINARY TRANSFERS

The byte count is sent in binary as four bytes followed by a CR(LF), or an RS/GS if the terminal is in BLOCK MODE, strapped for page.

If retransmit is specified (1R or 3R), the previous record read is transmitted. Only the previous record can be retransmitted. Intervening read or write operations are not allowed.

Byte 1	0	0	1	1	0/1	0/1	0/1	0/1	Bits 15-12 of the byte count
Byte 2	0	0	1	1	0/1	0/1	0/1	0/1	Bits 11-8 of the byte count
Byte 3	0	0	1	1	0/1	0/1	0/1	0/1	Bits 7-4 of the byte count
Byte 4	0	0	1	1	0/1	0/1	0/1	0/1	Bits 3-0 of the byte count

To transfer binary data, the read control byte in the escape sequence must specify a byte count (2R or 3R), and the PARITY switch on the terminal must be set to NONE. If a non-recoverable error occurs, the terminal will send an RS/GS as if a file mark were detected. The type of error can be determined by inspecting the device status.

TRANSFERRING DATA FROM COMPUTER TO DEVICE

A record of data may be transferred from the computer to the cartridge tape units, display, and optional printer by the following sequence:

ESC & p [<"to" device control>d]
[<byte count>]w

Example:

ESC & p 15W Send the next 15 data bytes from the computer to all "to" devices

The byte count must consist of ASCII numerals. The maximum value is 256. If no byte count is specified, data is accepted by the terminal until a Line Feed character is received or a maximum of 256 characters are received. If a byte count is specified, an ENQuiry character (octal 5) must be sent after the escape sequence in point-to-point operation, but before the data bytes. When the terminal responds with an ACKnowledge character (octal 6), then the data bytes may be sent. For multipoint operation, refer to section V.

During the transmission of the data byte, nulls and rubouts will not be stripped out of the data byte stream, and the terminal will not respond to an ENQuiry character from the computer with an ACKnowledge character.

To use all eight bits of each byte for binary data, no parity (NONE) should be selected for both terminal and the computer.

The keyboard will be locked out until the record has been transferred to all destination devices. Upon successful completion of the operation, the terminal will respond with an S followed by CR(LF)/RS/GS after receiving a block transfer enable. Any non-recoverable write errors terminate the escape sequence immediately, and the terminal will respond with an F followed by CR(LF)/RS/GS instead.

COPYING A RECORD

A record may be copied from one terminal device to another. The escape sequence format is as follows:

ESC & p [<"from" device codes>s]
[<"to" device code>d]
b

Example:

ESC & p B Copy one record from the "from" device to all "to" devices.

Any file or end-of-data marks on the "from" device are copied to the "to" devices and count as one record each. (No file marks are transferred where the display is the "from" device.)

An error condition results if an attempt is made to copy a record beyond the available data space of a "to" device (for example, end of tape). Also an error condition results if the "from" device is located at end-of-data.

Upon successful completion of the transfer, the terminal sends an S followed by CR(LF)/RS/GS after receiving a block transfer enable. If an error occurred during the transfer, an F followed by CR(LF)/RS/GS is sent instead.

COPYING A FILE

A file may be copied from one terminal device to another. The escape sequence format is as follows:

ESC & p [<"from" device code>s]
[<"to" device code>d]
f

Example:

ESC & 2s 4d F Copy one file from the right cartridge tape unit to the printer. The right cartridge tape unit is selected as the new "from" device; and printer is selected as the new "to" device.

The file copy operation starts from the current position on the from device and copies one record at a time until a file or end-of-data mark is detected. Upon completion, the mark is sent to all "to" devices. If the data space is exceeded on a to device (for example, end of tape), the transfer is terminated and an error condition results.

Upon successful completion of the transfer, the terminal sends an S followed by CR(LF)/RS/GS after receiving a block transfer enable. If an error occurred during the transfer, an F followed by CR(LF)/RS/GS is sent instead.

The terminal operator may interrupt this operation by pressing the RETURN key. In this case, the termination response is U followed by CR(LF)/RS/GS.

COPYING TO END OF MEDIUM

All files on a from device may be copied to one or more to devices by using the following escape sequence format:

ESC & p [<"from" device code>s]
[<"to" device code>d]
m

Example:

ESC & p 1s 4d M Copy all data from the left tape unit to the printer.

The end of medium copy operation starts from the current position on the "from" device to the end of medium (end-of-data mark on the cartridge tape unit, or end of display memory). If the data space is exceeded on the "to" device, the copy operation is terminated and an error condition results.

Upon successful completion of the transfer, the terminal sends an S followed by CR(LF)/RS/GS after receiving a block transfer enable. If an error occurred during the transfer, an F followed by CR(LF)/RS/GS is sent instead. The terminal operator may interrupt this operation by pressing the RETURN key. In this case, the termination response is U followed by CR(LF)/RS/GS.

FAST BINARY READ (PROGRAM LOADING)

Binary data can be read directly into the computer without the normal handshake process by using:

ESC e

The principal use of this escape sequence is for loading of binary data. When the sequence is issued to the terminal, parity is turned off, and transmission begins immediately without waiting for a block transfer enable from the computer. Transmission continues until a file mark is read.

Data is transmitted as read from the source device. No terminators (that is, CR, LF, RS, GS) are appended to the end of record. The mark does not cause an RS (Record Separator) to be transmitted; it serves only to terminate transmission. Instead, the reading of a file mark or end-of-data mark causes two null bytes (all zeros) to be transmitted. If an I/O error occurs, the binary read operation is terminated. Two "all ones" bytes will be sent if the tape is already positioned past the end-of-data mark when the fast binary read operation is invoked. If the Fast Binary Read Strapping Option is set (see page 5-13), the baud rate of the 2645 will automatically switch to 9600 baud. This is valid only if the CPU is capable of receiving at 9600 baud and the CPU's interface is clocked by the 2645.

INDICATING SUCCESSFUL COMPLETION OF A PROGRAM-CONTROLLED FUNCTION

Completion of a device control or transfer of information should be tested by your program as follows:

- Initiate a block transfer from the terminal. (The manner of initiating this block transfer from the terminal varies according to the data communications protocol — see section V.)
- After the terminal has successfully completed the function, it responds to the computer program with an S character followed by a CR(LF)/RS/GS. If the function was a data read operation, (ESC & p R) successful completion is the data.
- If the operation failed, or an error occurred in the process, the terminal responds with an F character followed by CR(LF)/RS/GS. If the function was a data read operation, an I/O failure or end-of-file is indicated by a response of RS, CR(LF), GS.
- If a device-to-device operation was interrupted by you (by pressing RETURN), the terminal responds with a U character followed by CR(LF)/RS/GS.

DATA COMMUNICATIONS

SECTION V

INTRODUCTION

This section describes the terminal's data communications capabilities and operating requirements. The topics include interface specifications, network considerations, point-to-point operation, multipoint operation, and communication configuration status.

CONNECTING TERMINALS TO A COMPUTER

The terminal can be configured to work in a variety of computer applications. Your communication needs can be met by selecting a particular interface, modem, and protocol (communication control program).

NETWORKS

The terminal can be connected in a variety of network configurations. Figure 5-1 illustrates the following configurations:

- Hardwired to a computer (figure 5-1A).
- Hardwired through other terminals to a computer (figure 5-1B).
- Connected to a computer through a modem (figure 5-1C).
- Connected through other terminals to a modem (figure 5-1D).

INTERFACES

The terminal can be used with a variety of communication interfaces. A list of available interfaces and a brief description of each is given in table 5-1. The interfaces are the 13260A Asynchronous, 13260B Extended Asynchronous, 13260C Multipoint Asynchronous, and the 13260D Multipoint Synchronous. A list of some of the capabilities of these interfaces is given in table 5-2.

Once the interface has been selected, the terminal can be configured to operate with a variety of protocols, parities, and data formats. This is done by setting switches or jumpers on the interfaces.

The Installation section contains complete lists of the possible switch settings for each of the interfaces together with brief descriptions of the switches. Also included in the Installation section are procedures for setting these switches.

Table 5-1. Data Communication Interfaces

Basic Communications (Point-to-Point)	
13260A	Standard Asynchronous Communications Interface (Standard RS232C communications interface).
13260B	Extended Asynchronous Communications Interface provides either standard RS232C or 20 mA current loop communications. It allows split speed and custom baud rates.
Multipoint Communications	
13260C	Asynchronous Multipoint Communications Interface provides asynchronous multipoint communications. It allows several terminals to share the same communication line. (A minimum of 8K of display memory is recommended.)
13260D	Synchronous Multipoint Communications Interface provides synchronous multipoint communications. It allows several terminals to share the same communication line. (A minimum of 8K of display memory is recommended.)

Some of the communication features can be selected from the Keyboard and the Keyboard Interface PCA. Tables 5-3 and 5-4 provide lists of these switches together with brief descriptions.

INTERFACE SIGNALS

The signals available on each of the communication interfaces are listed in the Installation section. This information can be used to verify interface compatibility or to fabricate special interface cables.

MODEMS

The terminal can be used with a variety of modems depending on the requirements of the given configuration or network. Table 5-5 contains a list of modems and the configurations in which they can be used.

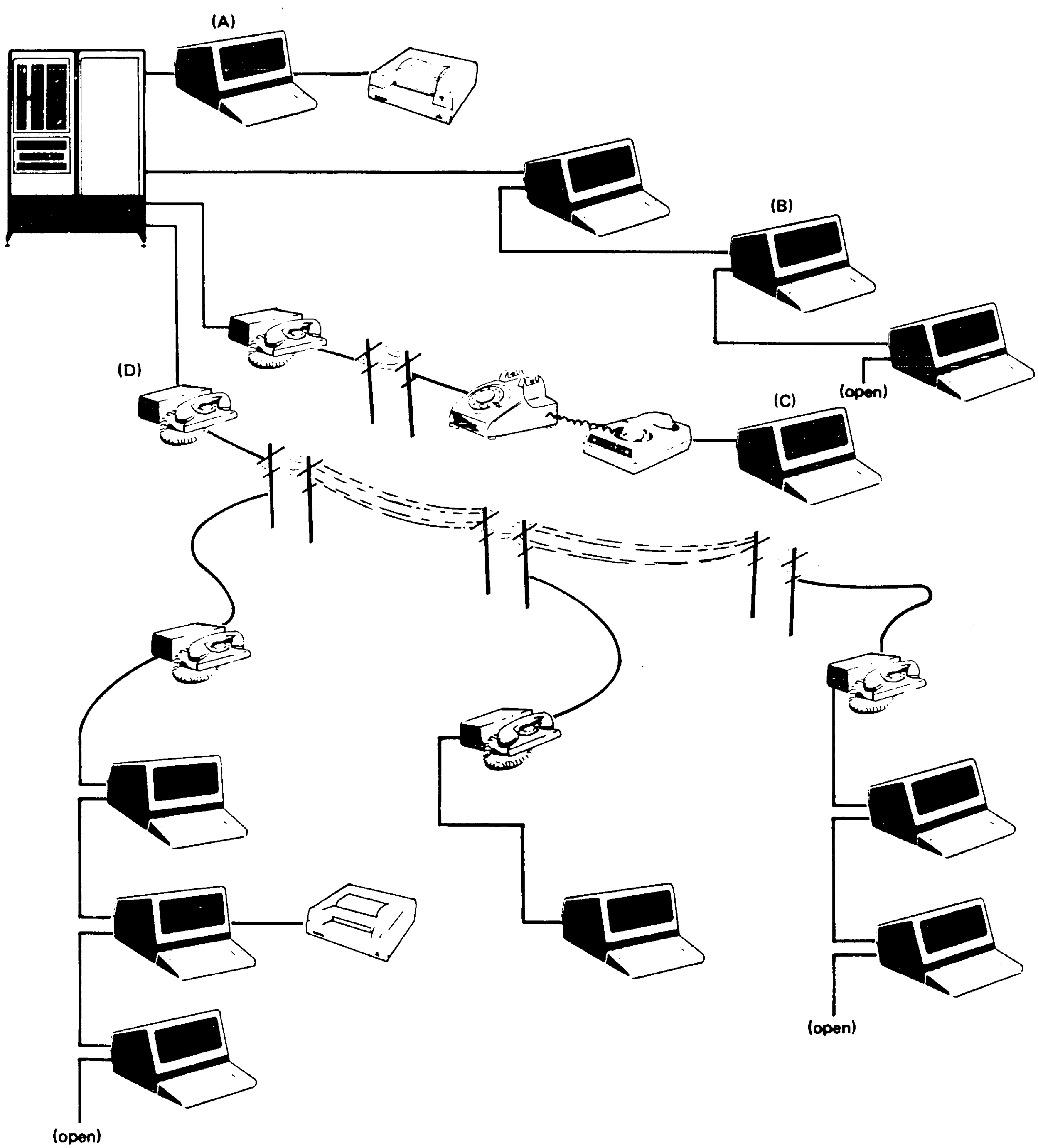
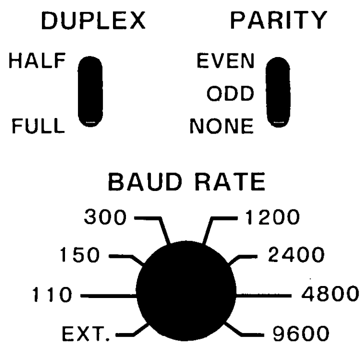


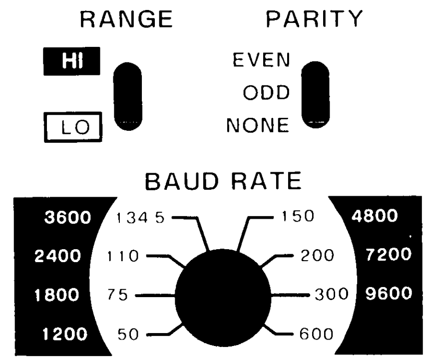
Figure 5-1. Terminal Network Configurations

Table 5-2. Data Communication Interface Capabilities

2645A DATA COMMUNICATIONS FEATURES	13260 A	13260 B	13260 C	13260 D
Transfer Rate:				
110, 150, 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600 bits per second and external clocking (110-9600)	X	X		
300, 600, 1200, 1800, 3600, 4800, 7200, 9600 bits per second			X	
2400, 4800, 9600 bits per second and external clocking (300-9600)				X
Custom transfer rates within 1% from 37.5 to 2400 bits per second		X		
Split speed transmit/receive capability		X		
EIA RS232-C	X	X	X	X
Teletypewriter compatible	X	X		
ASCII	X	X		
EBCDIC			X	X
20mA DC Current Loop		X		
Transmission Modes:				
Character Transfer	X	X		
Block Transfer	X	X	X	X
Half-duplex	X	X	X	X
Full-duplex	X	X		
Asynchronous	X	X	X	
Synchronous				X
Hardwired to computer; dialed (switched) or leased line	X	X	X	X
Modem Compatibility:				
Bell 103A, 202D, 202C, 202S, 202T (Asynchronous)	X	X	X	
Vadic 3400 (Asynchronous/Synchronous)	X	X	X	X
Bell 201A, 201B, 201C, 208A, 208B, 209A (Synchronous)				X
Choice of main channel or reverse channel line turnaround for 202 modems	X	X		
Auto-Answer/Disconnect		X	X	X
Transparency	X	X	X	X
Data Comm. Self-Test	X	X	X	X
Error Checking:				
VRC, choice of parity generation/checking	X	X	X	X
LRC			X	X
CRC-16			X	X
Additional polling protocol features:				
Daisy-chained/multipoint line and modem sharing (up to 32 terminals/modem)			X	X
Synchronous polling				X
Asynchronous polling			X	
Group and device addressing; group poll; broadcast			X	X
Variable I/O buffer sizes			X	X
Configuration status			X	X
Monitor Mode	X	X	X	X
Driver Mode (option)			X	X

Table 5-3. Keyboard Communications Switches





BASIC COMMUNICATIONS DATA COMM SWITCHES

DUPLEX Switch. HALF: Typed characters are processed by the terminal and transmitted to the computer. FULL: Typed characters are transmitted to the computer and not processed by the terminal until returned from the computer. (This function is ignored in Block Mode.) Not present on terminals with multipoint interfaces.

RANGE Switch. This switch is used to select ranges for the BAUD RATE switch (multipoint only).

PARITY Switch. When set to EVEN/ODD/NONE, even/odd/no parity is transmitted for each character. Incorrect parity: a "●" is displayed.

BAUD RATE Switch. Selects data transmission rate of 110, 150, 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, or 9600 baud. EXT: any rate between 110 and 9600 can be selected from an external source. The 110 baud rate uses 2 stop bits per character; all others use one stop bit. In Multipoint configurations the following additional speeds are available: 600, 1800, 3600, and 7200.

REMOTE — When down the terminal is in Remote (on-line) operation. Otherwise, the terminal is in local (off-line) operation.

BLOCK MODE — When the terminal is in Block Mode, typed data is displayed but not transmitted to the computer until requested by the computer or until after the REMOTE key has been pressed and the computer has responded. Otherwise, the terminal is in Character Mode and data is transmitted as typed. (See "Block Mode". In multipoint configurations the terminal is always in Block Mode, regardless of key position.

[1]Basic Data Communications only

MULTIPOINT DATA COMM SWITCHES

BREAK — In basic communications, transmits a BREAK signal to interrupt computer operation. (Transmits a 200 ms space on the asynchronous data communication line and sets secondary channel low for 200 ms.)

In multipoint an RVI is transmitted instead of ACK0 or ACK1 if BREAK is pressed while the terminal is receiving text (Text-In). In other multipoint modes the BREAK key clears the data comm output buffers and sends a CN (CANCEL) to the computer. (Refer to the BREAK KEY description under multipoint.)

● TRANSMIT — The indicator will be lighted when a data link exists for transmission between the terminal and the computer.

ENTER — **On-Line Mode**

- Character Mode, Format Off. The entire line containing the cursor is transmitted as a block.
- Character Mode, Format On. Unprotected characters from the cursor position to the end of the unprotected field are block transmitted. The cursor is left at the first character position after the end of the field.
- Block Mode, Format Off. After receiving a DC1 from the computer, the terminal informs the computer by transmitting a DC2 control character (or DC2 CR(LF) with Line Strapping — see "Strapping Options" that the terminal is ready to transmit characters from the cursor to the end of the line of memory (dependent on Line or Page strapping).[1]
- Block Mode, Format On. After receiving a DC1 from the computer, informs the computer by transmitting a DC2 (or DC2 CR(LF) with Line Strapping) that the terminal is ready to transmit line or current field, or all unprotected fields from the cursor to the end of memory, each delimited by a unit separator, US (dependent on Line/Page strapping).[1]

Table 5-4. Keyboard Interface (PCA) Switch Summary

SWITCH	CHARACTER PROTOCOL	BLOCK PROTOCOL
A	Function key transmission	(not used)
B	Space overwrite latch	same
C	Cursor end-of-line wraparound	same
D	Line/Page mode	same
E	Paper tape mode	same
F	Fast binary read	(not used)
G	Block transfer handshake	(not used)
H	Inhibit DC2	(not used)
J	Auto terminate	same
K	Clear terminator	same
L	Self-test inhibit	same
M	Reverse action of CNTL key with INSERT CHAR and DELETE CHAR keys (wrap function)	same
N	Escape code transfer to printer	same
P	Printer pairing code (2641A only)	same
Q	(not used)	same
R	Circuit Assurance	Internal Data Set Ready
S	Main/Reverse Channel configuration. (Switches S and T cannot be modified programmatically.	Space Compression
T		Output Buffer size. (Switches T and U cannot be modified programmatically.)
U	CPU break	
V	Carrier detect	Synch Mode for Asynchronous operation.
W	Data Comm self-test enable	same
X	Data speed select	same
Y	Transmit LED	same
Z	Force Parity	Transparency

Table 5-5. Modems

MODEM	DATA RATE (BITS/SEC)	LINE TYPE: DIALED/LEASED	DUPLEX FULL/HALF	WIRES 2/4	REV. CHAN.
Asynchronous					
Bell 103A	300	D/L	H/F	2	No
Bell 202S Bell 202C ITT GH 2052 Nokia DS 9320	1200	D	H	2	Option
Bell 202T Bell 202D	1200 (3)	L	H/F	2/4	Option
Vadic VA3400	1200	D	F	2	No
Synchronous (1)					
Vadic VA3400	1200	D	F	2	No
Bell 201C Bell 201A Milgo 2200 Milgo 2400	2400	D/L (2)	H/F	2/4	No
Bell 208A	4800	L (2)	H/F	4	No
Bell 208B	4800	D	H	2	No
Bell 209A	9600	L (2) (4)	F	4	No

Notes:

1. Synchronous modems require the internal clock modem option.
2. Synchronous operation on a leased line requires the switched carrier modem option.
3. C2 line conditioning allows operation at 1800 bits/sec.
4. Requires D2 line conditioning.

COMMUNICATION PROTOCOLS

Control of computer-terminal communications is required for the orderly transfer of data. This control is provided in the form of a protocol or a set of rules and procedures. The protocol used determines who sends and who receives during each phase of communication. In addition the protocol normally provides for an orderly recovery from communication errors.

The protocols available with the terminal allow operation ranging from simple full duplex teleprinter compatibility to bisynchronous multipoint communications. The various protocols can be selected by installing the proper interface and ROM modules. The terminal and the interface can then be configured to meet your specific requirements.

The major characteristics of the available protocols are listed in table 5-6. The following paragraphs discuss each of these protocols.

CHARACTER PROTOCOLS

Character protocols transmit a single character at a time. Data checking, if present, is done on individual characters only (parity). Some configurations allow the transmission of multicharacter groups but no block checks are made. There is no automatic retransmission of data following the detection of a data error. Currently available character mode protocols are Standard, Main Channel, and Reverse Channel.

Table 5-6. Protocol Characteristics

Single Terminal (Character Mode Protocols)	
Standard (Point-to-point)	Standard communication protocol is teletype compatible or can use the DC1 character to trigger multicharacter transfers.
Main Channel	Communication protocol uses special framing characters to control line turn-around.
Reverse Channel	Uses secondary channel signals to trigger line turn-around.
Multiple Terminal (Block Mode Protocols)	
Multipoint	Uses a polling protocol similar to IBM Bisync to serve multiple terminals on the same line.

Standard Communications is a term used to refer to point-to-point or single terminal communications. The terminal can be connected directly to a computer (hardwired) or through a modem. In most block applications the terminal can use a simple "handshake" protocol with the ASCII DC1 character. This protocol can be used with Bell 103 or equivalent modems (full-duplex operation). There are two additional protocols available, Main Channel and Reverse Channel. These protocols are normally only used with Bell 202 or equivalent modems (half-duplex operation).

BLOCK PROTOCOLS

Block protocols transmit a block of characters at a time. Data checking is performed on an entire block of data. A separate block check character (BCC) is generated for each block. If a data error is detected, a retry of the data transmission is made automatically. The currently available block protocol is Multipoint.

Multipoint communications is the use of several terminals sharing a single communication line. The terminals can be directly connected to the computer or can be connected through modems. Multipoint communications require a special multipoint protocol. Additional information on multipoint operation is given later in this section.

The remainder of this section provides descriptions and samples of control and data transfer sequences for various protocols. Included are examples of typical single terminal and multiple terminal organizations together with sample communication programs. Detailed flowcharts of the various protocols are given in Appendix C.

CHARACTER PROTOCOLS

The terminal can operate character-by-character as a completely interactive terminal or on a block of data at a time. Block transfers allow data to be composed and edited at the terminal allowing the user to verify and correct data before sending it to the computer.

OPERATING AT HIGH SPEEDS

If the number of characters sent to the terminal in one sequence exceeds 80, the required terminal processing time may cause some of the characters to be lost. (This usually does not occur at data rates of 4800 baud or less.) The symptom of this problem is the appearance of the ▮ (delete) or _ characters.

There are two ways of insuring that this problem will not arise:

- It is possible to use a call-and-answer procedure between the terminal and the computer. If the computer sends an ENQ (octal 5) character after sending 80 characters, the terminal will respond with the ACK (octal 6) after it has processed the characters. The computer can then send the next block of characters. This is the recommended technique.
- Alternately, delays can be inserted in the application or system software after each 80 character transfer from the computer to the terminal. Transmitting NULL characters (octal 0) is one way to accomplish this. Each NULL character has the effect of 4 millisecond delay when operating at 2400 baud, and 2 milliseconds at 4800 baud. As an aid in calculating needed time delays, a list of processing times for various terminal functions is provided in the table 5-7. The times listed are typical and can vary greatly depending on such factors as the number of characters in the terminal memory or on the display, and the current operating mode.

Table 5-7. Terminal Functions

TERMINAL FUNCTION	TYPICAL REQUIRED TIME (MILLISECONDS)
Alphanumeric Character	0.7
Cursor Up/Down/Left/Right	1.4
Line Feed	1.4
Insert Char	4.5
Delete Char	7.0
Insert Char w/wrap	12.0
Delete Char w/wrap	19.0
Soft Reset (Tapes Stationary)	130
Hard Reset (No Tapes)	159
Forms Mode On	12.0
Forms Mode:	
Home	8.0
Tab	8.0
Back Tab	10.0
Erase to End-of-Line (40 characters)	10.0

CHARACTER MODE

In Character Mode operation (BLOCK MODE key up), the terminal sends characters to the computer as they are typed. This mode of operation can be used for conversational exchanges with the computer.

Example:

Computer:	`Please type your company name`
User types:	`AJAX`
Computer:	`What file number would you like from the AJAX library?`
User types:	`12345`
and so on	. . .

MULTICHARACTER TRANSFERS

There are certain functions that always result in multicharacter (block) data transfers.

- device input/output and control operations, including tape transfers
- special function keys
- status requests
- cursor sensing
- all transfers while in Block Mode

In order for the terminal to make a block transfer, it must first be enabled and then triggered by the computer. Transfers are enabled by the ENTER or special function keys while the terminal is in Block Mode (see figure 5-2). When a transfer is enabled from the keyboard, the terminal sends a DC2 character to the computer to indicate that a data block is ready for transmission. (This process can be modified by strap settings on the Keyboard Interface, refer to Section VII.) A transfer can also be enabled from the computer by an escape sequence requesting status (ESC ^), cursor sensing (ESC a), or device control (ESC&p...) as shown in figure 5-3.

When the transfer is enabled the keyboard is locked out until the transfer is complete. Enabling sequences should not be entered from the keyboard or cartridge tapes because they will cause the keyboard to be locked until the computer responds with a DC1 character. (If the computer does not respond, a soft reset will cancel the transfer and re-enable the keyboard.)

Once a block transfer has been enabled, it must be triggered by the computer before the block of data is actually sent. The computer triggers the transfer by sending a DC1 character when it is ready to receive the data. The terminal also assumes that it has received the trigger when it is first powered up or fully reset, or when the REMOTE key is pressed (down).

The computer software must support the handshaking process used in multiple character transfers. The DC2 character must be recognized as a request to send data and the DC1 character must then be sent to trigger the transfer after buffers have been allocated to receive the data. Additional software support may be needed depending on your need for terminal or device control. There are straps on the Keyboard Interface that can be used to modify the handshaking process. These are discussed later in this section.

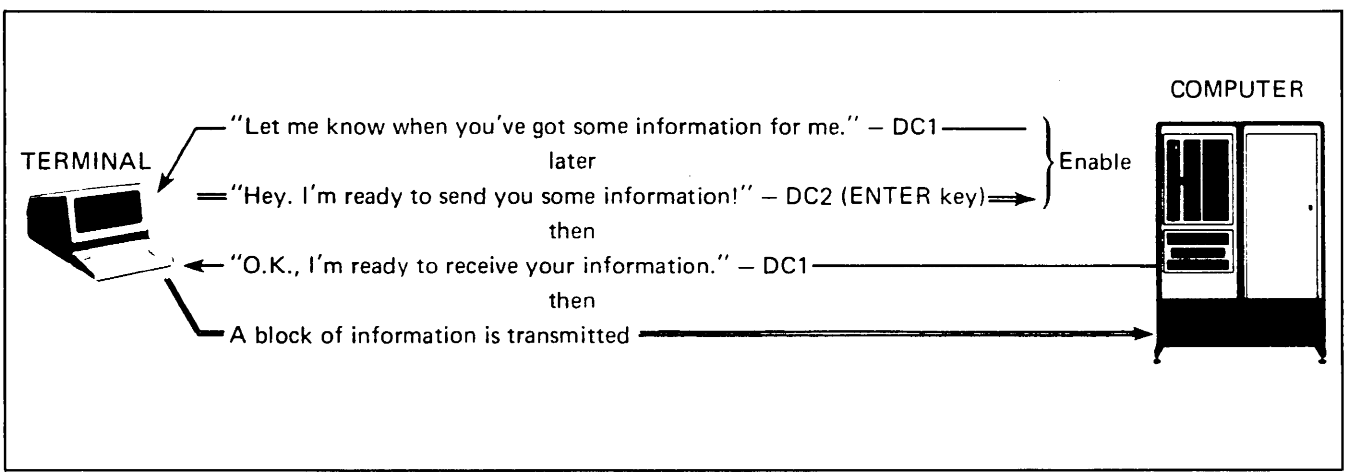


Figure 5-2. Block Transfer Enabled By The ENTER Key

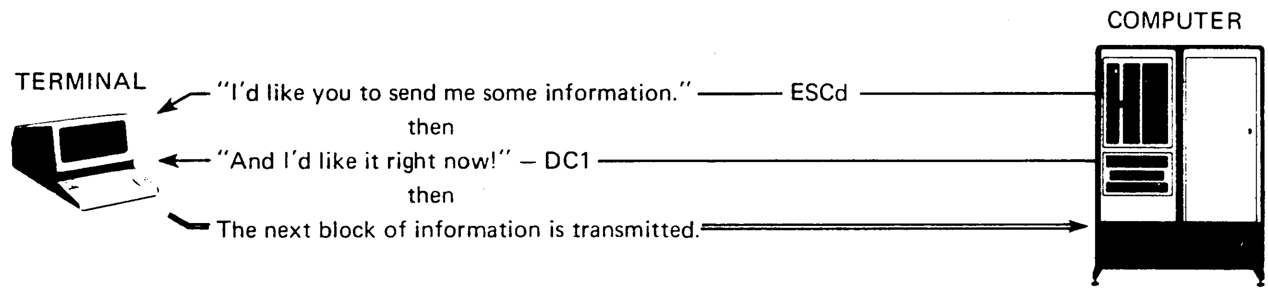


Figure 5-3. Block Transfer Enabled By The Computer

NOTE

The computer should not be allowed to echo back information that has been transmitted as a block from the terminal.

BLOCK MODE

When the terminal is in Block Mode (BLOCK MODE key down) characters are not transmitted as they are typed. Instead, the user can input data to the terminal, then edit and correct the data before sending it to the computer using the ENTER key. The data can be grouped into convenient blocks, either lines or pages (refer to the configuration procedures later in this section). Block Mode operation allows you to efficiently utilize computer and communication facilities.

The G and H switches on the Keyboard Interface PCA are used to control the terminal's response to block transfer requests (refer to table 5-8).

Switch G	Setting H	Block Operation
Closed	Closed	Data transfers used DC1/DC2 handshake. Other transfers are triggered by the receipt of a DC1 character.
Closed	Open	Data is sent when the ENTER key is pressed. Other block transfers are triggered by the receipt of a DC1 character.
Open	Closed	All block transfers require a DC1/DC2 handshake.
Open	Open	No DC1/DC2 handshake is required for any block transfer.

Note: In half duplex operation, a line turnaround is substituted for a DC1 character.

The size of the block of information transferred in BLOCK MODE, and the control characters used to separate fields and to terminate blocks differ somewhat, depending on the Line/Page Strapping of the terminal and whether or not the terminal is operating in FORMAT MODE. Figure 5-4 illustrates these differences.

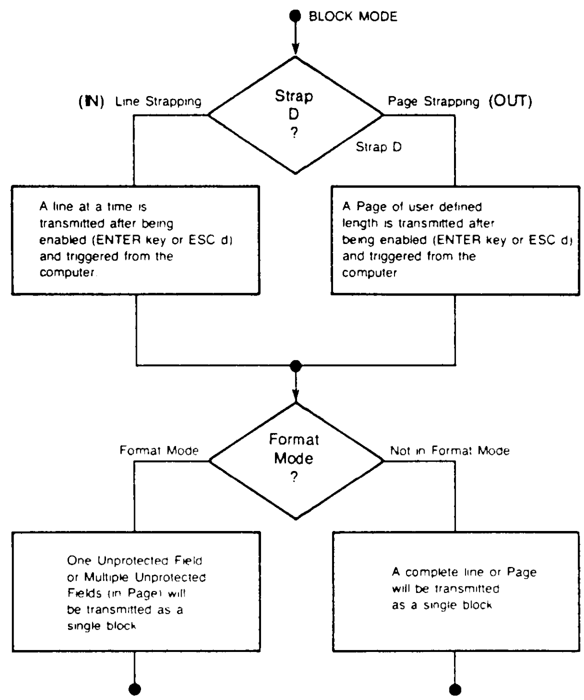
In the example in figure 5-5, the user has an application in which order data is to be entered in the same format as a standard company form.

FULL DUPLEX OPERATION

In full duplex operation, the characters which are typed at the keyboard are transmitted to the computer and are not displayed unless they are returned by the computer. This setting is ignored when in Block Mode.

TELETYPE COMPATIBLE COMMUNICATIONS

In teletype compatible (full duplex, character mode) applications, the terminal can be quickly configured for use by following the instructions given in the Installation section. Note that if block data transfers are used the computer should be programmed to use the simple DC1/DC2 protocol described under Multicharacter Transfers.



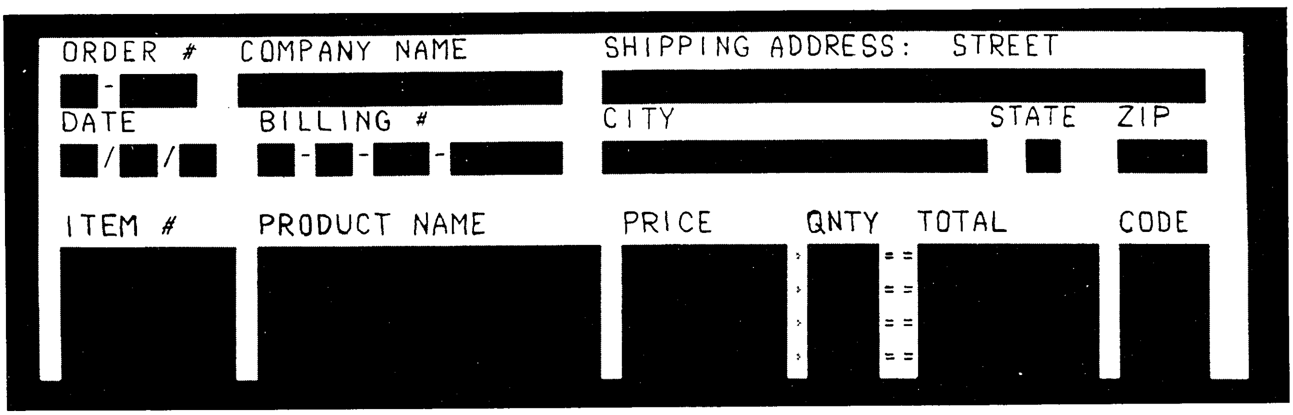
	STRAPPED FOR LINE	STRAPPED FOR PAGE
non-FORMAT MODE	• data is transferred from the current cursor position to the end of the line or to a Record Separator (RS) control character, whichever occurs first. • imbedded control characters are transmitted. If present, the RS character is sent. • the Block is terminated by the transmission of a CR(LF), a Carriage Return and Line Feed if AUTO LF is depressed. (A local CR(LF) is executed to reposition the cursor; if no more information is present at or beyond the cursor the transmission consists of RS CR(LF).)	• data is transferred from the current cursor position to the end of the terminal's allocated memory or to the next RS, whichever occurs first. Thus the Block to be transferred could be several lines of information. • imbedded control characters are transmitted, If present, the RS character is sent. • if multiple lines are in the Block, they are separated by CR LF in the transfer. The Block is terminated by the transmission of an RS.
FORMAT MODE	• only information in Unprotected Fields is transmitted. If the cursor is not in an Unprotected Field it will be forwarded to the next one or RS CR(LF) will be transmitted if no such field exists. Data is transmitted from the cursor position to the end of the Field or an RS, whichever occurs first. Thus the Unprotected Field to be transferred could be longer than one line in length. • imbedded display control characters are not transmitted. If present, the RS character is sent. • the Block is terminated by the transmission of a CR(LF) and the cursor is forwarded one character position.	• only information in Unprotected Fields is transmitted. If the cursor is not in an Unprotected Field it will be forwarded to the next one or RS will be transmitted if no such fields exist. Data found in Unprotected Fields is transmitted from the cursor until an RS or the end of memory is encountered. • imbedded display control characters are not transmitted. If present the RS character is sent. • a Unit Separator (US) control character (or RS character for multipoint) is transmitted between each Unprotected or Transmit Only field. The Block is terminated by the transmission of an RS.

Note: In Multipoint configurations the Group Separator character (GS) is used in place of RS.

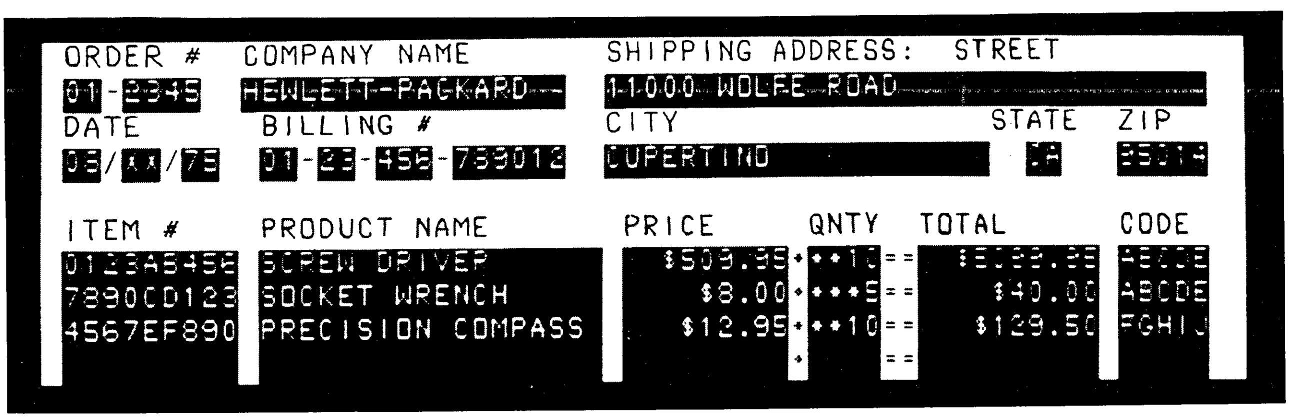
Figure 5-4. Block Mode Operation

STEP 1. The user presses the Special Function key, which he has previously programmed in a remote computer routine to both automatically display the form shown and turn on FORMAT MODE. (REMOTE and BLOCK MODE are depressed.)

STEP 2. All areas of the display have been programmed to be protected except for the dark fields within the form itself. Thus, as data is typed at the keyboard only these dark areas can be written into. The cursor automatically will tab from one field to the next when a field boundary is encountered or by use of the TAB key. The user now inputs data from the keyboard:



The complete form would appear as follows:



STEP 3. After filling out the form and correcting any noticed errors, the ENTER key is pressed once. The following sequence of events would then occur:

- Having received a DC1 from the computer, the terminal transmits a DC2.
- Computer software recognizes the DC2 and responds with a second DC1.
- The terminal receives the DC1 and transmits all data as one Block, fields separated by US's and the Block terminated by an RS:

STEP 4. The form full of data has been transmitted to the computer. The user could then Home the cursor, hit CLEAR DSPLY, to clear only the data from the form in FORMAT MODE, and enter a second set of data inputs — repeating the sequence and re-using the form.

Figure 5-5. Example of Format Mode with Page Strapping

HALF DUPLEX OPERATION (202 MODEM COMPATIBILITY)

In half duplex operation, data is sent in only one direction at a time. In order to change the direction of data flow, a line turn around must occur. This means that the sender becomes the receiver and the receiver becomes the sender. Line turn arounds are controlled by half duplex line protocols. Both the computer and the terminal must use the same protocol otherwise malfunction and loss of data will result. The Main Channel and Reverse Channel protocols are examples of half duplex operation.

Initially the terminal is in the transmit state. While in this state the terminal will ignore data sent from the computer. The terminal will remain in the transmit state until one or more of the following occur:

- An ON to OFF transition on the SB (CCITT 122) line (Reverse Channel)
- An end of data character (ETX or EOT) is sent (Main Channel)
- The user tries to send an end of data character from the keyboard (control-C, control-D)

The above conditions cause the terminal to switch to the receive state.

The terminal then receives and processes data until one of the following occurs:

- An ON to OFF transition of the CF (CCITT 109) line (Reverse Channel)
- An end of data character (ETX or EOT) is received (Main Channel)

The terminal then requests the computer or modem for permission to transmit. The computer or modem responds with transitions of the CB (CCITT 106) and SB (CCITT 122) lines. (If the computer or modem does not respond within 2.6 seconds the terminal will return to the receive state.) If the computer is ready the terminal will begin to send any data present in its output buffer.

The terminal provides a range of half duplex line protocols, including Bell 202 modem compatible protocols. These protocols are selected by switch settings on the Keyboard Interface PCA. Table 5-8 contains a list of the communication switches that are used to select half-duplex protocols.

Half-duplex operation can be controlled either by RS232C signal lines or by control characters in the data being transferred or by a combination of characters and signals. The Main Channel protocol uses control characters while the Reverse Channel protocol uses control signal lines.

Table 5-8. Keyboard Interface PCA Strapping Options for Point-to-Point

STRAP	STRAPPING OPTION	NORMAL OPERATION (SWITCH CLOSED)	OPERATON WITH STRAPPING OPTION (SWITCH OPEN)
A	Function Key Transmission	The escape code sequence generated by the major function keys (such as, ROLL UP, ROLL DOWN, etc.) are executed locally, but not transmitted to the computer.	The escape code sequences generated by all keys are transmitted to the computer. If operating in half duplex, the function is also executed locally.
B	Space Overwrite (SPOW) Latch Enable	Spaces typed will overwrite existing characters.	When the SPOW latch is off, overwriting occurs as normal. When the SPOW latch is on, spaces cause the cursor to move forward but not overwrite any existing characters. The SPOW latch is turned on by a Carriage Return, and off by a Line Feed, Home or Tab.
C	Cursor End-of-Line Wrap Around	At the end of each line, a local Carriage Return and Line Feed are generated; the cursor moves to the beginning of the next line.	A Carriage Return and Line Feed are not generated at the end of each line. The cursor remains in and overwrites column 80.
D	Line/Page	The terminal is set to transfer a line at a time in Block Mode.	Entire pages of information are transferred in Block Mode.
E	Paper Tape Mode	When the READ key is pressed with AUTO LF key latched down, each tape record begins with an LF and is terminated by a CR.	Each tape record is terminated by CR LF.
F	Fast Binary Read	The transmission rate is determined by the BAUD RATE switch on the keyboard.	When an ESC e (Fast Binary Read) is issued by the computer, the baud rate is switched automatically to 9600 baud (if the terminal is equipped with cartridge tape units).
G	Block Transfer Handshake	In Block Mode, all data transfers to the computer are sent upon receipt of a DC1 from the computer.	All Block Mode transfers (i.e., cursor sense, terminal and device status, device I/O responses, display memory, and function keys) are preceded by a DC2. The terminal sends the DC2 upon receipt of a DC1 from the computer. After the CPU receives the DC2 from the terminal, another DC1 is required to trigger transmission of data from the terminal.

Table 5-8. Keyboard Interface PCA Strapping Options for Point-to-Point (Continued)

STRAP	STRAPPING OPTION	NORMAL OPERATION (SWITCH CLOSED)	OPERATION WITH STRAPPING OPTION (SWITCH OPEN)
H	Inhibit DC2	During Block Mode Handshake transfers, the terminal sends a DC2 in response to a DC1 prior to sending data. (See Block Transfer Handshake strapping above.)	A DC1 from the computer is not required to trigger data transfers to the computer. Also, the DC2 from the terminal is not sent during Block Mode Transfer handshakes. (See Block Transfer Handshake strapping above.) Additionally, when the ENTER key is pressed in Block Mode the cursor will be placed in the first column before transmission occurs if operating in Line/Field Mode (switch D closed) or Home'd if operating in Page Mode (switch D open.) Opening both switches G and H eliminate the terminal's use of the Handshake protocol entirely.
J	Auto Terminate	No effect.	When in BLOCK mode and the ENTER key is pressed, places a non-displaying terminator before the cursor position.
K	Clear Terminator	No effect.	Clear terminator caused by Strapping Option J or ESC _ .
L	Self Test Inhibit	No effect.	Self Test function is inhibited. Pressing TEST key or issuing ESC z displays the NO TEST message. TAPE TEST and DATA COMM SELF TEST functions are not affected.
M	INSERT and DELETE CHAR with wrap (Reverse Sense)	No effect.	Reverses effect of CNTL key on INSERT CHAR and DELETE CHAR keys (i.e., when key is pressed, line wrap around is in effect without having to press CNTL key. When either key is pressed while pressing CNTL, normal insert character and delete character functions are in effect.)
N	Escape Code Transfer to Printer.	No effect.	Escape codes relating to the display (e.g., display enhancements, alternate character sets, format mode, fields, etc.) are sent to printer if it is selected as a destination device.
P,Q		Refer to page 7-49 for APL applications.	
R	Circuit Assurance	The transition from receive state to transmit state occurs after both CB (106) (Clear to Send) and SB (122) (Secondary Receive Data) go on within 2.6 seconds. Otherwise, the terminal returns to the receive state.	The transition from receive state to transmit state occurs after CB (106) (Clear to Send) goes on.

Table 5-8. Keyboard Interface PCA Strapping Options for Point-to-Point (Continued)

STRAP	STRAPPING OPTION	NORMAL OPERATION (SWITCH CLOSED)	OPERATION WITH STRAPPING OPTION (SWITCH OPEN)
S,T	Main Channel Protocol	Reverse Channel protocol (both switches closed).	**S-closed, T-open:** Main channel with STX/ETX as Start of Data and End of Data. **S-open, T-closed:** Main channel with EOT as End of Data. **S-open, T-open:** Main channel with ETX as End of Data.
U	CPU Break	The CPU can interrupt the terminal while it is in the transmit state. The CPU initiates an ON to OFF transition of the SB (122) (Secondary Receive Data) line. The terminal responds by turning off CA (106) (Request to Send) and going to the receive state.	The terminal ignores all transitions on the SB (122) (Secondary Receive Data) line from the modem in the transmit state.
V	Carrier Detect	When the terminal is in the receive state, an ON to OFF transition of CF (109) (Carrier Detect) line from the modem causes the terminal to go into the transmit state. Transitions of CF have no effect while the terminal is in the transmit state.	Transitions of CF (109) (Carrier Detect) line have no effect on the terminal.
W	Data Comm Self Test Enable	Enables DATA COMM SELF TEST from either the keyboard or escape sequence.	Disables DATA COMM SELF TEST. If self test is attempted (by either the keyboard or escape sequence), the test will be aborted and ERROR 0 will appear on the display.
X	Data Speed Select	Holds data speed signal low (CH (111) =0).	Sets data speed signal high (CH (111) = 1).
Y	Transmit LED	The TRANSMIT light on the keyboard is turned on when CB (106) (Clear to Send) line from the modem is high. It is turned off when the CB (106) line goes low.	The TRANSMIT light on the keyboard is turned on when the CC (107) (Data Set Ready) line from the modem is high and the 13260B Extended Asynchronous Communications Interface PCA is used. It is turned off when the CC line goes low.
Z	Parity	The PARITY switch on the terminal keyboard is affected as follows:	
		No Parity: Send 8 bits and receive 8 bits. Force bit 8 to zero. Check for parity error. **Odd Parity:** Send 7 data bits + odd parity. Receive 7 data bits + odd parity. Check for parity error. **Even Parity:** Send 7 data bits + even parity. Receive 7 data bits + even parity. Check for parity error.	**No Parity:** Send 8 bits and receive 8 bits. Force bit 8 to one on send. No check for parity error. **Odd Parity:** Send 7 bits + odd parity. Receive 7 bits. No check for parity error. **Even Parity:** Send 7 data bits + even parity. Receive 7 data bits. No check for parity error.

MAIN CHANNEL (CHARACTER CONTROL) PROTOCOL. The Main Channel protocol is for use in half-duplex or Bell 202 modem equivalent networks where secondary channel signals are not available. The Main Channel protocol uses control characters to "frame" each data transmission. These framing characters indicate to the receiving station that a data transmission has begun or ended.

An ASCII STX (octal 002) character can be used to indicate the start of a data transmission. An ASCII ETX (octal 003) or EOT (octal 004) character is used to indicate the end of a data transmission. When these characters are received they are used to perform a line turn-around.

The following switch settings should be made on the Keyboard Interface PCA to operate using the Main Channel protocol:

SWITCH	SETTING	DESCRIPTION
R	Open	
S,T	Closed, Open Open, Closed Open, Open	<STX> data <ETX> data <EOT> data <ETX>

Note that at least one of the S or T switches must be open to select Main Channel protocol.

Example:

U,V,W,X,Y,Z All Open — Variations of the Main Channel Protocol are discussed under Other Protocols and in Appendix C.

The operation of the Main Channel protocol is shown in figure 5-6. Sample data transfers are shown in figure 5-7. Figures 5-7a and 5-7b illustrate the line turn-arounds that occur during a log-on sequence when in character mode. Figures 5-7c and 5-7d illustrate the transfers that occur during block mode operation.

REVERSE CHANNEL (SIGNAL LINE CONTROL) PROTOCOL. The Reverse Channel protocol is for use in half-duplex or Bell 202 modem equivalent networks where secondary channel signals are available. The Reverse Channel protocol uses changes on secondary channel lines SA (CCITT 120) and SB (CCITT 122) to control line turn-arounds.

The following settings should be made on the Keyboard Interface PCA to operate using the Reverse Channel protocol.

SWITCH	SETTING	DESCRIPTION
R	Closed	Monitor the CB line
S,T	Closed, Closed	Reverse Channel (no framing characters)
U	Closed	Watch for computer interrupts (SB>0)
V	Closed	Watch for Carrier (CF) transitions

Example:

W,X,Y,Z All Open — Variations of the Reverse Channel protocol are discussed under Other Protocols and in Appendix C.

The operation of the Reverse Channel protocol is shown in figure 5-8. Sample data transfers are shown in figure 5-9.

OTHER PROTOCOLS. In addition to the Main and Reverse Channel protocols you can select various features of both to configure a custom protocol to suit your own requirements. A flowchart of the overall Basic Communications function including the Half-Duplex settings is given in Appendix C. You can create a custom protocol using this flowchart and the switch descriptions in table 5-8. When more than one terminal must share a modem or hardwired communication line, the Multipoint protocol must be used. Refer to the description of Block Protocols.

MONITOR MODE

Monitor Mode is an added feature available with the 13260A and 13260B interfaces. Refer to Multipoint Monitor Mode for a description.

CONFIGURATION

A procedure for configuring the terminal for point-to-point operation is given in 10.

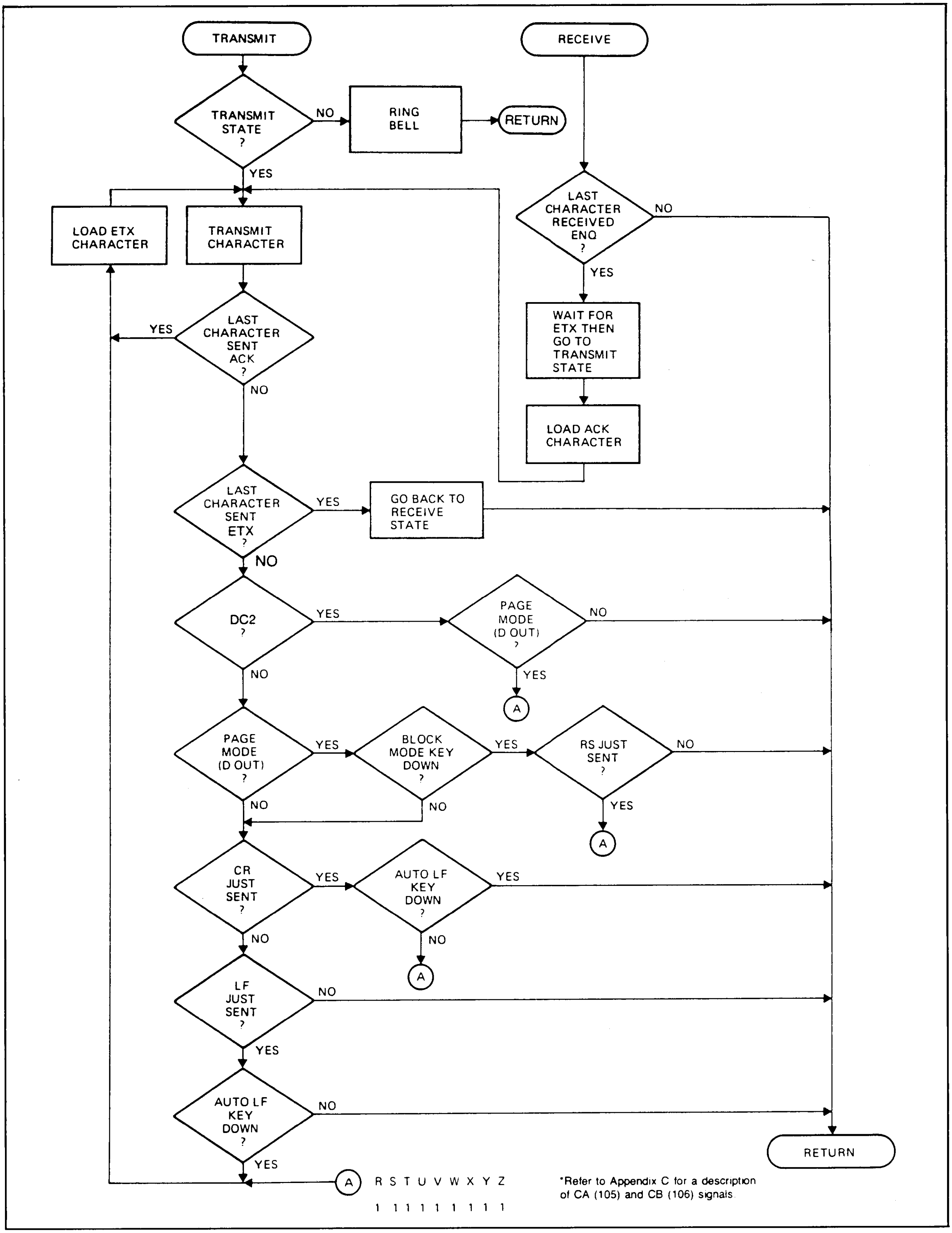


Figure 5-6. Main Channel Protocol

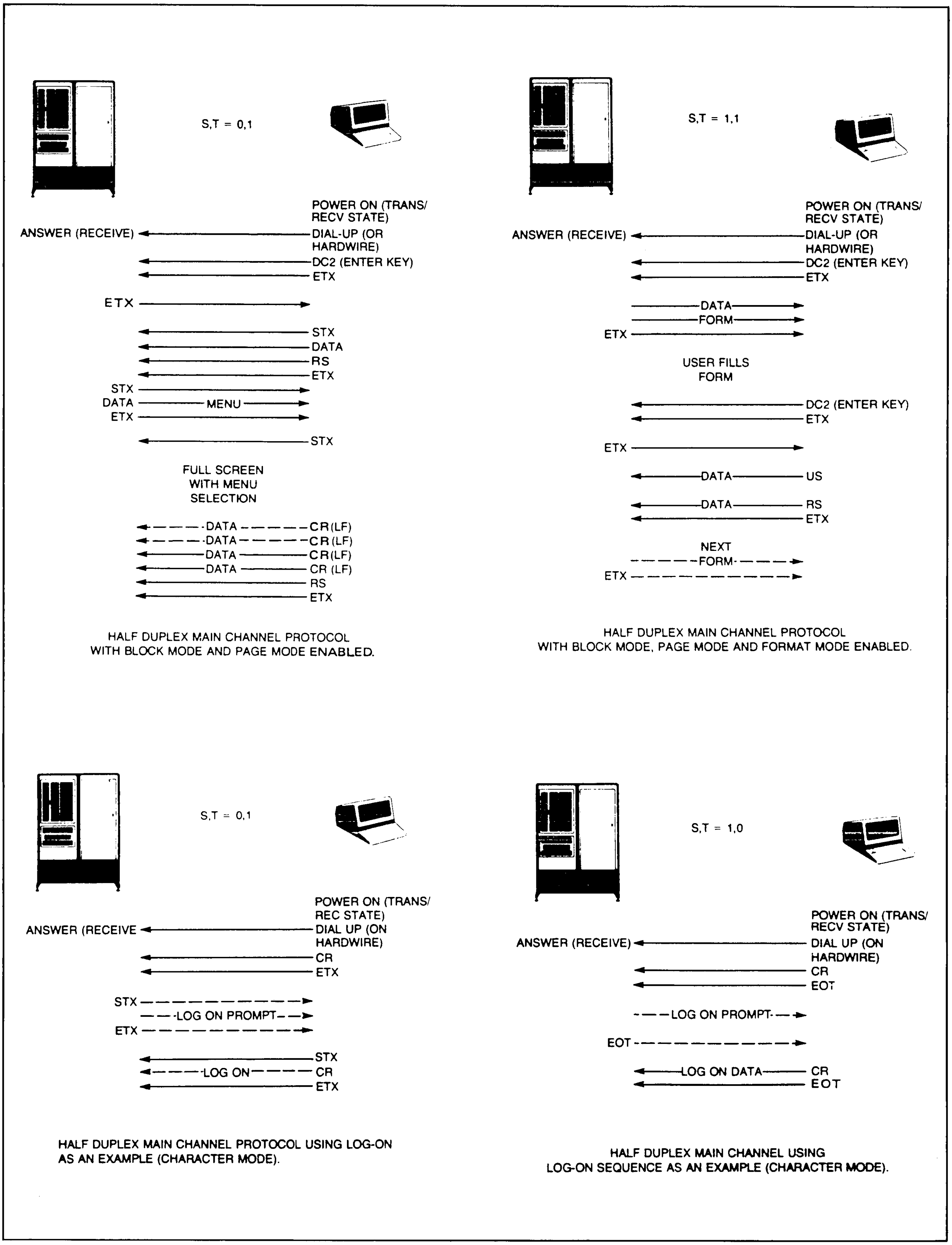


Figure 5-7. Simple Data Transfers Using Main Channel Protocol

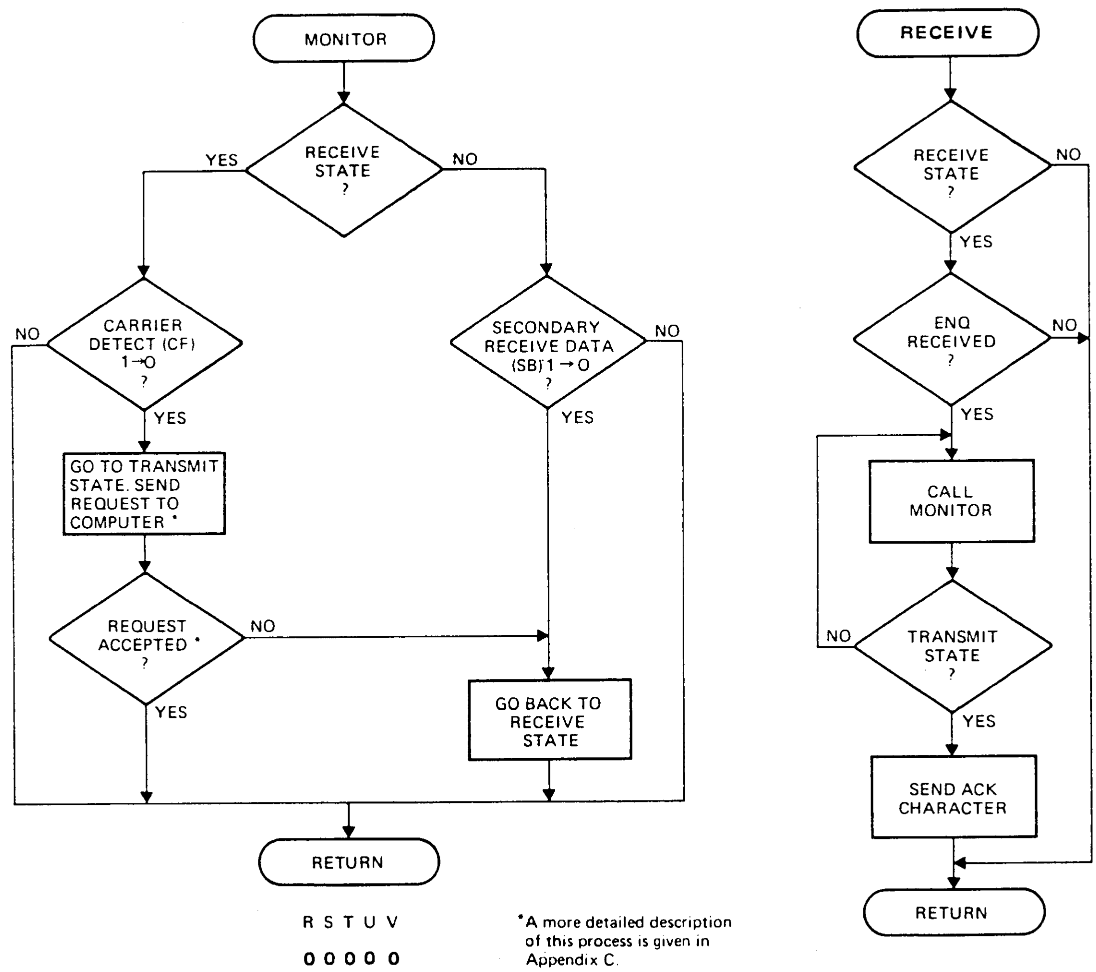


Figure 5-8. Reverse Channel Protocol

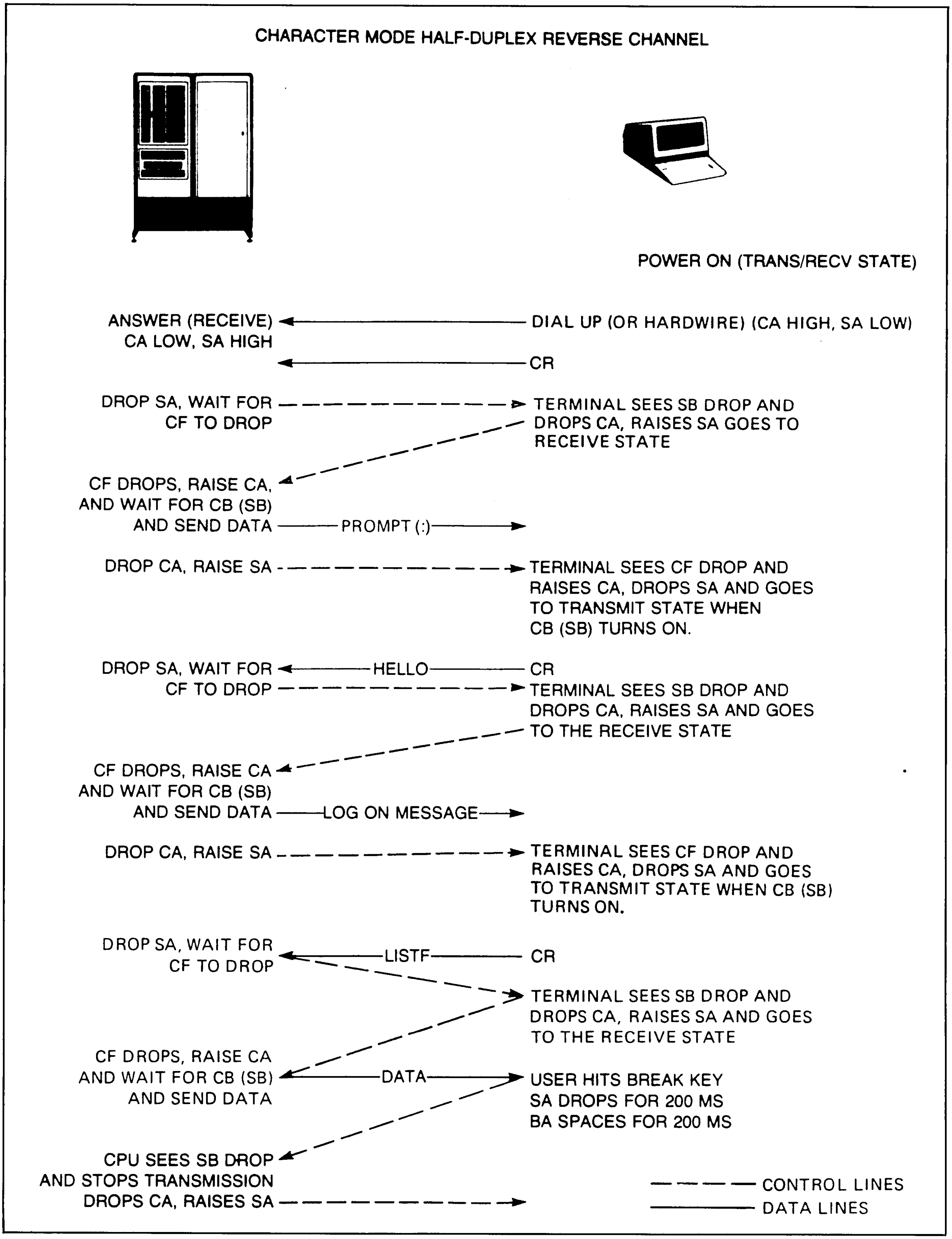


Figure 5-9. Sample Data Transfers Using Reverse Channel Protocol

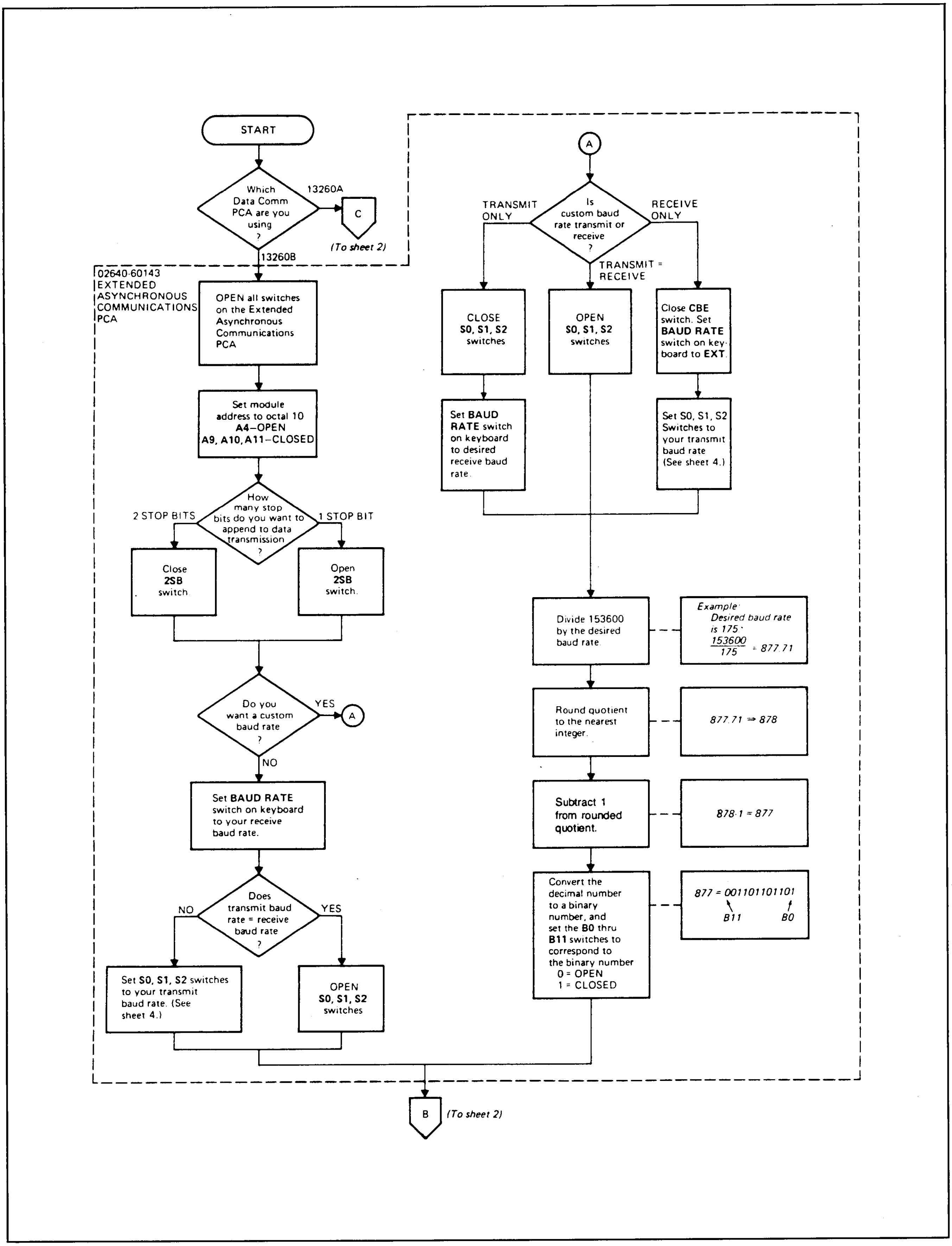


Figure 5-10. Point-to-Point Data Communications Configuration Flowchart (Sheet 1 of 4)

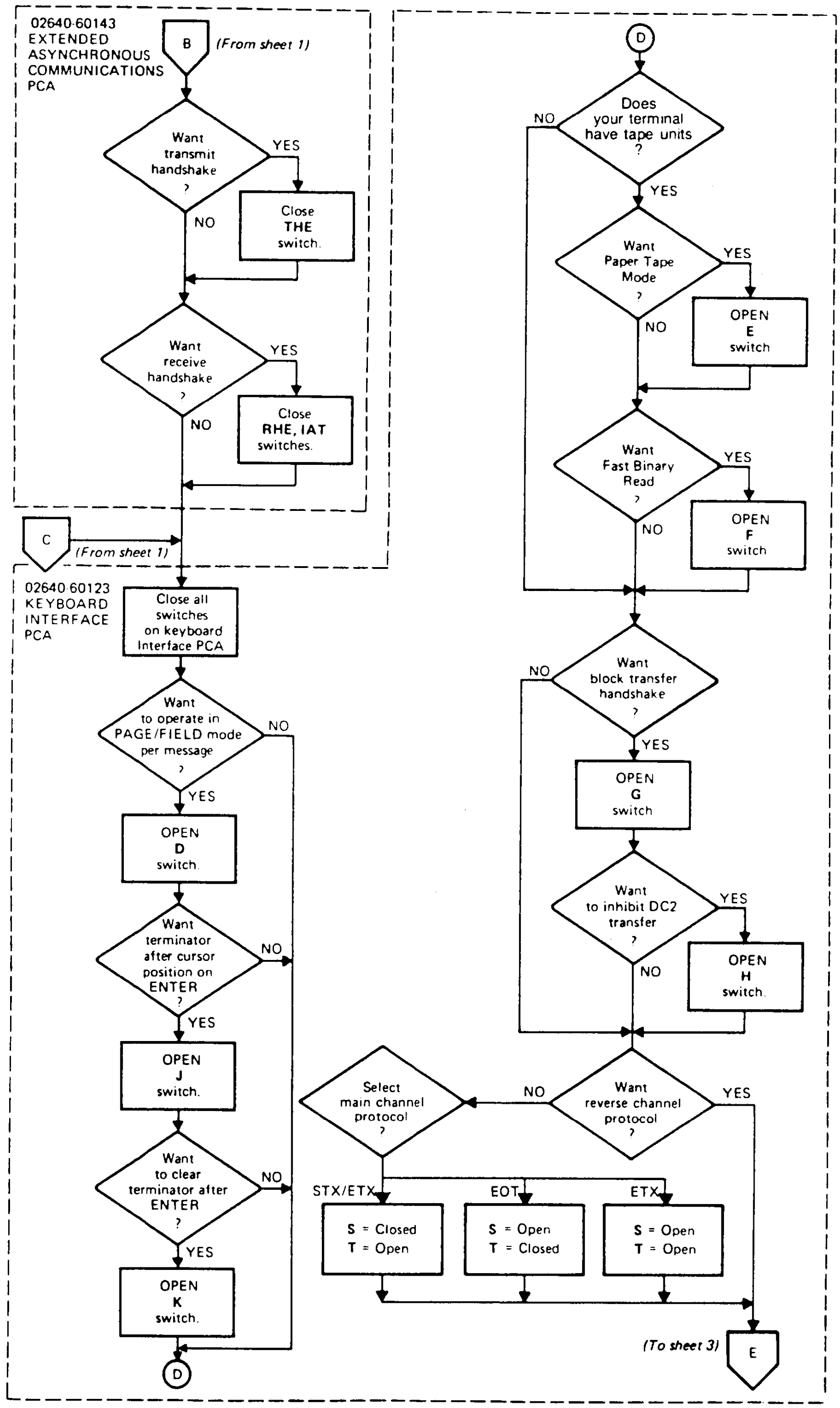


Figure 5-10. Point-to-Point Data Communications Configuration Flowchart (Sheet 2 of 4)

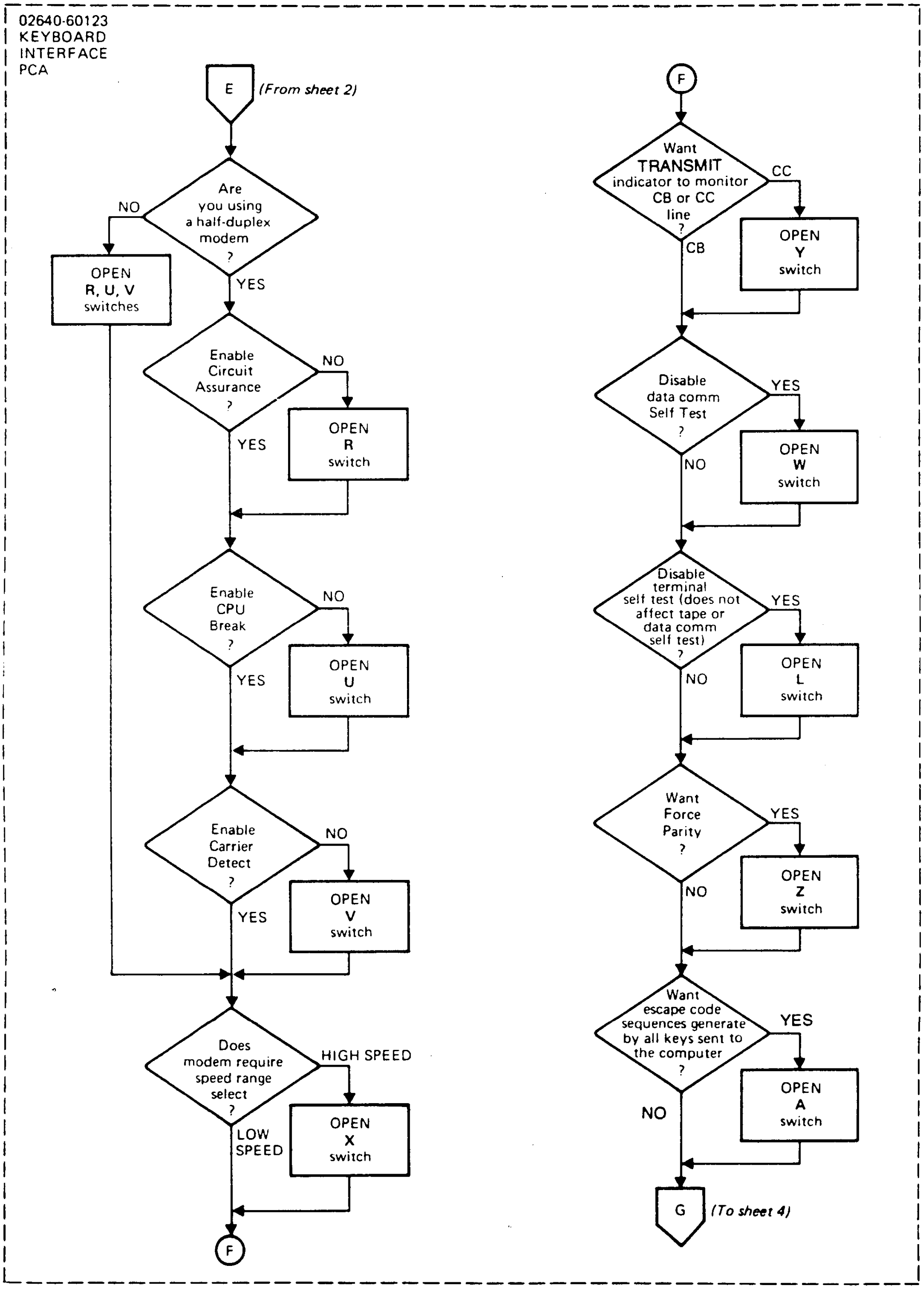
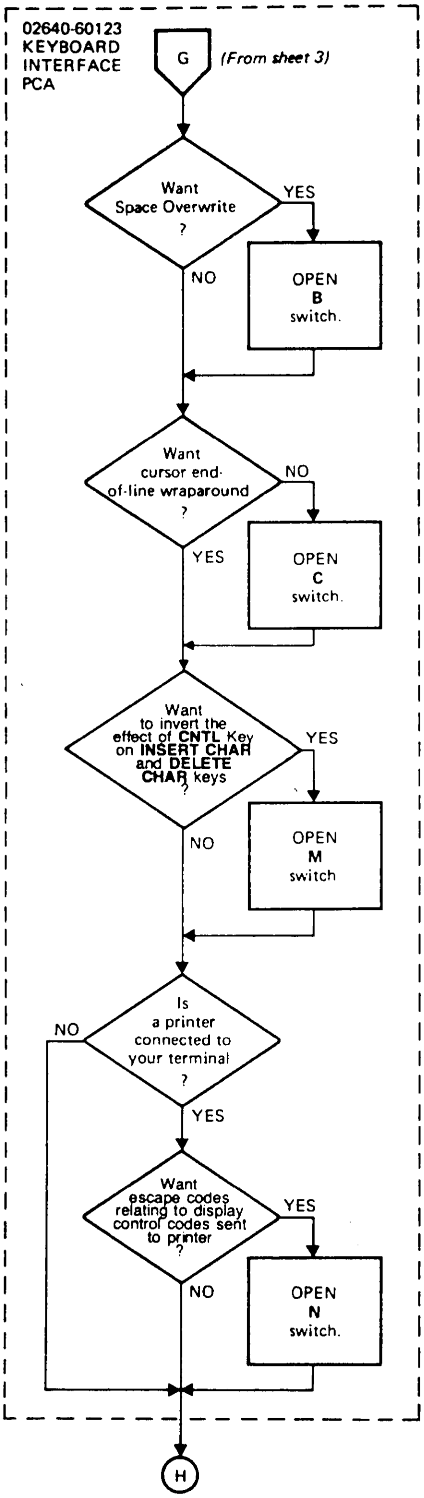
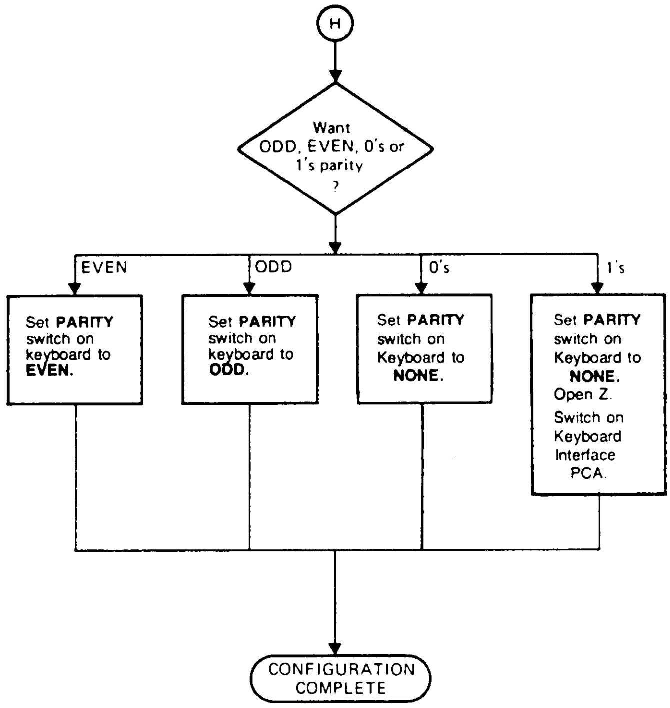


Figure 5-10. Point-to-Point Data Communications Configuration Flowchart (Sheet 3 of 4)





BAUD RATE SELECTIONS

X = Available Split Rate C = Switch Closed O = Switch Open		TRANSMIT BAUD RATE: EXT	CUSTOM	110	150	300	1200	2400	4800	9600	134.5	BAUD RATE SWITCH SETTING
	EXT	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		EXT
	CUSTOM		X		X	X	X	X	X	X		EXT (See Notes)
	110		X	X								110
	150		X		X	X	X	X	X	X		150
	300		X		X	X	X	X	X	X		300
	1200		X		X	X	X	X	X	X		1200
	2400		X		X	X	X	X	X	X		2400
	4800		X		X	X	X	X	X	X		
	9600		X		X	X	X	X	X	X		
	134.5		X								X	
S2S0 Setting		O	C	O	C	C	C	O	C	O		
S2S1 Setting		O	C	O	O	O	C	C	O	C		
S2S2 Setting		O	C	O	C	O	O	O	O	C		

NOTES

The S2CBE switch must be set to its closed position for custom receive baud rates and keyboard BAUD RATE switch must be set to EXT.

When switches S2S0, S2S1, and S2S2 are all set to their open positions, the transmit baud rate will equal the receive baud rate.

Figure 5-10. Point-to-Point Data Communications Configuration Flowchart (Sheet 4 of 4)

MULTIPOINT PROTOCOLS WITH 13260C OR 13260D COMMUNICATIONS ACCESSORY

Block protocols transfer data in blocks. The blocks are made up of three parts:

- Block framing characters.
- Text (1 to n characters, where n depends on terminal configuration).
- Block check character(s).

This data format is always present in block protocols. In addition, block protocols use special character sequences to control all data transfers.

A block check character is included at the end of each data block. If a data error is detected the protocol will normally automatically attempt a retransmission of the block.

Note: Since the Multipoint buffers use display memory, a minimum of 8K of display memory is recommended.

CHARACTER MODE TRANSFERS

Character mode transfers are not permitted with block protocols. All data transfers are implemented using a block data structure.

MULTI CHARACTER TRANSFERS

When the terminal makes a multi character response of fixed length to the computer (status etc.), the data sent will be in the form of a block with framing characters and one or two block check characters.

MESSAGE BLOCKS

A message consists of one or more blocks of text data. The use of blocks enables the terminal to efficiently buffer data, respond to transmission errors and guarantee data integrity. Maximum block size is strap selectable and permits you to use the size best suited to computer requirements. (Refer to Buffer Size.)

BLOCK OPERATION

The block protocol is designed to operate using either synchronous or asynchronous communications. Data transmission is done in multiple character blocks. The block size used is limited by the terminal's communications buffer (refer to Configuration).

The input buffer size limits the size of the data block that can be sent to the terminal. For example, if the input buffer size is 500 bytes, sending a block of data larger than 500 bytes will result in a loss of data. If this happens an EOT character will be sent to the computer.

Two forms of text blocks are shown in figure 5-11. The first is a block received from a computer. Note that no ID characters are used since the terminal or terminals to receive the data have already been identified by a select sequence. The second block is one sent from a terminal. In multipoint configurations, since more than one terminal may have been polled, the first text block sent from each terminal must have the terminal ID included. The ID characters are not repeated (as in poll and select sequences) since they are included in the block check character.

```
             Included in BCC
             /             \
<STX> <TEXT><ETB/ETX> <BCC><PAD>
       \      /
   Included in block size
```

(a) Received from the Computer

```
             Included in BCC
      /                               \
<STX> <GID*><DID*><TEXT><ETB/ETX> <BCC><PAD>
\                                /
          Included in block size
```

(b) Sent by the Terminal

* Multipoint only

Figure 5-11. Examples of Block Transmissions

TEXT TERMINATION. When the terminal is receiving text (Text-In mode) it will accept only ETB (octal 27), ETX (octal 3), or ENQ (octal 5) as a text block terminator. An ETB indicates the end of a block with one or more blocks to follow. An ETX indicates the end of the current block and the end of the text transfer. An ENQ character indicates that the current block has been aborted. The terminal will respond to the ENQ with an NAK to request the retransmission of the aborted text block. When the terminal is sending data (Text-Out mode), it will terminate text blocks with either an ETB, or ETX character.

The terminal may send a STX ENQ as a Temporary Text Delay (TTD) notification. This indicates that there is more text to come but that it is not ready to be transmitted (i.e., it is still being read from a cartridge tape). A TTD should be answered with a NAK to request the transmission of the text block, or an EOT to reset the terminal to control mode.

All characters sent or received between the STX character and the terminating character must not be more than 40 milliseconds apart for asynchronous operation (13260C). Synchronous operation requires SYN characters to be sent as fill characters if no text characters are ready for transmission.

DATA CHECKING. There are two types of data checking used with the multipoint protocol. The first is a check of each character as it is received and is called parity or a vertical redundancy check (VRC). This check is only used for ASCII coded characters. The second is a check of an entire block of data and is called a block check. Two types of block check are available. The first is a longitudinal redundancy check (LRC). You can also choose a more complex block check called a cyclic redundancy check (CRC).

Character Checking. The vertical redundancy check is also known as a parity check. When an ASCII character is transmitted by the computer or the terminal, the high order (eighth) bit of each character is set to a "1" or a "0" to make the number of "1" bits in the character either even (EVEN parity) or odd (ODD parity). The parity must be the same for both the computer and the terminal. For example, if even parity is used the high order bit of each character would be set to cause the number of "1" bits in the character to be even.

Character checking is not done when EBCDIC code is used or when operating in transparency mode. The parities available are listed in table 5-9.

Table 5-9. Parities Available with ASCII Data

ODD PARITY	Input characters are checked for odd parity. Output characters are supplied with odd parity.
EVEN PARITY	Input characters are checked for even parity. Output characters are supplied with even parity.
NONE PARITY	Input characters are checked for a "0" parity bit. Output characters are supplied with a "0" bit for parity.

Block Checking. Each block includes a block check character (BCC). The BCC character(s) is in addition to the parity bit set for each character transmitted. This BCC can be a one (LRC) or a two (CRC16) character check sum. The type of BCC and parity desired can be set to match almost any communications requirements.

LRC. The LRC check character is a 7 bit check sum obtained by exclusive "OR"ing the low order 7 bits of each character included in the text block. A parity bit (VRC) is then added to this character when it is transmitted. For EBCDIC, all 8 bits are "OR'ed" together and no parity bit is added.

CRC16. The CRC16 check is a 16 bit (two character) check sum calculated using the following formula:

$$X^{16} + X^{15} + X^2 + 1$$

This is compatible with the CRC16 check sum used by IBM.

STRAP SELECTABLE OPTIONS. The following options are strap selectable on the interfaces used by the block protocols:

- Code Selection (ASCII/EBCDIC)
- Block Check Character (LRC/CRC16)
- Data Comm Buffer Size
- Space Compression
- Synch Characters

Code Selection (ASCII/EBCDIC). The terminal can be set to use either ASCII or EBCDIC data codes. All data and most control characters translate directly from one code to the other (map to the same graphic). A list of the characters and their codes is given in Appendix C. Control characters that do not translate directly between the two codes are:

ASCII		
	graphic	octal
ACK	ᑫ 0	020 060
ACK1	ᑫ 1	020 061
WACK	ᑫ ;	020 073
RVI	ᑫ <	020 074

EBCDIC		
	graphic	octal
ACK0	ᑫ (no graphic	020 160
ACK1	ᑫ / equivalent)	020 141
WACK	ᑫ ,	020 153
RVI	ᑫ @	020 174

EBCDIC characters that have no equivalent ASCII character are converted to a "?" character.

All terminals on the same communication line must use the same code type.

The J07 switch is used to select the code to be used to represent data. The codes available are as follows:

J07		
0	(closed)	= ASCII
1	(open)	= EBCDIC

Block Check Character (BCC). The Block Check Character is used to verify the accuracy of transmitted data. Switch J06 allows you to select the type of test used. The terminal will then automatically perform the proper test and generate the same type of check character sent to the computer. The types of check character available are as follows:

J06		
0	(closed)	= Longitudinal redundancy check (LRC)
1	(open)	= Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC 16)

EXTENDED TEXT FEATURE. The Extended Text Feature is selected by setting the J05 switch on the multipoint interface to the 1 (open) position.

J05		
1	(open)	= Extended features
0	(closed)	= No effect

The Extended Text feature can be used to generate and delete three special characters used with an IBM 3270 terminal. After the computer has selected the terminal to receive data, the first text block will have the following form:

```
      3 leading characters
     /                    \
    ␂   ␛   1   WCC   TEXT   ␃
```

Note that the characters follow STX and precede the text block. Since these characters are not used by the terminal, they would normally be accepted as a part of the text block. Selecting the Extended Text feature will cause the terminal to discard these three characters before processing the text.

When the first block of text is sent to the computer in response to a POLL sequence, the computer expects to see the following:

```
  ␂ GID DID AID CCA CCA TEXT ␃
             \           /
        3 leading characters
```

The leading characters that are sent by the terminal are as follows:

AID — attention I.D. This character will normally be an apostrophe (') 47 octal ('047'). If you use the PA or PF functions refer to their descriptions elsewhere in this section.

CCA — Current Cursor Address. This is a two character address and will always be SP,SP ('040 040'). This is the cursor home position (0,0).

Note that if you have configured the terminal for text mode compatibility and are not operating with such a system, the first three characters in the first text block received by the terminal will be ignored. Also, the three leading characters (AID, CCA, CCA) will be embedded in the transmitted text block.

Buffer Size. You must set the amount of terminal memory allocated for use as input and output communication buffers. When the terminal is inputting data it uses this space for a single input buffer. When the terminal is outputting data the buffer space is divided into two or more output buffers. The basic terminal configuration uses a 500 byte input buffer or two 250 byte output buffers.

When the terminal is selected, any data waiting in the output buffers is lost. The output buffers are then used as a single input buffer to hold data sent from the computer until the terminal can process the characters.

The terminal will respond to select sequences with a WACK when there are fewer than 250 bytes available in the input buffer. The terminal will respond with an ACK as soon as 250 bytes of buffer space become available. Note that if too large a block is sent to the terminal following the ACK it may result in a buffer overflow and an EOT will be returned.

It is often desirable to increase the size of the communication buffers to optimize use of the computer. The size of the terminal's input buffer can be set on the communication interface. The input buffer size can range from 500 to 4000 bytes.

If there is no RAM memory installed in the address range 48K-52K, buffer space is allocated from the terminal's display memory (see figure 7-10). This means that the larger the buffer size, the smaller the amount available to display memory. (A minimum of 8K of display memory is recommended.)

Input buffer size is set by switches J17 and J16 as follows:

J17	J16	Input Buffer Size	
0	0	= 500 bytes	where 1 = open
0	1	= 1000 bytes	0 = closed
1	0	= 2000 bytes	
1	1	= 4000 bytes	

Output buffer size can range from 250 to 2000 bytes. Output buffer sizes are limited to a maximum of one half the input buffer size. Output buffer sizes are set with switches T and U on the Keyboard Interface as follows:

T	U	Output Buffer Size
0	0	2 buffers, each one half the size of the input buffer (2000 max)
1	0	250 bytes max
0	1	500 bytes max
1	1	1000 bytes max

where: 1 = open
0 = closed

Between 4 and 10 additional header and framing characters will be added to the output buffers depending on other configuration operations selected. Note that if the output buffer is inadvertantly set larger than one half of the input buffer size the terminal will default to the 0,0 setting of the T and U switches.

Space Compression. The terminal can be configured to compress multiple space characters within a text block into a single space.

This can reduce the time needed to transmit a given block of data.

Example:

Initial Text

AJAX Corp.
110 N. Sea Road
New York, NY 11011

Uncompressed (59 bytes) Δ = space

ΔΔAJAXΔΔCorpΔΔΔΔΔ110ΔN.ΔSeaΔRoadΔΔΔ
ΔΔNewΔYork,ΔNYΔΔΔΔ11011

Compressed (45 bytes) Δ = space

ΔAJAXΔCorpΔ110ΔN.ΔSeaΔRoadΔNewΔYork,ΔNYΔ11011

Space Compression is selected by opening the S switch on the Keyboard Interface PCA.

S	
0 (closed)	= No effect
1 (open)	= Space Compression

Synch Characters. In asynchronous configurations opening Switch V on the Keyboard Interface PCA causes SYN characters to be inserted at the beginning of each transmission and at a minimum of 1 second intervals until the end of transmission. This allows the use of a single generalized data communication driver for both synchronous and asynchronous operation.

TRANSPARENCY MODE (BINARY OPERATION). Transparency mode allows you to send and receive 8 bit binary data. This allows the sending of data bit patterns that might otherwise be interpreted as control characters.

This mode is controlled with the following character sequences:

DLE STX	Start transparency.
DLE ETX or DLE ETB	Ends transparency.
DLE DLE	Allows one DLE character to be sent. The bit pattern for DLE will vary with the parity used.
DLE SYN	Allows one SYN character to be sent (for synchronous operation). Not included in text or BCC.
DLE ENQ	Aborts current transmission. A BCC character is not expected.

Once in transparency mode, in order to send control characters and have them interpreted as control characters rather than binary data, the control character must be preceded with a single DLE character. Single DLE characters are seen as the beginning of control sequences rather than data. The first DLE character of the above sequences is never included in the block check.

Note that whenever control character sequences are used in transparent mode they must have proper parity or they will not be interpreted as control characters.

Example:

```
      These characters are not included in the block check
 /             /              /              \
DL SX <data> DL DL <data> DL SY <data> DL EX  BCC  PAD
    \                                      /
 Begin block check                  End block check
```

The terminal will always accept transparent data. Escape sequences can be used to cause it to transmit transparent data. The Z strap can also be used to cause the transparent transmission of all data at all times (permanent transparent text OUT mode).

BLOCK PROTOCOL CONTROL SEQUENCES

Block protocols require specific control sequences to acknowledge text block transfers, terminate text transfers or to inform the sender or receiver of status changes. These sequences consist of one or more data link control characters. A list of these control characters are given in table 5-10. A summary of the uses of these characters is given in table 5-11.

Figure 5-12 illustrates the operation of the various control characters used in the block protocol.

Table 5-10. Block Protocol Control Characters

CONTROL CHARACTER	ASCII CODE (OCTAL)	DESCRIPTION
Data link control characters. These characters are used to frame messages and acknowledgements for both transmitted and received text blocks. They are also used to control all communications in an orderly fashion.		
DLE	020	Data Link Escape. This is the first character in two byte control characters. It is used to indicate that the second character is to be interpreted as a control rather than a data character. The DLE character has no meaning when used alone.
ACK0 (DLE 0)	020 060	Acknowledge 0. These control characters are sent by the terminal after being selected to tell the computer that the terminal is ready to accept a text block. They are also sent by the receiving station (computer or terminal) after even text blocks (2, 4, etc.) to tell the sending station (terminal or computer) that the block was received properly (see ACK1). The alternating ACK0/ACK1 sequence is initialized to ACK0 following a select sequence or to ACK1 after a poll sequence.
ACK1 (DLE 1)	020 061	Acknowledge 1. These control characters are sent by the receiving station (computer or terminal) after odd text blocks (1, 3, 5, etc.) to tell the sending station (terminal or computer) that the block was received properly (see ACK0).
WACK (DLE ;)	020 073	Wait Before Transmit. These characters are sent by the receiving station to indicate that the last block was properly received but that the receiving station requests that the sender wait before sending the next block. The sending station should then send an ENQ. The receiving station will than return an ACK0/1 if it is ready to receive data or a WACK in order to continue waiting.
NAK	025	Negative Acknowledge. This character is returned in response to a text block to indicate that the block was rejected because of a bad block check or because of improper framing characters. When received by the terminal after it has sent a text block, the terminal will retransmit the block.
ENQ	005	Enquiry. This character is always used as to terminate a POLL or SELECT sequence. It is also used by the sending station to request a retransmission of the acknowledgement for the previous text block. When used as a block terminator, ENQ indicates that the computer has aborted the block (forward abort or TTD). The terminal will respond with a NAK to acknowledge the abort command.
STX	002	Start of Text. This character must be the first character in every text block. It tells the receiving station to begin accumulating a block check character. The STX character is not included in the block check.
ETB	027	End of Transmission Block. This character is used to tell the receiving station to stop accumulating a block check character and that the next character transmitted will be the block check character. When used the ETB character must always follow the last character in the text block. The ETB character is included in the block check character accumulation. (See the ETX character.)
ETX	003	End of Text. This character must be the last character of the last (or only) text block in a message. It tells the receiving station to stop accumulating a block check character. The ETX character is included in the block check character. (See the ETB character.)
EOT	004	End of Transmission. When this character is sent or received by the terminal, it causes the terminal to switch to Control Mode. It is sent by the terminal when it detects a data overflow condition while receiving text (buffer full), after sending the last text block of a message to the computer, or in response to a POLL sequence when it has no data to send. An EOT is sent by the computer following the last text block in a message to indicate that the computer has no more data to send or when the computer wants to abort the communication sequence.

Table 5-10. Block Protocol Control Characters (Continued)

CONTROL CHARACTER	ASCII CODE (OCTAL)	DESCRIPTION
RVI (DLE <)	020 074	Reverse Interrupt. This character is sent by the computer to acknowledge that the last text block was properly received (see ACK0 and ACK1) and at the same time to request that the terminal stop sending as soon as possible. When this character is received by the terminal, the terminal will immediately send an EOT to the computer. The terminal sends the RVI sequence when in Text-In mode and the BREAK key is held down. This indicates that the terminal properly received the last text block but requests the computer to stop sending text as soon as possible.
TTD (STX ENQ)	002 005	Temporary Text Delay. This character is sent to inform the receiving station that the sender is temporarily out of text but that there is more to follow. The receiver must respond with a NAK for the sender to continue. This sequence will continue until the terminal has more data to send. This sequence might be used in transferring data to and from the CTU's.
Transmission control characters. These characters are used to initialize, synchronize, and terminate data without affecting data integrity.		
SYN	026	Synchronous Idle. This character is used only in synchronous communications to establish and maintain character timing between sending and receiving stations. At the beginning of each transmission a minimum of three SYN characters are required. During transmission two pair of SYN characters are inserted at one second intervals.
PAD	377	PAD. This character is used to ensure that the last character of every transmission has time to be properly received before the receiving station begins transmitting. All transmissions from the terminal are terminated with a trailing PAD character (377 octal). In addition a trailing PAD used after an EOT when it is used in a POLL or SELECT sequence is optional. PAD characters received by the terminal are not checked for parity. (Note that integrity of the PAD character cannot be guaranteed.) If the trailing PAD character is not used, the communications interface will wait 40 msec before continuing to ensure all data has been properly received. This may result in a significant slowing of communications.
DLE EOT	020 004	Disconnect. When this sequence is received by the terminal instead of a normal response or text block, the terminal will attempt to disconnect the modem attached to the communication line. (This sequence is only used on switched lines.)

Table 5-11. Summary of Block Protocol Control Characters

	CONTROL		TEXT-IN		TEXT-OUT	
	POLL RESPONSE	SELECT RESPONSE	RECEIVED	TRANSMITTED	RECEIVED	TRANSMITTED
STX-"TEXT"-ETB-ETX	Positive response to POLL.		Sent by CPU as a response to an ACK received from terminal.			Sent by terminal as a response to an ACK received from CPU.
"EOT"	Negative response to POLL. Terminal has no TEXT to xmit.		CPU has no more TEXT to xmit to terminal.	Terminal has detected data overflow. (This may only be a temporary condition, if the size of the transmission does not exceed the size of the terminal input buffer.)	CPU has decided to abort terminal xmission.	Term has no more TEXT to send to CPU or has just received an "RVI".
"ENQ"			CPU requests terminal send last TEXT acknowledgement.			Term requests CPU retransmit last acknowledgement to TEXT.
"RVI"				Terminal acknowledges last text block and requests the CPU to stop sending (BREAK).	CPU acknowledges last TEXT block & requests term send "EOT".	
"ACK0/ACK1"		Terminal tells CPU that it is ready to accept TEXT (ACK0).		Terminal tells CPU that last TEXT block was received OK.	CPU tells term that last TEXT that term sent was OK. OK.	
"WACK"		Term is temporarily busy (term has no available buffers). Cannot accept TEXT.		Term acknowledges last TEXT block received. OK but now term has no more buffers & cannot accept more TEXT.	CPU acknowledges last TEXT block sent by term but tell term to wait because CPU does not have anymore buffs.	
"NAK"				Term detected error in last TEXT block CPU sent. Invalid VRC/BCC or frame chars.	CPU detected error in last TEXT block term sent. Invalid VRC/BCC or frame chars.	
STX-GID-DID-CN-ETX	BREAK has been pressed. Any data that is waiting to be sent to the CPU is lost.					
STX-ENQ ("TTD")			CPU is temporarily out of text. The terminal must respond with a NAK.			Term is temporarily out of data.

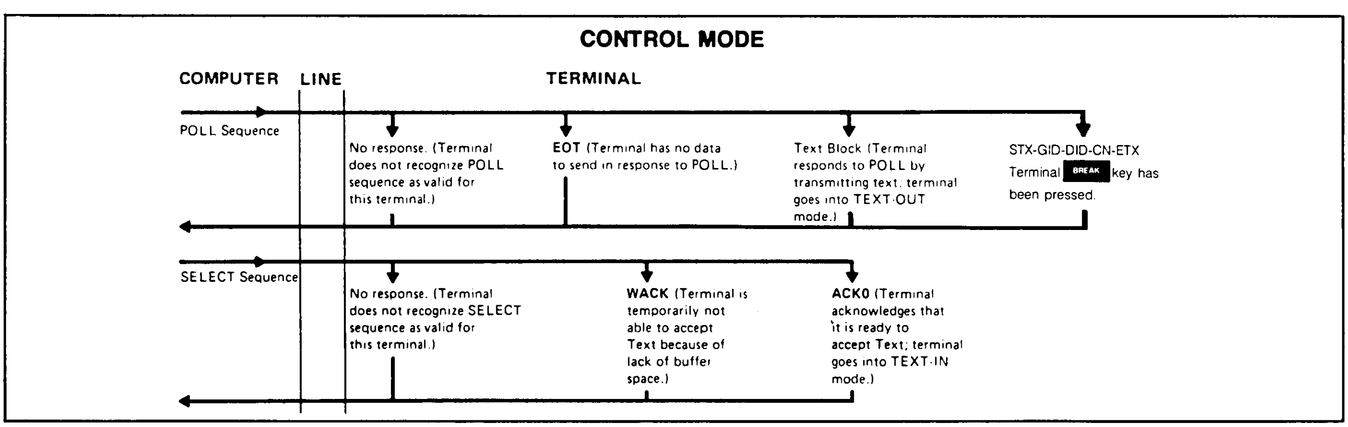


Figure 5-12. Operation of Block Protocol Control Characters (Sheet 1 of 2)

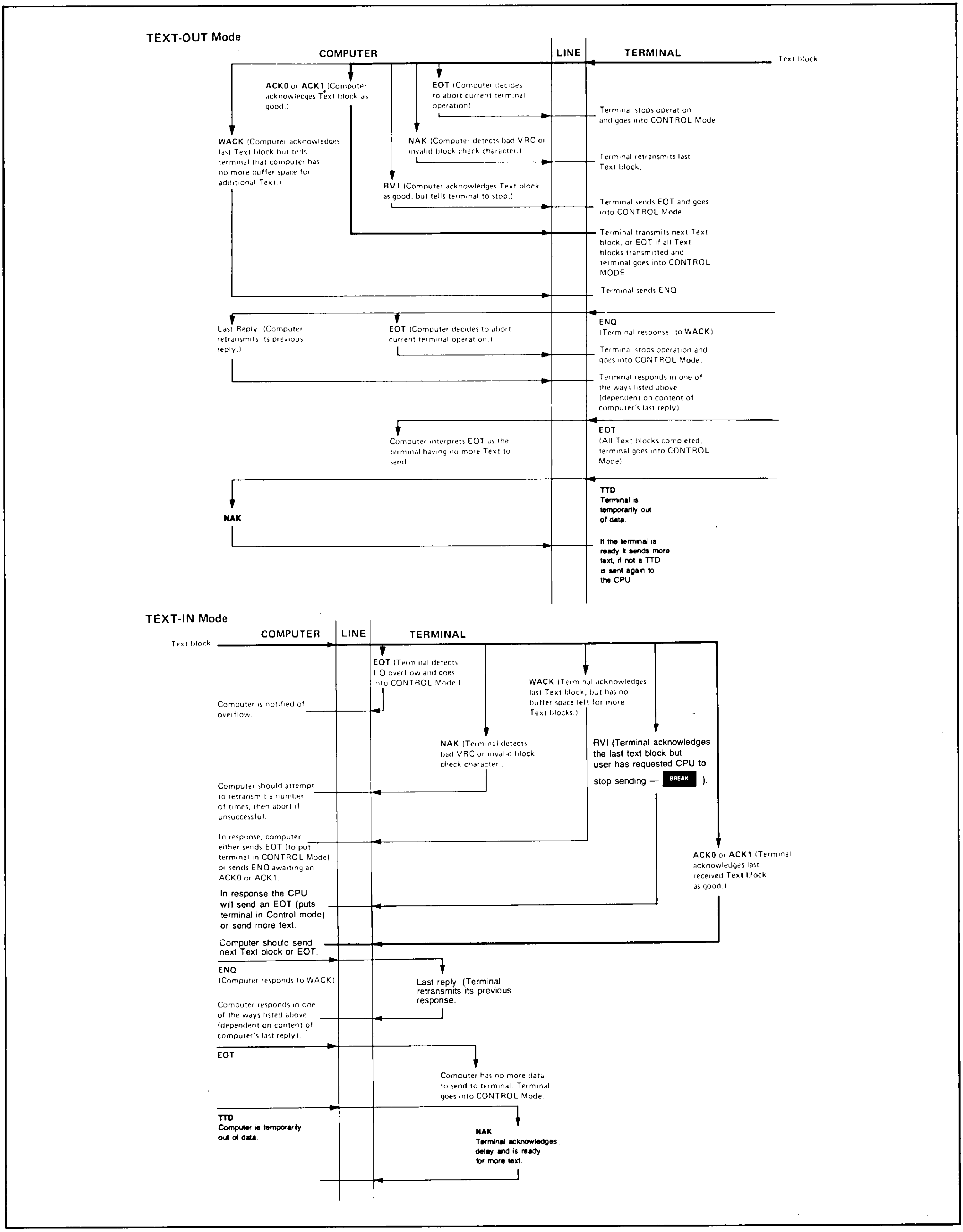


Figure 5-12. Operation of Block Protocol Control Characters (Sheet 2 of 2)

KEYBOARD INTERFACE STRAPS. The keyboard Interface straps permit you to select various communication features. A list of the selectable features is given in table 5-12.

Table 5-12. Keyboard Interface Straps for Block Operation Using 13260C or 13260D Communications Accessory

STRAP	STRAPPING OPTION	NORMAL OPERATION (SWITCH CLOSED)	OPERATION WITH STRAPPING OPTION (SWITCH OPEN)
A	Function Key Transmission	The escape code sequence generated by the major function keys (such as, ROLL UP, ROLL DOWN, etc.) are executed locally, but not transmitted to the computer.	(Same as switch closed.)
B	Space Overwrite (SPOW) Latch Enable	Spaces typed will overwrite existing characters.	When the SPOW latch is off, overwriting occurs as normal. When the SPOW latch is on, spaces cause the cursor to forward but not overwrite any existing characters. The SPOW latch is turned on by a Carriage Return, and turned off by a Line Feed, Home, or Tab.
C	Cursor End-of-Line Wrap Around	At the end of each line, a local Carriage Return and Line Feed are generated; the cursor moves to the beginning of the next line.	A Carriage Return and Line Feed are not generated at the end of each line. The cursor remains in and overwrites column 80.
D	Line/Page	The 2645 is set to transfer a line at a time from display memory, an unprotected field in format mode, or a record from the tape cartridge.	Transfers the entire contents of display memory (a "page"), all unprotected fields in format mode, or a file from the tape cartridge.
E	Paper Tape Mode	When the READ key is pressed with the AUTO LF down, each tape record begins with an LF if the AUTO LF key is down and is ended with a CR.	Each tape record is terminated by CR(LF).
F	(Not Used)		
G	Block Transfer Handshake	No effect.	No effect.
H	Inhibit DC2	No effect.	No effect.
J	Auto Terminate	No effect.	When the ENTER key is pressed a non-displaying terminator is placed before cursor position.
K	Clear Terminator	No effect.	Clear terminator caused by strapping option J above.
L	Self Test Inhibit	No effect.	Self Test function is inhibited. Pressing TEST key or issuing ESC z has no effect. TAPE TEST and DATA COMM SELF TEST functions are not affected.
M	Reverse Sense of INSERT and DELETE CHAR with Wrap.	No effect.	Reverses control function of INSERT CHAR and DELETE CHAR keys (i.e., when key is pressed, line wrap around is in effect without having to press CNTL key. When either key is pressed while pressing CNTL, normal insert character and delete character functions are in effect.)
N	Escape Code Transfer To Printer	No effect.	Escape codes relating to the display (e.g., display enhancements, alternate character sets, format mode, fields, etc.) are sent to printer if it is selected as a destination device.
P,Q		Refer to page 7-49 for APL application.	
R	Data Set Ready (CC)	No effect.	Provides an internal Data Set Ready (CC) signal to the terminal. (Used in applications with the HP 30037A Asynchronous Repeater, and the Group Poll feature.)
S	Space Compression	Space characters are sent normally.	Space characters are compressed.

Table 5-12. Keyboard Interface Straps for Block Operation Using 13260C or 13260D Communications Accessory (Continued)

STRAP	STRAPPING OPTION	NORMAL OPERATION (SWITCH CLOSED)	OPERATION WITH STRAPPING OPTION (SWITCH OPEN)
T,U	Output Block Size	T U	BLOCK SIZE (BYTES)
		C C	1/2 Data Comm Buffer (refer to switches J16, J17 on multipoint PCA).
		O C	250 max
		C O	500 max
		O O	1000 max
		C = closed, O = open	
V	Synch Characters	Asynchronous operation without SYN characters.	Inserts SYN characters during Asynchronous operation.
W	Data Comm Self Test	Enables DATA COMM SELF TEST from either the keyboard or escape sequence.	Disables DATA COMM SELF TEST. If self test is attempted (by either the keyboard or escape sequence), the test will be aborted and ERROR 0 will appear on the display.
X	Data Speed Select	Holds data speed signal low (CH = off).	Sets data speed signal high (CH = on).
Y	Transmit Indicator	Lights TRANSMIT indicator on keyboard when terminal is communicating with the computer.	Lights TRANSMIT indicator on keyboard when Data Set Ready (CC) is on, and it goes out when CC goes off.
Z	Transparency	No Effect	Causes all data sent from the terminal to be transparent.

KEYBOARD DATA COMM SWITCHES. The keyboard data comm switches are shown in figure 5-13.

Parity Switch. This switch is used only with ASCII code and is ignored when EBCDIC code is used. The settings are as follows:

ODD = Odd parity required
EVEN = Even parity required
NONE = "0"s parity required

Speed Switches. Block protocols can be used at speeds from 300 to 9600 baud. Speed selections outside this range are ignored. Keyboard speed settings can only be made for asynchronous operation. Synchronous communications speeds are selected on the Synchronous Communications Interface or are supplied by the modem.

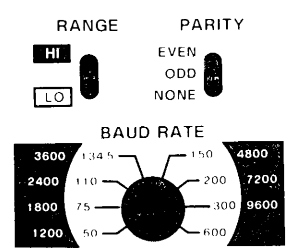


Figure 5-13. Block Keyboard Data Communication Switches

MULTIPOINT COMMUNICATIONS

The terminal is capable of operating in a polled multipoint environment. This means that one or more terminals can share the same communication line.The terminal can be used in networks using asynchronous or synchronous communications. Operation is similar to IBM Bisynchronous communications. Multipoint operation requires the following:

- All communications follow a strict protocol.
- Each terminal must have an address that is unique within its communication line.
- Data is transmitted in blocks.
- All data transfers are initiated by the computer.
- All terminals on the same communication line must use the same code (ASCII/EBCDIC) and parity.
- A minimum of 8K of display memory.

MULTIPOINT PROTOCOL. The terminal uses a multipoint protocol that is similar to IBM Bisync. The protocol is made up of sequences of one or two control characters. Table 5-10 contains a list of the control characters used along with a short description.

BREAK Key Operations. The BREAK key allows the user to tell the CPU or application program that he wants to abort the current operation. (Long text transfers from the CPU can be stopped by holding down BREAK .) When the terminal is in Text-In mode and the BREAK key is held down, an RVI (DLE <) is sent to the CPU instead of an ACK0 or ACK1 after the current text block is received. The CPU software must then respond to the RVI in an appropriate manner.

If the terminal is in the Text-Out or Control mode and the BREAK key is pressed, the terminal will clear all data in the data comm output buffers (the data is lost) and then it will send ␂GID DID ␅ ␃ in response to the next poll from the CPU. The CPU software must then respond in an appropriate manner.

PA and PF Key Functions. Multipoint operation allows you to enter an escape sequence to select operation comparable to the CLEAR, PA, and PF keys on the IBM 3270 terminal. The escape sequence can be entered from the keyboard or a tape unit or datacomm. The PA and PF functions allow you to send a single character to the computer or preface the data with a special character. Then depending on how the computer is programmed, it can use this character to branch to various data handling routines.

The escape sequence to define the character to be sent is as follows:

␛& g ### {F or A}

where:

> ### is the octal code of the character to be transmitted. It can be made up of 0 to 3 octal digits. This character must have an octal code in the range 040 to 176. Note that the DELETE character (octal 177) cannot be used. If no character is defined, the default value returned will be an octal 047 (27 hex) if Extended Text Mode is selected.

The softkeys (f1 — f8) can be loaded with the escape sequence. Refer to the description of "softkeys" elsewhere in this manual for procedures. Note that the softkeys are cleared by a full reset.

PA Operation. If the last character of the escape sequence is an A, it will cause the single character indicated by the octal code to be sent to the computer the next time the terminal is polled. This is done by creating a new text block in the output buffer.

Example: ␛ & g 122 A (Note: R = 122 octal)

This would cause the following text block to be sent to the computer:

<␂><GID><DID><R><␃><BCC><PAD>

PF Operation. If the last character in the escape sequence is an F, it will cause the defined character together with the data currently displayed on the terminal screen to be sent to the computer the next time the terminal is polled.

Example: ␛ & g 120 F (Note: P = 120 octal)

This would cause the following text block to be sent to the computer:

<␂><GID><DID><P><screen data><␃><BCC><PAD>

Note that if the screen data exceeded the terminal block size the transmission would use the normal multiblock format.

When in Extended Text mode the PF escape sequence will cause the character coded in the sequence to be sent as the AID character. (Refer to Extended Text Feature.)

Example: ␛ & g 120 F (Note: P = 120 octal)

This would result in the following text block in Extended text mode:

<␂><GID><DID><P><CCA><CCA><screen text>
<␃><BCC><PAD>

Typical Applications of the PA and PF Functions. Use of the PA and PF functions allow the computer to use a general poll to find out more than just which terminals have data ready to send. If the PA and PF functions are used, the character returned from each terminal can be used to determine whether the terminal has data, no data, a large amount of data, or high priority data. For example the terminal's programmable function keys (F1-F8) can be programmed with the following sequences:

f1 = ␛ & g 110F (H= high priority, text follows)
f2 = ␛ & g 114A (L= one line of text ready)
f3 = ␛ & g 116A (N= no data ready)
f4 = ␛ & g 120A (P= full page of text is ready)

The computer can then respond by polling the individual terminals in a logical order after allocating the necessary resources required for each transfer.

TERMINAL ADDRESSES. Each terminal on a communications line must have an address that is unique on that line. (The same address can be used on a different line). An address is made up of a one character group ID and a one character device ID. This address is set on the data comm interface during installation. The characters that can be used are @, A through Z, and SPACE. This allows for 28 groups of up to 28 terminals each.

The terminal ID characters are listed in table 5-13. The characters in column 1 are used for group and device IDs in polling sequences and for device IDs in select sequences. Characters in column 2 are used for group IDs in select sequences. The lower case group IDs let the terminal tell a poll sequence from a select sequence. Figure 5-14 gives an example of terminal address assignments.

The first 'group' shown in figure 5-14 contains three terminals. Two of the terminals have the same group ID character. Terminals with the same group ID can be controlled by group function commands sent from the computer. Group functions allow you to address all terminals having the same group ID simultaneously. In this way a single command can be used to send a message to up to 28 terminals. Similarly, all of the terminals in a group can be requested to send data to the computer. The terminals send data according to their position in the group, the terminal closest to the communication line being first.

Note that all terminals in the same group must be connected to the same modem.

Additional information on terminal addresses is given under Polling and Selection. Procedures for installing multipoint networks are given in Section VII Installation.

Terminal I.D. Number. Each terminal in a multipoint network must be assigned a unique identification number. The identification number is made up of a Group I.D. number (GID) and a Device I.D. number (DID). The terminal I.D. number is set by switches on the data communications interface printed circuit assemblies (02640-60106 or 02640-60107).

Device I.D. Number. The Device I.D. number may be 0 to 27 and is set with switches J14 through J10. Each bit corresponds to a power of 2. If the number is set to a number greater than 27, the terminal will set the number to 27. For example, Device 6 would be set with the following switch configuration:

Device ID = 6

J14 (closed)				
J13 (closed)				
J12 (open)	=	2^2	=	4
J11 (open)	=	2^1	=	2
J10 (closed)				
				6

Group I.D. Number. The Group I.D. number may be 0 to 27 and is set with switches J04 through J00. Each bit corresponds to a power of 2. In order to use group functions, all terminals in a group must be "daisy chained" together (connected to the same modem if a modem is used).

If the I.D. is set to a number greater than 27, the terminal will set the I.D. to 27. For example, Group 20 would be set with the following switch configuration:

Group ID = 20

J04 (open)	=	2^4	=	16
J03 (closed)				
J02 (open)	=	2^2	=	4
J01 (closed)				
J00 (closed)				
				20

Table 5-13. Terminal Address Characters

	COLUMN 1 USED FOR: *DEVICE ID *GROUP ID FOR POLL *ID RETURN ADDRESS			COLUMN 2 USED FOR: *GROUP ID FOR SELECT		
GROUP OR DEVICE NUMBER	ASCII I/O CHAR	ASCII HEX	ASCII OCTAL	ASCII I/O CHAR	ASCII HEX	ASCII OCTAL
0	@	40	100	'	60	140
1	A	41	101	a	61	141
2	B	42	102	b	62	142
3	C	43	103	c	63	143
4	D	44	104	d	64	144
5	E	45	105	e	65	145
6	F	46	106	f	66	146
7	G	47	107	g	67	147
8	H	48	110	h	68	150
9	I	49	111	i	69	151
10	J	4A	112	j	6A	152
11	K	4B	113	k	6B	153
12	L	4C	114	l	6C	154
13	M	4D	115	m	6D	155
14	N	4E	116	n	6E	156
15	O	4F	117	o	6F	157
16	P	50	120	p	70	160
17	Q	51	121	q	71	161
18	R	52	122	r	72	162
19	S	53	123	s	73	163
20	T	54	124	t	74	164
21	U	55	125	u	75	165
22	V	56	126	v	76	166
23	W	57	127	w	77	167
24	X	58	130	x	78	170
25	Y	59	131	y	79	171
26	Z	5A	132	z	7A	172
27	SP	20	040	–	2D	055

Shaded values only are used by IBM 3270 configurations. The SP character only is allowed in Group Polls and the – character only is allowed in Group Selects.

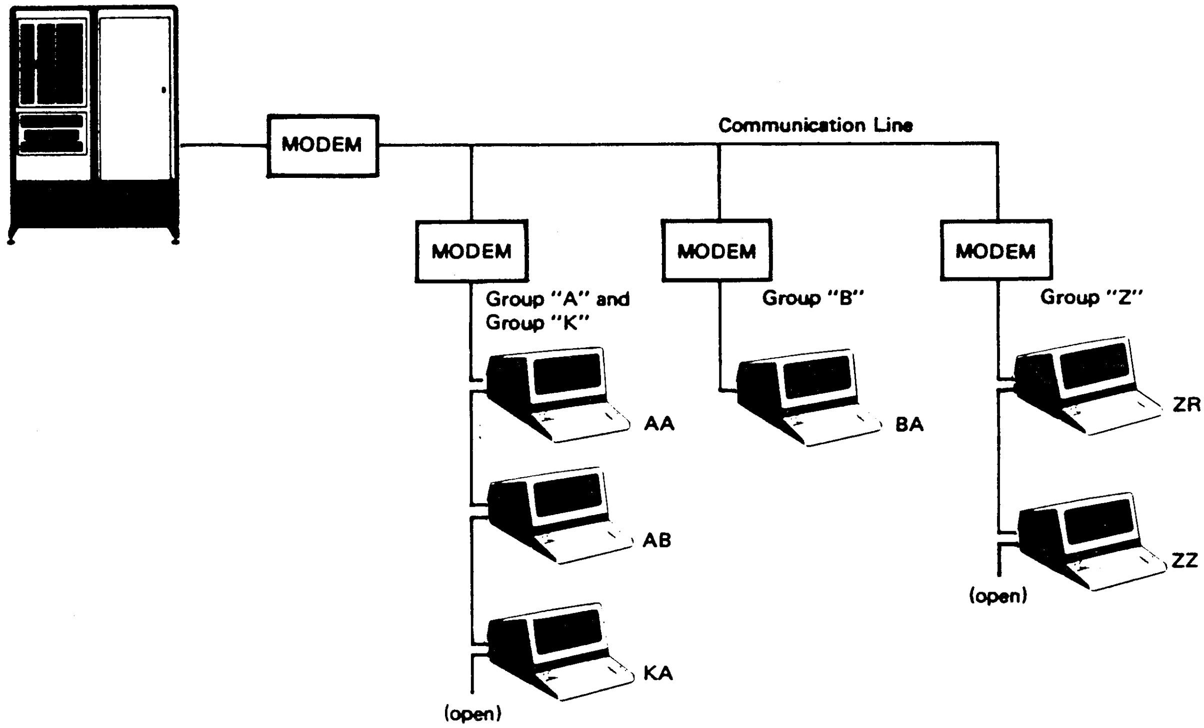
EXAMPLES:

POLL DEVICE 6 in GROUP 20

GROUP ADDR TT
DEVICE ADDR FF

SELECT DEVICE 6 in GROUP 20

GROUP ADDR tt
DEVICE ADDR FF



NOTE: A leased communications line is required for several modems to simultaneously share a communications line.

Figure 5-14. Terminal Addressing

INITIATION OF A DATA TRANSFER. All data transfers are initiated by the computer in one of two ways, Polling or Selection. In both cases, device addresses are used to call a specific terminal or group of terminals.

CONTROL SEQUENCES

Polling. The computer requests terminals with data ready for transmission to begin sending by "polling" the terminals. If group polling is used, the terminals will respond in order according to their position on the communication line. Those at the far end of the communication line being held off until all terminals ahead of them on the string have completed their data transfers.

For example, a poll of terminal B in group A would consist of the following character sequences:

ASYNCHRONOUS

```
<␄><PAD><GROUP ID><GROUP ID><DEV ID><DEV ID><␅><PAD>
 E   P       A         A        B       B     E   P
 O   A                                        N   A
 T   D[1]                                     Q   D
```

SYNCHRONOUS

```
<␖> <␄><PAD><␖><GROUP ID> <GROUP ID><DEV ID><DEV ID><␅><PAD>
SSS  E    P   SSS     A          A         B        B     E   P
YYY  O    A   YYY                                         N   Q
NNN  T    D[1] NNN[2]                                     Q   D
```

[1]These PAD characters are optional and *do not* require parity.
[2]3 or more SYN characters

Group Polling. In order to reduce the time and programming required to poll each terminal on a communication line you can perform a group poll. This will allow all of the terminals in a group (terminals having the same group ID) with data ready to send, to respond to a single poll sequence. When the last terminal in the group with data to transfer is through sending it will send an EOT to indicate that the group has finished.

The group poll sequence is similar to the normal poll sequence. The " character (042 octal) is used in place of the device ID characters. For example, to poll all of the terminals in group A you can use the following sequence:

ASYNCHRONOUS

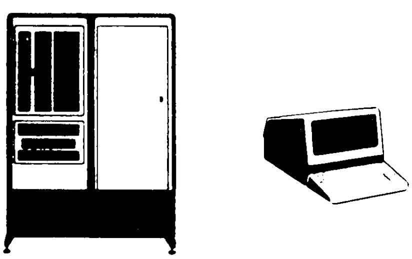
Group Poll Characters

```
         / \
E P A A " " E P
O A         N A
T D         Q D
```

SYNCHRONOUS

```
SSS E P*SSS A A " " E P
YYY O A YYY         N A
NNN T D NNN         Q D
```

*Optional PAD character



```
AA""
(Group POLL, group A)  --->
                        EOT            (Terminals of group A have no data to transmit.)
<---
BB""
(Group POLL, group B)  --->
  STX B A Text ETB (BCC PAD)           (Terminal group B device A; ETB indicates
                                        more text blocks coming from terminal.)
ACK1 --->
  STX Text ETX (BCC PAD)               (ETX indicates last text block from terminal.)
ACKO --->
  STX B G Text ETX (BCC PAD)           (Terminal group B, device G.)
ACK1 --->
                        EOT            (Group B terminals have no more data to transmit.)
<---
```

Selection. "Selection" occurs when the computer directs a specific terminal or group of terminals to accept a data transmission. The character sequences used in selection are the same as those used in polling. The only difference is that the lower case group ID characters are used. This is to tell the terminals that a selection is being sent instead of a poll. For example, to address the same device as in the polling example, the sequence would be as follows:

ASYNCHRONOUS

```
E P a a D D E P
O A         N A
T D         Q D
```

SYNCHRONOUS

```
SSS E P SSS a a D D E P
YYY O A YYY         N A
NNN T D NNN         Q D
```

Note that both the group ID and device ID characters are transmitted twice to eliminate line errors during Poll and Select sequences. (These transmissions do not use Block Check characters.) The two group ID characters must be the same and the two device ID characters must be the same for a terminal to accept a poll or select sequence. Then, if the group and device IDs are the same as the terminal's, the terminal will respond with an ACK0. After receiving the first block of data the terminal will respond with an ACK1.

Group Select. A "group select" sequence can be used to send data to all of the terminals in a group. The terminals will not send any response to group select. (Since there is no response there is no guarantee that the terminals will receive the text.) The text transmission is appended directly to the end of the group select sequence. The group select is the same as a device select sequence except that the device ID character is replaced with a tilde (~) (octal 176). For example, to send data to all of the terminals in group C the following sequences would be used:

ASYNCHRONOUS

```
Lower case for select  Group select characters
                  / \ / \
              E P c c ~ ~ S TEXT E B P
              O A         T      T C A
              T D         X      X C D
```

SYNCHRONOUS

```
Lower case for select  Group select characters
                  / \ / \
SSS E P SSS c c ~ ~ S TEXT E B P
YYY O A YYY         T      T C A
NNN T D NNN         X      X C D
                      \      /
                  Included in block check
```

Line Select. A "line select" allows you to select all of the terminals on a communication line. This is also known as "Broadcast" mode. Both the group and device ID characters are replaced with tildes (~).

```
              ASYNCHRONOUS
            Line select characters
              / / \ \
        E P ~ ~ ~ ~ S TEXT E B P
        O A         T      T C A
        T D         X      X C D
                          \   /
                       Included in block check

              SYNCHRONOUS
            Line select characters
                / / \ \
  SSS E P SSS ~ ~ ~ ~ S TEXT E B P
  YYY O A YYY         T      T C A
  NNN T D NNN         X      X C D
                            \   /
                       Included in block check
```

CONFIGURATION STATUS — WHO ARE YOU (WRU). The Who Are You (WRU) control sequence is a status request from the computer to a terminal group. It is similar to a group poll except that the terminal's respond with status information instead of the normal text data. All terminals in the group that are turned on will send in their status. The status request sequence is shown below. The right brace character (175 octal) is used in place of the device ID. This tells the terminal that a status request is being made.

```
                 ASYNCHRONOUS
<ET><PAD><GROUP ID><GROUP ID><}><}><EQ><PAD>

                 SYNCHRONOUS
      <SY*><ET><PAD><SY*><GROUP ID>
      <GROUP ID><}><}><EQ><PAD>
      * 3 or more SYN characters
```

Three bytes of status information are returned for each responding terminal. Figure 5-15 shows a typical status request and responses from a terminal group.

The status bytes contain terminal hardware and firmware configuration information. The content of each of the status bytes is explained in figure 5-16.

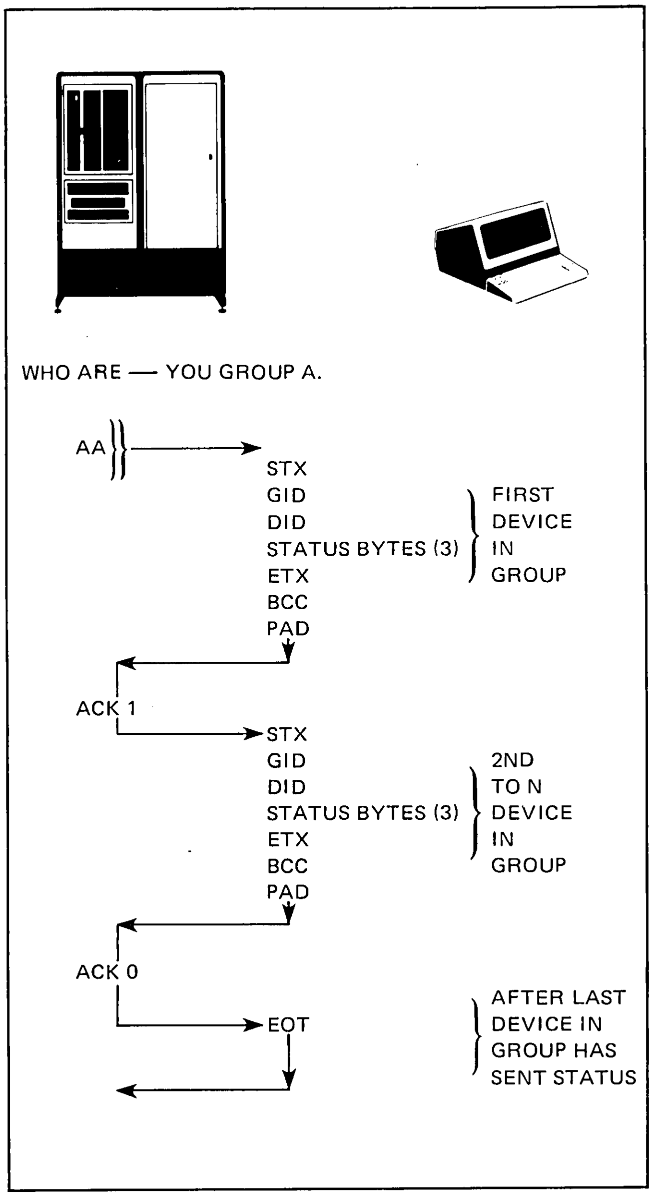
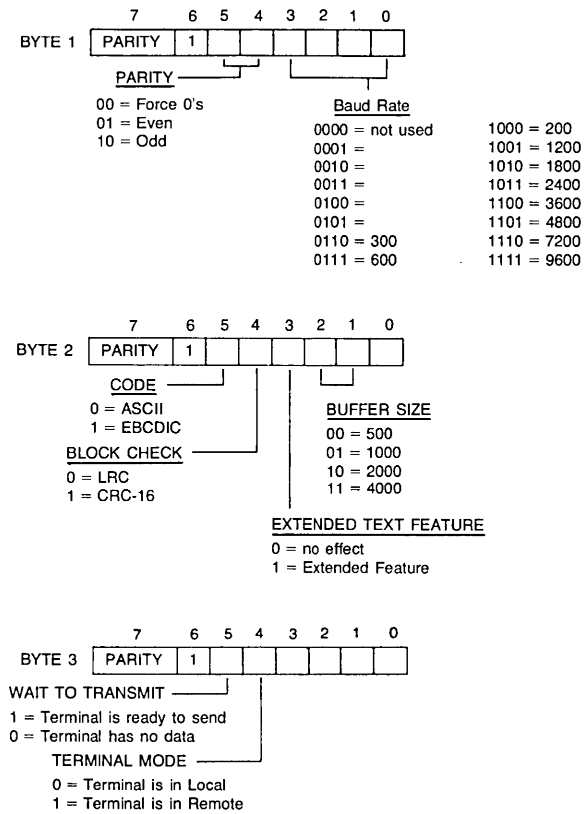


Figure 5-15. Typical Configuration Status Request and Response Sequence

CONFIGURATION PROCEDURE

After you have determined the required multipoint settings for your application follow the flowchart given in figure 5-17.



GID DID i@P BCC PAD

Example: Status bytes "i@P" would be interpreted as follows:

"i" = 1101001 = odd parity, 1200 baud
"@" = 1000000 = ASCII, LRC, 500 byte buffers
"P" = 1010000 = no data, terminal in remote

MULTIPOINT STATUS BYTES

@	100	0000	`	110	0000
A	100	0001	a	110	0001
B	100	0010	b	110	0010
C	100	0011	c	110	0011
D	100	0100	d	110	0100
E	100	0101	e	110	0101
F	100	0110	f	110	0110
G	100	0111	g	110	0111
H	100	1000	h	110	1000
I	100	1001	i	110	1001
J	100	1010	j	110	1010
K	100	1011	k	110	1011
L	100	110	l	110	1100
M	100	1101	m	110	1101
N	100	1110	n	110	1110
O	100	1111	o	110	1111
P	101	0000	p	111	0000
Q	101	0001	q	111	0001
R	101	0010	r	111	0010
S	101	0011	s	111	0011
T	101	0100	t	111	0100
U	101	0101	u	111	0101
V	101	0110	v	111	0110
W	101	0111	w	111	0111
X	101	1000	x	111	1000
Y	101	1001	y	111	1001
Z	101	1010	z	111	1010
[	101	1011	{	111	1011
\	101	1100	|	111	1100
]	101	1101	}	111	1101
^	101	1110	~	111	1110
–	101	1111	■	111	1111

Figure 5-16. Configuration Status Byte Contents

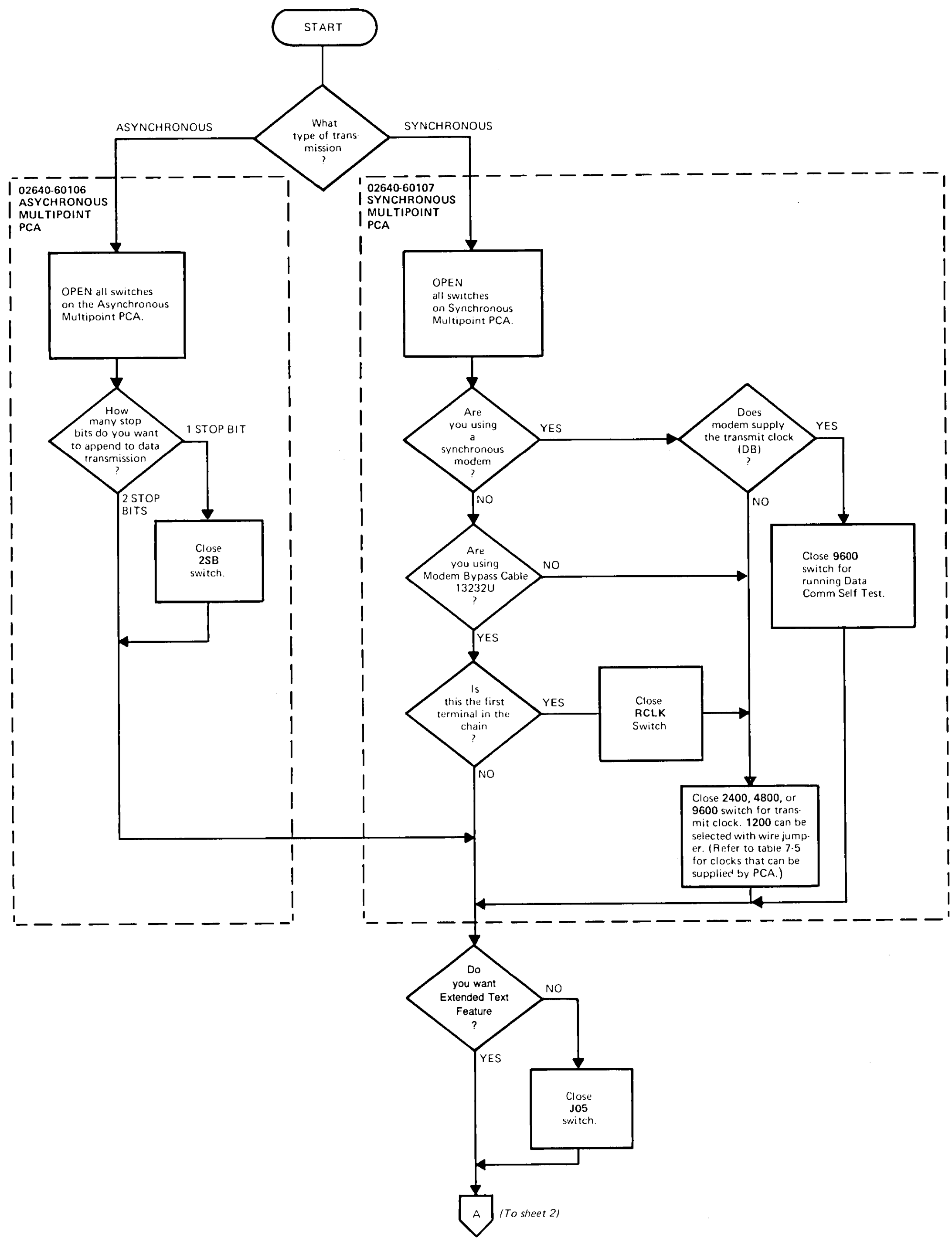


Figure 5-17. Multipoint Data Communications Configuration (Sheet 1 of 4)

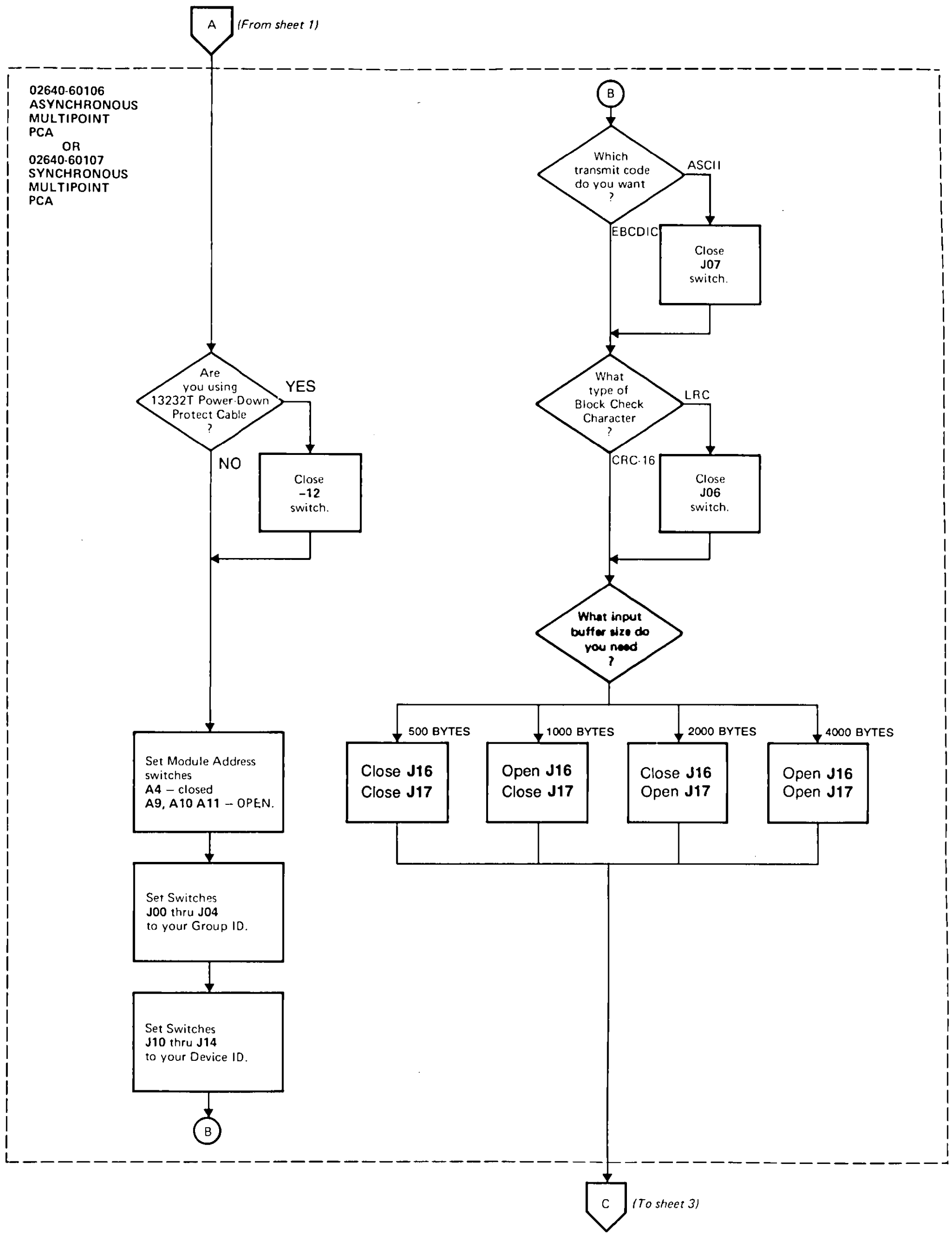
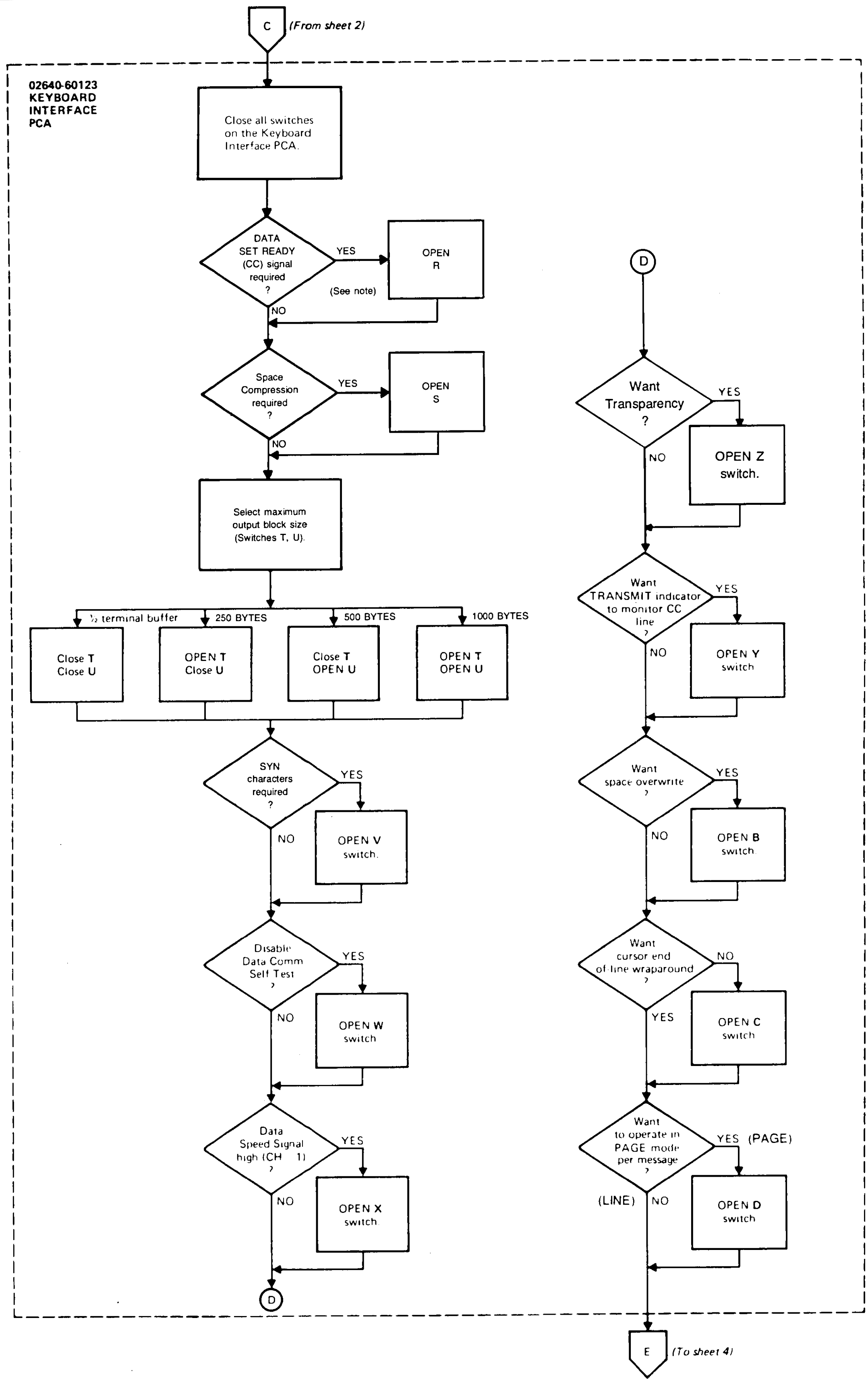


Figure 5-17. Multipoint Data Communications Configuration (Sheet 2 of 4)



Note: This switch must be opened on the first terminal in a drop when the terminal is used with the HP 30037A Asynchronous Repeater.

Figure 5-17. Multipoint Data Communications Configuration (Sheet 3 of 4)

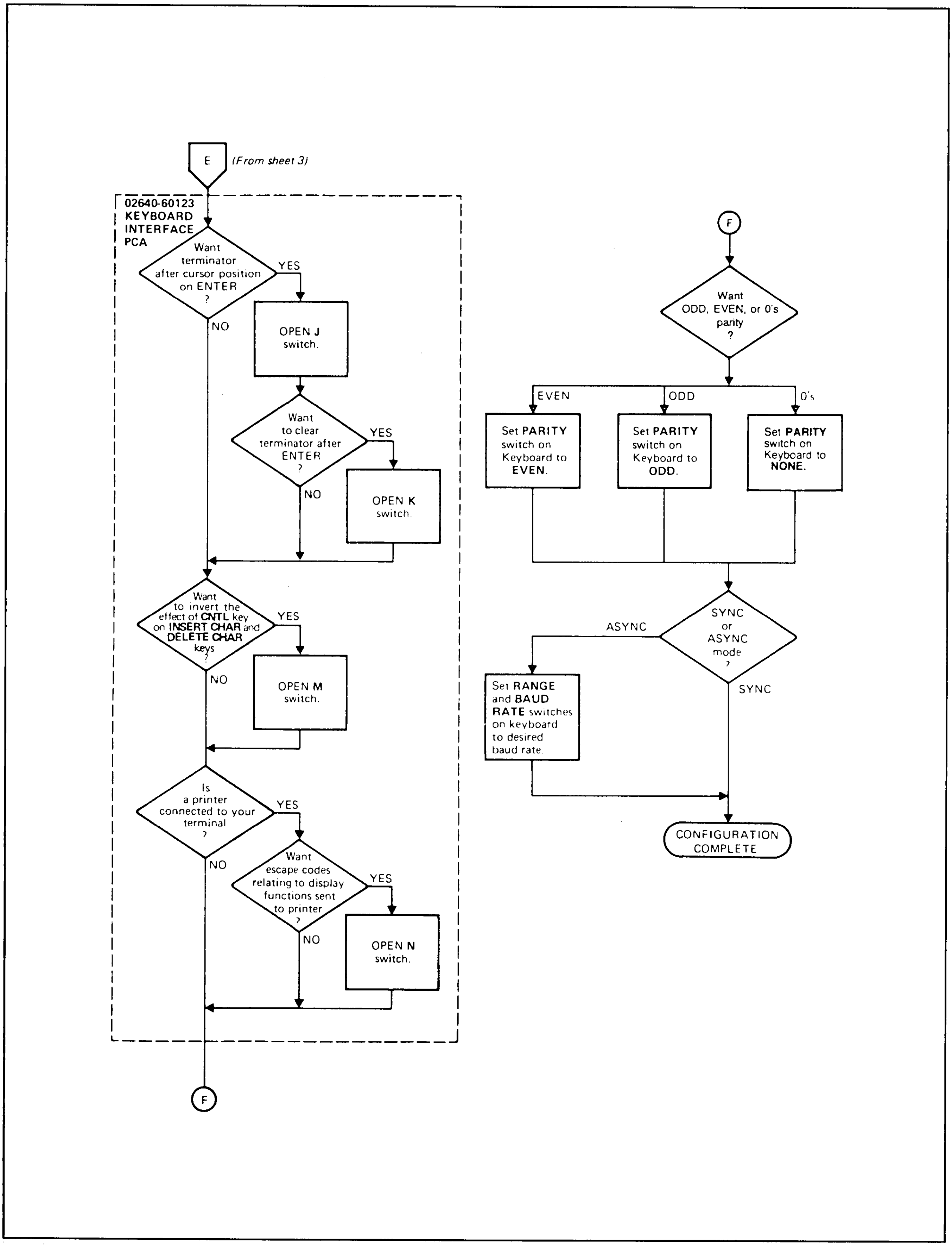


Figure 5-17. Multipoint Data Communications Configuration (Sheet 4 of 4)

MONITOR MODE

Monitor mode is an added multipoint feature available as an option to the 13260C and 13260D interfaces. It allows a terminal to monitor the data transfers between the computer or driver terminal (refer to Driver Mode) and other multipoint terminals on the same communication line. This is a useful technique when developing communications programs or testing multipoint networks.

The monitor must be placed in the line between the computer and the other terminals in order to monitor both sides of the communication exchanges. Figure 5-18 shows a sample communication line using a terminal in monitor mode. (Note that the monitor cannot detect data sent from terminal AA to the computer.)

Note that the monitor will not respond to poll or select sequences addressed to it while in Monitor Mode.

Once the Monitor option has been installed (refer to Section VII Installation for procedures), Monitor mode is selected by the following:

Step 1. [RESET TERMINAL] , [RESET TERMINAL] ([REMOTE] key down).

Step 2. [↖] , [CLEAR DSPLY]

Step 3. [CNTL] [DISPLAY FUNCTIONS] (The DISPLAY FUNCTIONS indicator should begin blinking.)

Pressing the DISPLAY FUNCTIONS key again will turn off the indicator and return the terminal to normal operation.

While in Monitor mode data communications between the computer and "downstream" terminals will be displayed on the monitor. Data from terminals will be framed in left and right arrows (<data>) and will include control and block check characters (see figure 5-19). All untranslatable EBCDIC characters will be displayed as "?" characters.

In group poll operations the last three characters of the poll sequence (second " , ENQ, PAD) may be distorted due to the response of polled terminals (see figure 5-20). Once a terminal detects the first double quote character ("), it begins its response with a transition on the Request to Send Line (CA). This causes the monitor to begin watching for data from the terminal instead of the computer. This distortion occurs only within the monitor and does not affect the operation of either the computer or the other terminals.

If the monitor terminal is configured with a communications buffer that is smaller than either the computer or responding terminals, a data overflow may occur. A cancel character (octal 030) will be displayed at the point where the data overflow occurred (see figure 5-21). To prevent data overflow, make sure that the buffer used in the monitor is at least as large as the largest buffer used by any responding terminal. (Refer to the Installation section for buffer configuration information.)

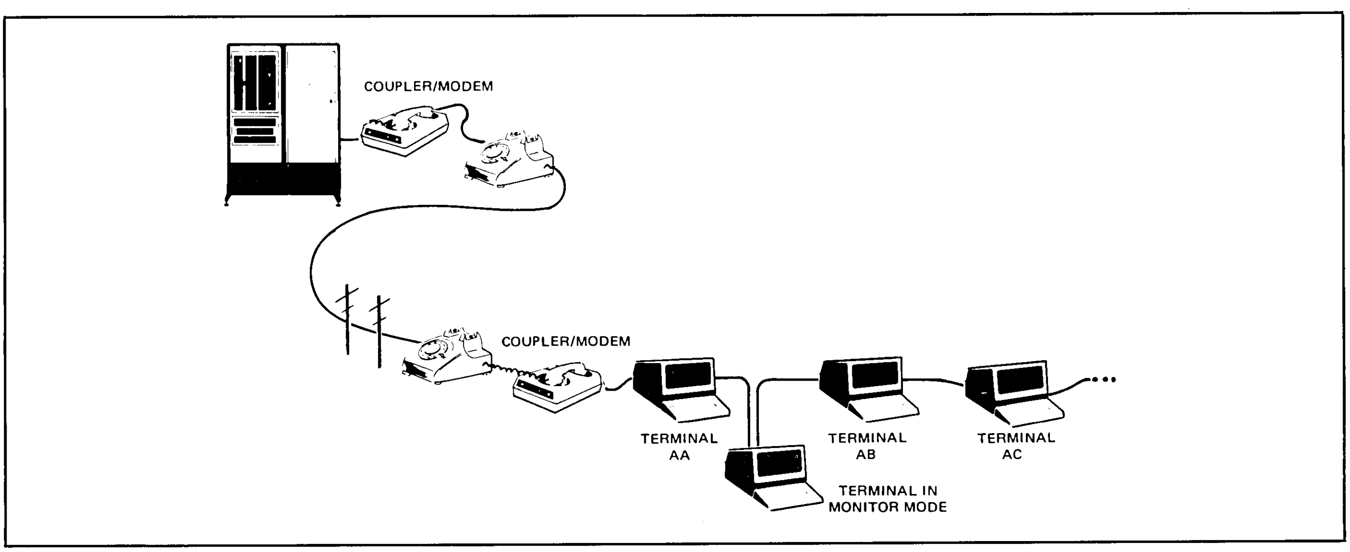


Figure 5-18. Communication Line Using a Monitor

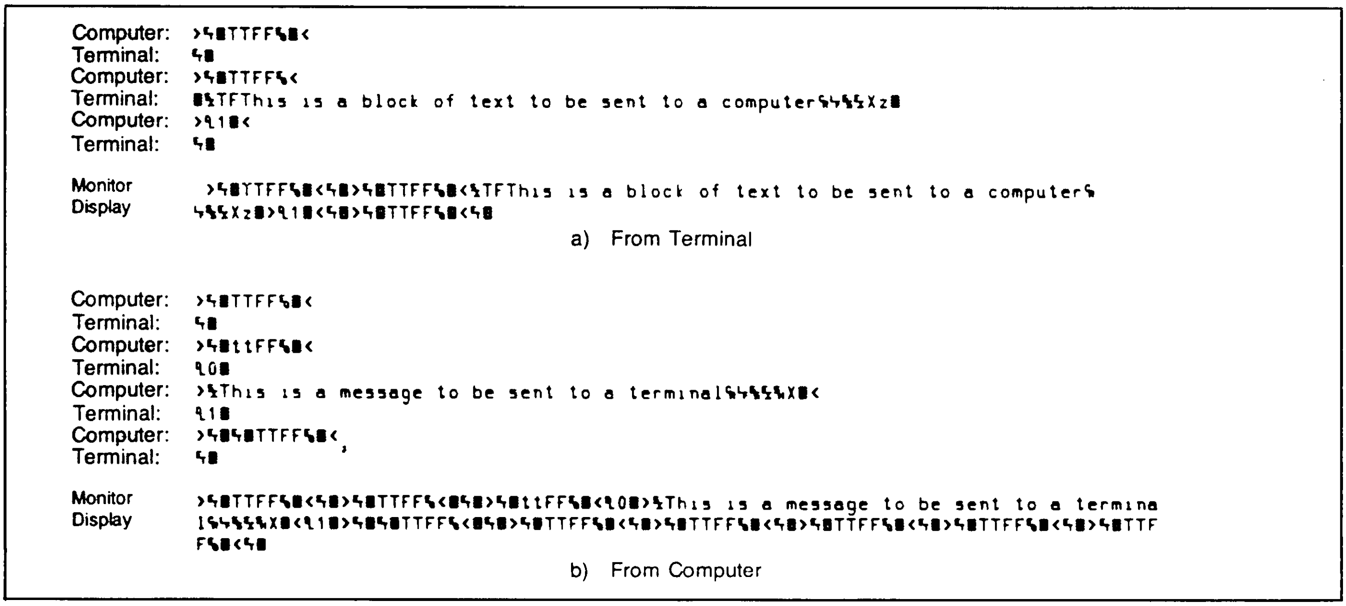


Figure 5-19. Sample Data Transfers Displayed in Monitor Mode

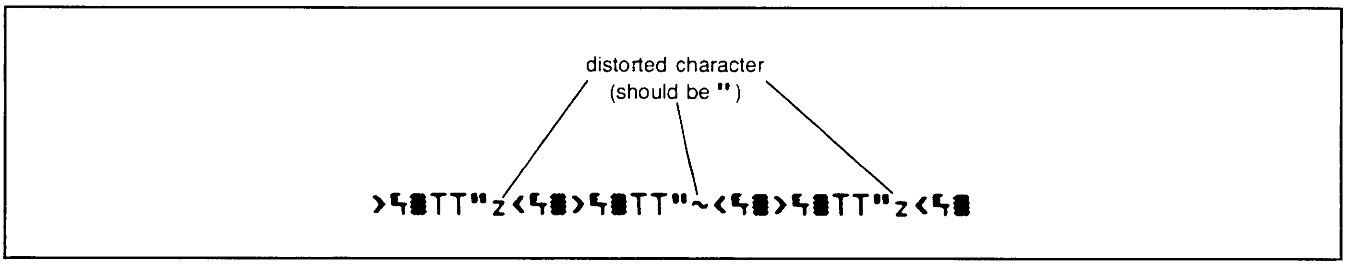


Figure 5-20. Character Distortion in Group Poll

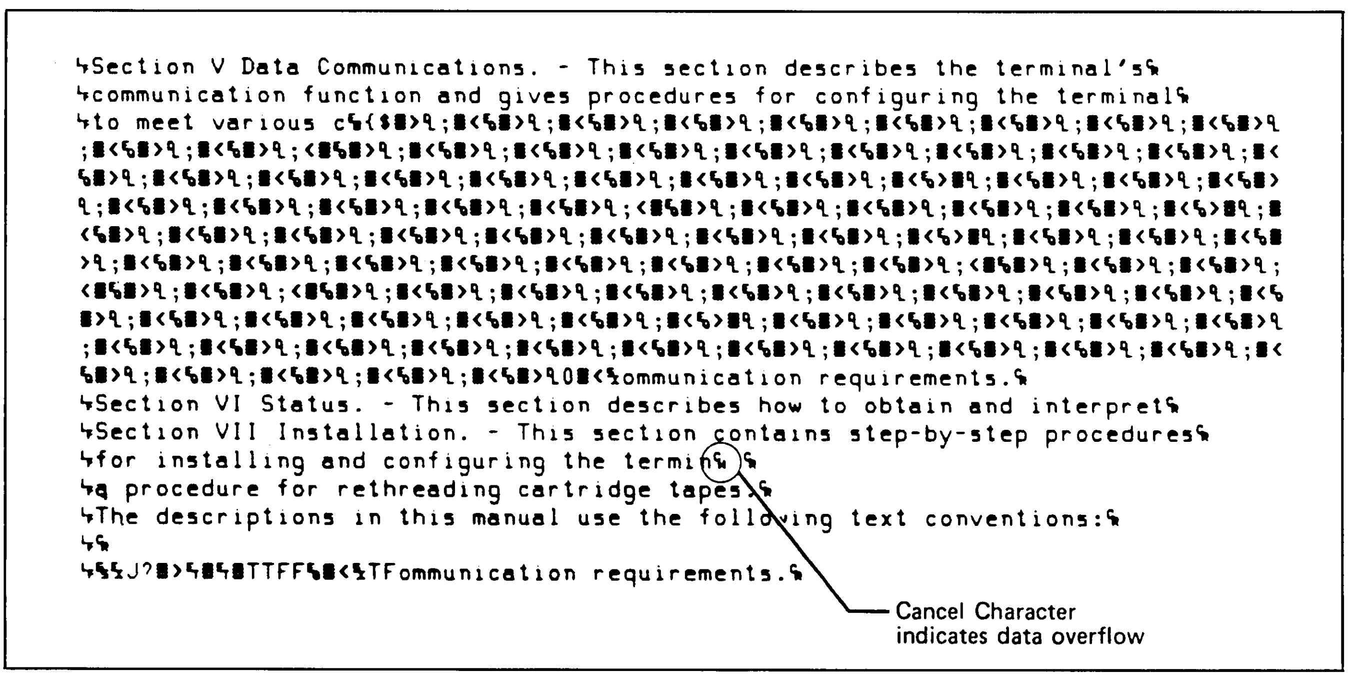


Figure 5-21. Data Overflow Indication

DRIVER MODE

Driver Mode is an additional multipoint feature available with the Monitor Mode option to the 13260C and 13260D interfaces. It allows you to use a terminal to control a multipoint communication line. This technique is very useful in developing communication drivers or testing networks without the need of a computer or modem.

Figure 5-22 shows two typical networks using the driver mode option. The network in figure 5-22a is the simplest case. A more useful network is shown in figure 5-22b. Here a multiterminal network is being driven while a terminal in monitor mode is used to display or record all communication transactions. All data from the downstream terminals as well as the driver terminal is displayed.

Once the Monitor/Driver Mode option has been installed (refer to Section VII Installation for installation procedures), Driver mode is selected as follows:

Step 1. [RESET TERMINAL] , [RESET TERMINAL] , [REMOTE].

Step 2. Type `DVR-<GID DID><gid DID>`.

where:

GID DID = The group and device IDs to be used in poll sequences.

gid DID = the group and device IDs to be used in select sequences.

Examples:

DVR-ABaB (uses terminal B in group A for both poll and select)

DVR-A"aB (polls all terminals in group A but selects only terminal B)

Step 3. [ENTER].

Step 4. [CNTL] [DISPLAY FUNCTIONS]. (The DISPLAY FUNCTIONS indicator should blink)

The Driver will begin sending out the polling sequence at 4 to 5 second intervals using the poll ID characters loaded with the ENTER key. You can also type in text to be sent to the terminal identified for select operations. Block transfers are triggered by the ENTER key.

Example: `This is a block of text to be sent to a terminal`

This line would be sent to and displayed on the destination terminal just as it was typed. Note that if a monitor terminal were in the network between the driver terminal and the destination terminal it would display all of the framing characters as well as the block check character. Figure 5-23 shows the way this transfer would appear.

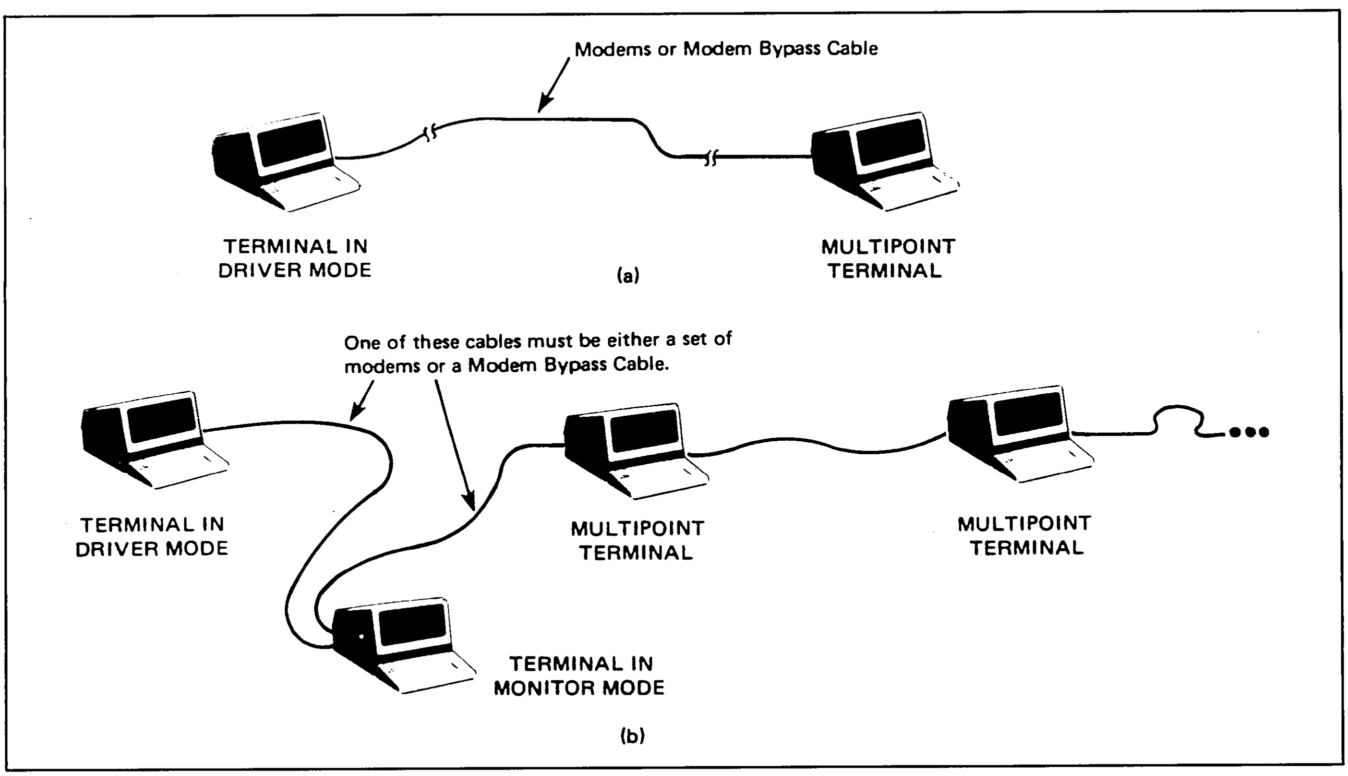


Figure 5-22. Driver Mode Configurations

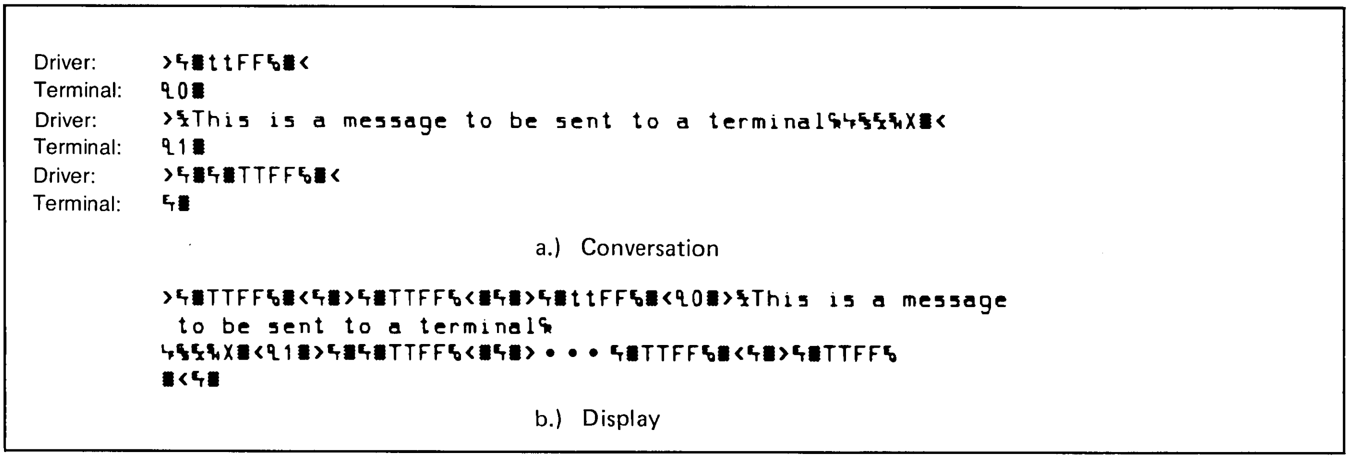


Figure 5-23. Sample Select Sequence Using Driver Mode

Normally all 128 ASCII characters are displayed on the screen of the driver terminal. You can press the DISPLAY FUNCTIONS key (indicator goes out) and still remain in driver mode. This will prevent control characters from being displayed (see figure 5-24).

A full reset returns the driver terminal to normal operation.

Data can be transferred from a multipoint terminal to the driver terminal by entering the data and pressing the ENTER key. The terminal will then respond to a poll sequence by sending the data the same as it would in normal multipoint operation (see figure 5-25).

All multipoint group functions except broadcast can be used in driver mode. Note that you can poll an entire group but can only address one terminal with a select sequence.

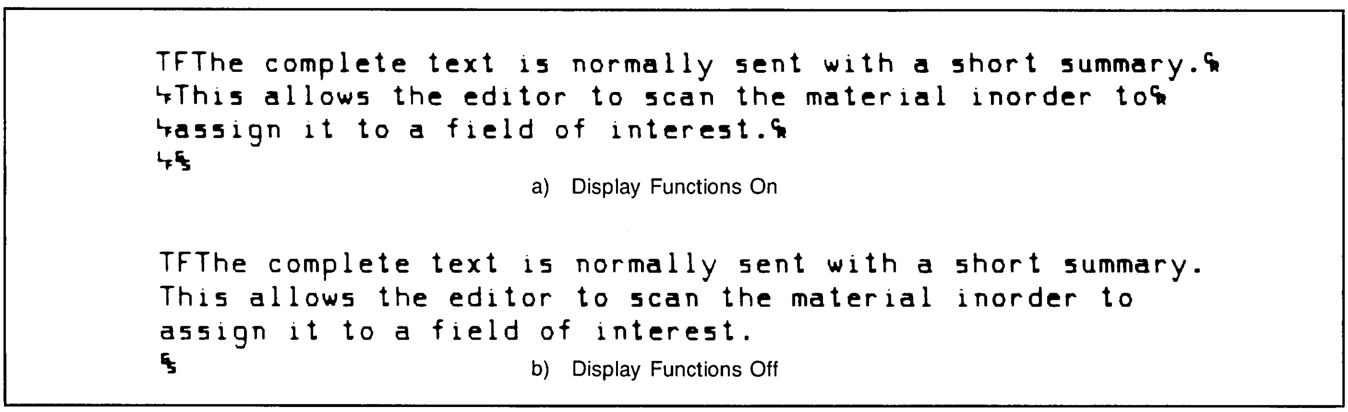


Figure 5-24. Control Character Display On Driver Terminal

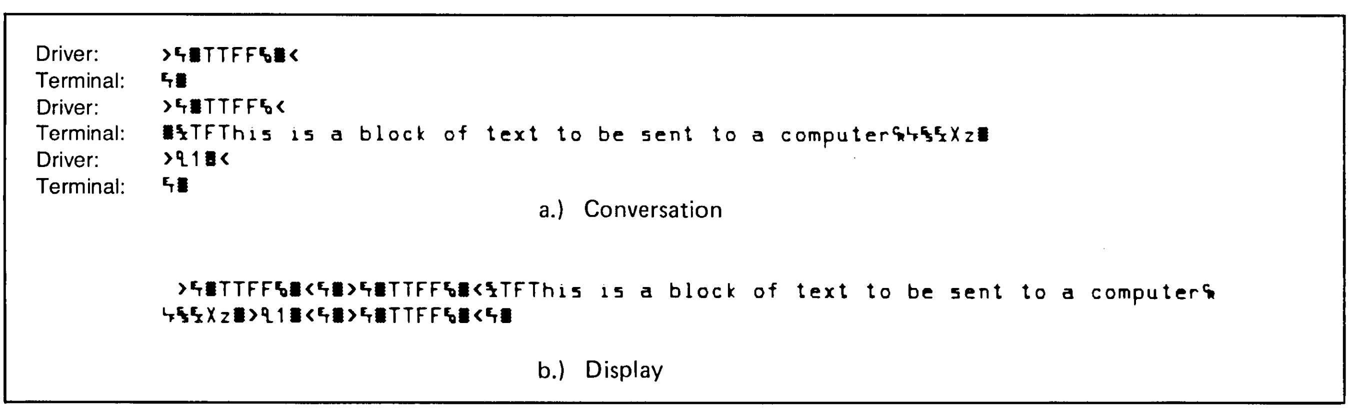


Figure 5-25. Terminal Input

STATUS

SECTION VI

INTRODUCTION

This section contains information on how to obtain and interpret terminal status information. In addition to terminal status, you can also obtain status information on input/output devices used with the terminal.

Status requests are made by sending an escape code sequence to the terminal to select the desired status information. All status requests are treated as block transfers. (Refer to Multicharacter Transfers in Section V). The examples that follow use the DC1 character to trigger the status transfer (Basic Communication Protocol).

INTERPRETING STATUS

In response to status requests the terminal returns an escape code sequence followed by one or more bytes. The status bytes are followed by a terminator. The terminator received may be a CR(LF), RS or GS depending on the communications protocol and terminal configuration (refer to Section V). The examples that follow use the CR character as a terminator.

The status information is contained in the lower four bits of each status byte. The upper four bits of the bytes are set so that the byte will have the value of an ASCII character. Each byte can be interpreted as one of 16 characters as follows:

ASCII CHARACTER	BINARY
0	0011 0000
1	0011 0001
2	0011 0010
3	0011 0011
4	0011 0100
5	0011 0101
6	0011 0110
7	0011 0111
8	0011 1000
9	0011 1001
:	0011 1010
;	0011 1011
<	0011 1100
=	0011 1101
>	0011 1110
?	0011 1111

TERMINAL STATUS

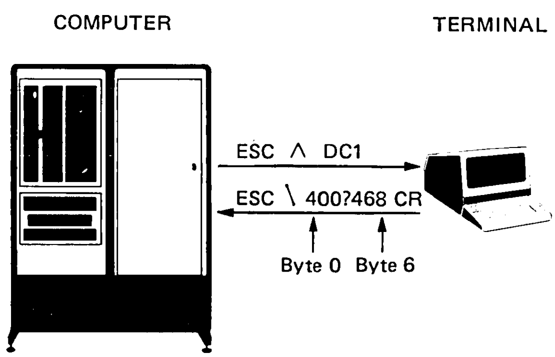
Terminal status is made up of 14 status bytes (bytes 0-13) containing information such as display memory size, switch settings, keyboard interface configuration, and terminal errors. There are two terminal status requests, primary and secondary. Each returns a set of 7 status bytes. The terminal status bytes are shown on pages 6-3 and 6-5.

PRIMARY TERMINAL STATUS

The first block of terminal status (bytes 0-6) is requested by sending the following escape sequence:

Primary Terminal Status Request	Esc ∧

The terminal will respond with an ESC \ and 7 status bytes followed by a terminator. A typical primary terminal status request and response is shown in figure 6-1. The example is for a configuration requiring the DC1 character to trigger block transfers.



BYTE	ASCII	BINARY	STATUS	
0	4	0011 0100	4096 bytes of display memory	
1	0	0011 0000	Function key transmission disabled Space overwrite latch disabled Cursor wrap around Strapped for line	Switches A-H on Keyboard Interface PCA
2	0	0011 0000	Tape mode enabled Send at previous baud rate Disable handshake Inhibit DC2 disabled	
3	?	0011 1111	Upper case only Block mode Auto line feed 2645 terminal	
4	4	0011 0100	ENTER key has been hit (DC2 has been sent and a data transfer has been enabled — bytes 2 and 3)	
5	6	0011 0110	No data comm errors Last Self Test ok No loader checksum errors No device errors	
6	8	0011 1000	Data part of byte count read pending	

Figure 6-1. Primary Terminal Status Example

PRIMARY TERMINAL STATUS

BYTE 0 DISPLAY MEMORY SIZE

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	0	0

- Bit 3: 4096
- Bit 4: 8192

The amount of display memory (blocks of 1K) available in the terminal is returned. The amount can range from 4096 to 12,288 bytes.

BYTE 1 KEYBOARD INTERFACE SWITCHES (A-D)

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

- Bit 4: Switch D
  Page/Line
  1 = open (Page)
  0 = closed (Line)
- Bit 3: Switch C
  (End-of-Line Wraparound)
  1 = open (Disabled)
  0 = closed (Enabled)
- Bit 2: Switch B
  (Space Overwrite Latch)
  1 = open (Enabled)
  0 = closed (Disabled)
- Bit 1: Switch A
  (Function Key Transmission)
  1 = open (Transmitted)
  0 = closed (Not transmitted)

Refer to Section V for a detailed description of Keyboard Interface switches.

BYTE 2 KEYBOARD INTERFACE SWITCHES (E-H)

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

- Bit 4: Switch H (Inhibit DC2)
  1 = open (Enabled)
  0 = closed (Disabled)
- Bit 3: Switch G (DC2 Handshake)
  1 = open (Enabled)
  0 = closed (Disabled)
- Bit 2: Switch F (Fast Binary Read)
  1 = open (Switch to 9600 baud)
  0 = closed (Retain speed)
- Bit 1: Switch E (Tape Mode)
  1 = open (Disabled)
  0 = closed (Enabled)

Refer to Section V for a detailed description of Keyboard Interface switches.

BYTE 3 LATCHING KEYS

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0

- Bit 4: Terminal Type (2645)
- Bit 3: AUTO LF Key
  1 = auto LF
  0 = no auto LF
- Bit 2: BLOCK MODE Key
  1 = block mode
  0 = character mode
- Bit 1: CAPS LOCK Key
  1 = upper case only
  0 = upper and lower case

BYTE 4 TRANSFER PENDING FLAGS

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

- Bit 4: Secondary Status Pending
  1 = yes
  0 = no
- Bit 3: ENTER Key Pending
  1 = yes
  0 = no
- Bit 2: Function Key Pending
  1 = yes
  0 = no
- Bit 1: Cursor Sense Pending
  1 = yes
  0 = no

BYTE 5 ERROR FLAGS

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

- Bit 4: Device Error
  1 = error
  0 = no error
- Bit 3: Loader Checksum
  1 = no error
  0 = error
- Bit 2: Self Test
  1 = no error
  0 = error
- Bit 1: Data Comm
  1 = parity or buffer overflow error
  0 = no error

BYTE 6 DEVICE TRANSFER PENDING FLAGS

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

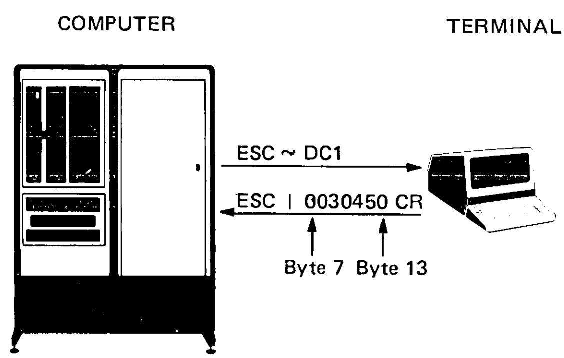
- Bit 4: Data Portion of Byte Count Read Pending
  1 = yes
  0 = no
- Bit 3: I/O Read Pending
  1 = yes
  0 = no
- Bit 2: Device Completion Pending
  1 = yes
  0 = no
- Bit 1: Device Status Pending
  1 = yes
  0 = no

SECONDARY TERMINAL STATUS

The second block of terminal status (bytes 7-13) is requested by sending the following escape sequence:

Secondary Terminal Status Request	Esc ~

The terminal will respond with an Esc | and 7 status bytes followed by a terminator. A typical secondary terminal status request and response are shown in figure 6-2.



BYTE	ASCII	BINARY	STATUS	
7	0	0011 0000	No buffer memory installed	
8	0	0011 0000	I/O firmware not installed	
9	3	0011 0011	Auto terminate enabled	Switches J-M on Keyboard Interface PCA
			Clear terminator enabled	
			Data Comm Self Test enabled	
			Normal operation of INSERT/DELETE CHAR	
10	0	0011 0000	Switches N-R closed	
11	4	0011 0100	Switch S closed	
			Switch T closed	
			Switch U open	
			Switch V closed	
12	5	0011 0101	Switch W open	
			Switch X closed	
			Switch Y open	
			Switch Z closed	
13	0	0011 0000	Memory not locked	

Figure 6-2. Secondary Terminal Status Example

SECONDARY STATUS BYTES

BYTE 7 BUFFER MEMORY

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	0	1/0	0	0

Bit 3:
1 = 4096 bytes
0 = none

Memory installed in addition to display memory that is available for use as data buffers.

BYTE 8 TERMINAL FIRMWARE CONFIGURATION

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	0	0	1/0	1/0

1 = APL Firmware
0 = No APL Firmware

1 = I/O firmware installed
0 = not installed

The device support firmware is required before tape units or printers can be used with the terminal.

BYTE 9 KEYBOARD INTERFACE SWITCHES (J-M)

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

Switch M (Alternate Operation — INSERT and DELETE CHARACTER Keys)
1 = open (Invert wrap sense)
0 = closed (normal)

Switch L (Self Test Inhibit)
1 = open (Inhibit test)
0 = closed (Allow test)

Switch J (Auto Terminate)
1 = open (Enabled)
0 = closed (Disabled)

Switch K (Clear Terminator)
1 = open (Enabled)
0 = closed (Disabled)

Refer to Section V for a detailed description of Keyboard Interface switches.

BYTE 10 KEYBOARD INTERFACE KEYS (N-R)

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

Switch R (varies with communications protocol)
1 = open
0 = closed

Switch Q (not used)

Switch N Printer (Escape Code Transfer)
1 = open (Send ESC code)
0 = closed (Do not send code)

Switch P (not used)

Refer to Section V for detailed descriptions of these switches.

BYTE 11 KEYBOARD INTERFACE KEYS (S-V)

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

Switch V
1 = open
0 = closed

Switch U
1 = open
0 = closed

Switch S
1 = open
0 = closed

Switch T
1 = open
0 = closed

The use switches S to V varies depending on the communication protocol used. Refer to Section V for detailed descriptions of their functions.

BYTE 12 KEYBOARD INTERFACE SWITCHES (W-Z)

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

Switch Z (Parity)
1 = (Force Parity)
0 = (Do not Force Parity)

Switch Y (Transmit light)
1 = open (On when CC high)
0 = closed (On when CB high)

Switch W (Data Comm Test)
1 = open (Inhibit)
0 = closed (Allow)

Switch X (Speed Select)
1 = open (CH = ON)
0 = closed (CH = OFF)

The use switches W to Z varies depending on the communication protocol used. Refer to Section V for detailed descriptions of their functions.

BYTE 13 MEMORY LOCK/BI-LINGUAL MODE

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	0	0

1 = APL Mode
0 = ASCII Mode

1 = locked
0 = unlocked

DEVICE STATUS

The status of a tape unit or printer can be obtained by a device status request. This request would typically be made following an input/output operation or as a result of testing bytes 5 and 6 of the terminal status. The device status bytes are shown in table 6-2.

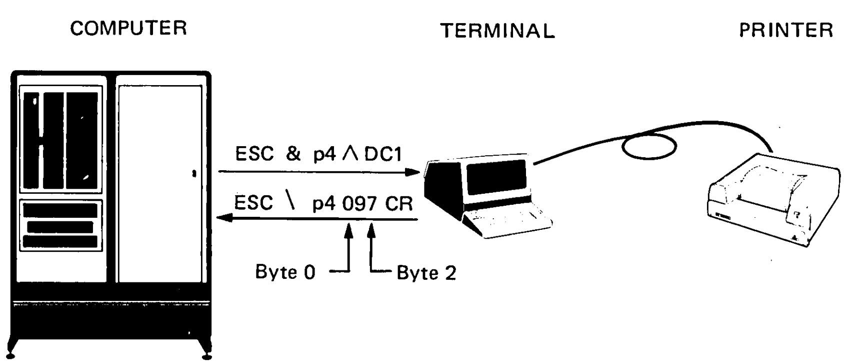
Device status is requested by sending the following escape sequence:

Device Status Request	Esc & p < device code >∧

where <device> is 1, 2, or 4 and

1 = left tape
2 = right tape
4 = printer

The terminal will return an Esc\ p <device code> and 3 bytes of device status followed by a terminator. A typical device status request and response are shown in figure 6-3. A status request from device 3 (display) will be ignored.



BYTE	ASCII	BINARY	STATUS
0	0	0011 0000	No print error Paper present
1	9	0011 1001	Printer busy Last print command executed properly
2	7	0011 0111	Printer is on-line Baud rate is 300 characters per second

Figure 6-3. Device Status Example

TAPE UNITS

BYTE 0

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

End of File
1 = at end of file (tape positioned after the file mark)
0 = not at end of file

Load Point
1 = at load point
0 = not at load point

Write Error (Write/Backspace/Read Mode only)
1 = error
0 = no error

End of Tape
1 = at end of tape
0 = not at end of tape

BYTE 1

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

Command Execution
1 = last command performed
0 = last command aborted

Write Protect
1 = protected
0 = not protected

Tape Busy
1 = busy*
0 = not busy

Read Error
1 = error during last read
0 = no error

*A "busy" indication is returned when the terminal is:

- conditioning the tape
- rewinding the tape
- finding a file (keyboard or cartridge tape initiated)
- skipping lines (keyboard or cartridge tape initiated)
- no tape present

Since the terminal cannot process a status request while performing a normal read or write operation, these functions will not result in a "busy" indication.

BYTE 2

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

Soft Error (read/write error-recovered)
1 = yes
0 = no

Hard Error (10 read/write failures)
1 = yes
0 = no

Tape Inserted
1 = yes
0 = no

End of Valid Data
1 = yes
0 = no

PRINTERS

BYTE 0

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	0	0	1/0	1/0

Paper Out (varies with printer)
1 = yes
0 = no

Print Error (varies with printer)
1 = yes
0 = no

BYTE 1

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	0	0	1/0

Command Execution
1 = last command performed
0 = last command aborted

Printer Busy
1 = yes
0 = no

BYTE 2

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
0	0	1	1	1/0	1/0	1/0	1/0

Printer Baud Rate

Printer Connected
1 = yes
0 = no

rate	bit 4 3 2
external	0 0 0
110	0 0 1
150	0 1 0
300	0 1 1
1200	1 0 0
2400	1 0 1
4800	1 1 0
9600	1 1 1

INSTALLATION

SECTION VII

INTRODUCTION

This section contains installation instructions for the HP 2645A Display Station. Additional requirements for the HP 2641A, HP 2645S, and HP 2645N Display Stations are described at the end of this section. Also included are instructions for selecting optional ac operating voltages (115 or 230V), selecting optional operating functions, and installing terminal add-on accessories.

WARNING

Hazardous voltages are present inside equipment. The procedures contained in this section shall be performed only by qualified service personnel.

VORSICHT

Innerhalb des Geräts bestehen gefährliche Spannungen. Die in diesem Abschnitt enthaltenen Arbeiten dürfen nur durch Betriebsfachpersonal durchgeführt werden.

ATTENTION

Des tensions dangereuses sont présentes à l'intérieur du matériel. Les opérations décrites dans cette section ne devront être effectuées que par un personnel qualifié.

AVVISO

Pericolo: Alta tensione presente in questa apparecchiatura. Le procedure contenute in questa sezione debbono essere effettuate soltanto da qualificato personale di servizio.

ADVERTENCIA

Hay voltaje peligroso en el interior de este equipo. Los procedimientos expuestos en esta sección sólo deberá llevarlos a cabo el personal de servicio calificado.

高圧危険

内部装置に危険な高電圧がきています　この章にある処置や手続に関しては、専門のサービスマンによってのみ行なって下さい

OPENING THE TERMINAL

To gain access to the terminal internal components, open the terminal as follows (also see figure 7-1):

a. Set mainframe rear panel ~ LINE switch to OFF and disconnect power cord from ~ LINE connector.

NOTE

Mainframe top cover is unlocked by inserting access key supplied with terminal in each of the keyways located on right and left sides of top cover. Inserting keys into keyways unlock top cover. No key rotation is required.

b. From front of terminal, insert access key into right keyway and unlock right side of terminal by slightly raising right side of top cover. (figure 7-1, A and B).

c. While maintaining upward pressure to keep right side of terminal unlocked, insert access key into left keyway and raise top cover until both right and left sides of terminal are unlocked. (figure 7-1, C).

d. Using both hands, carefully swing top cover up until it latches into the half open position. (figure 7-1, D).

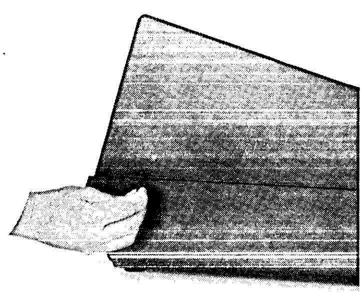
NOTE

The half open position provides adequate room for performing most service routines. However, if extensive repairs are to be made or if components contained in the top cover are to be serviced, fully open mainframe in accordance with step e.

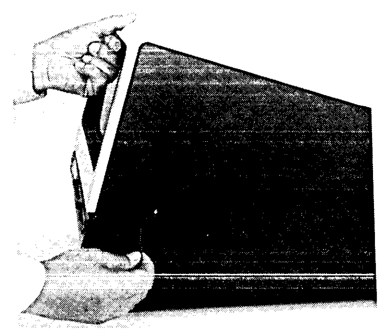
CAUTION

Mainframe top hinges are open hinge type. When fully opening terminals do not allow top hinges to slip off hinge pins.

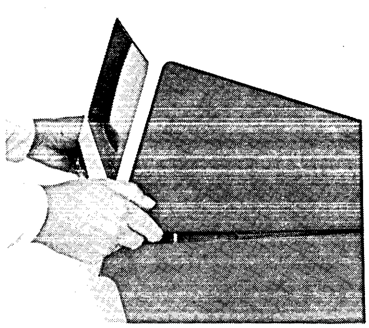
e. Firmly grasp top cover in one hand and release safety latch (see figure 7-2) by pressing it inboard with other hand. Then, using both hands, swing top cover up and over to a full open position (resting on its top).



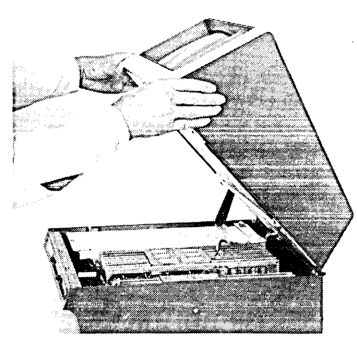
A. INSERTING ACCESS KEY INTO KEYWAY



B. UNLOCKING RIGHT SIDE OF TERMINAL

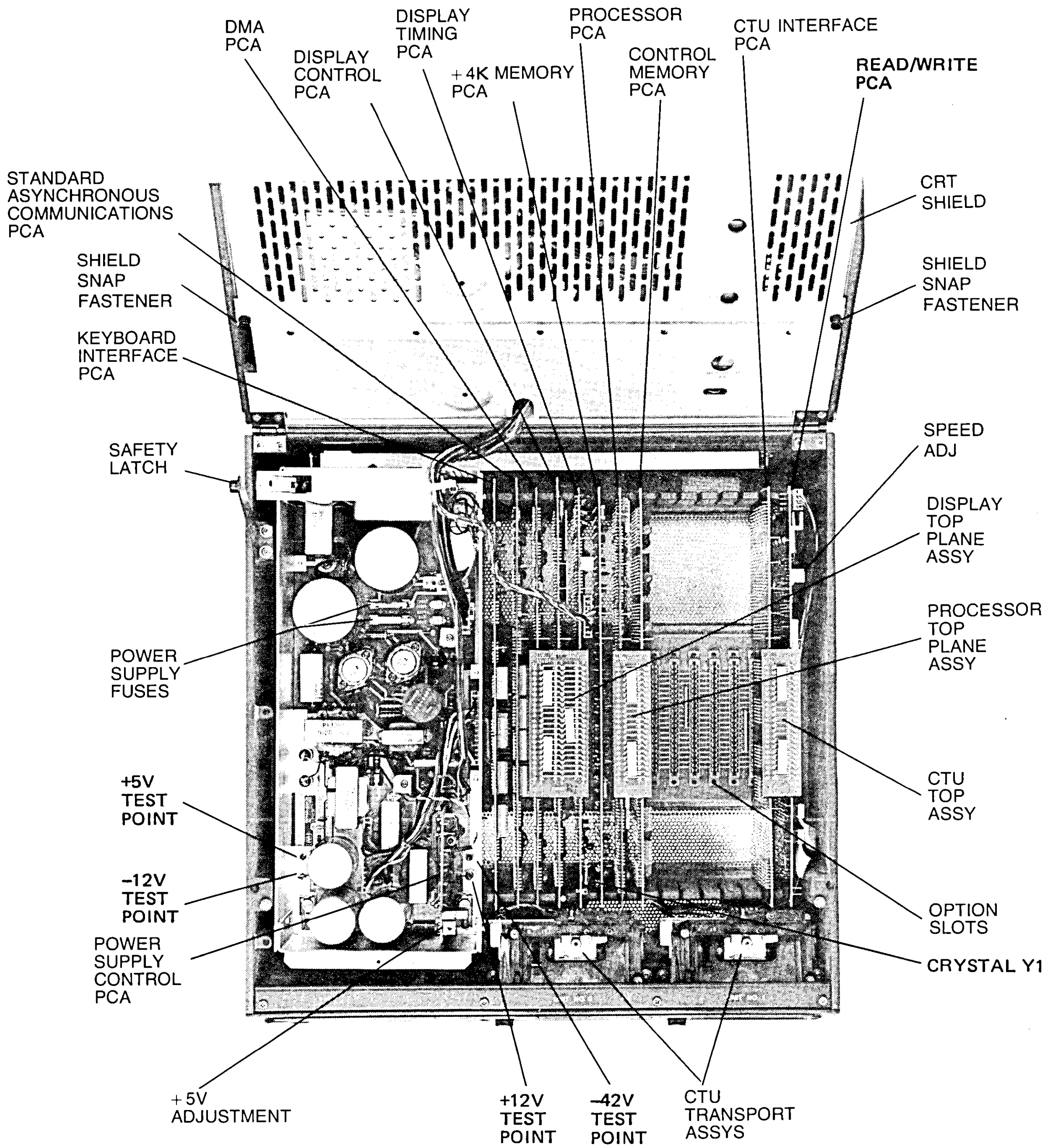


C. INSERTING ACCESS KEY INTO LEFT KEYWAY WHILE HOLDING RIGHT SIDE OPEN



D. OPENING TOP COVER TO HALF-OPEN POSITION

Figure 7-1. Opening the Terminal



NOTES:
1. POWER SUPPLY IS SHOWN WITH TOP COVER REMOVED.
2. PCA ARRANGEMENT IS A TYPICAL CONFIGURATION. ARRANGEMENT MAY VARY AMONG TERMINALS.
3. TWO CONTROL MEMORY PCA'S ARE REQUIRED IN THE HP 2641A.

Figure 7-2. Mainframe Bottom Part Locations

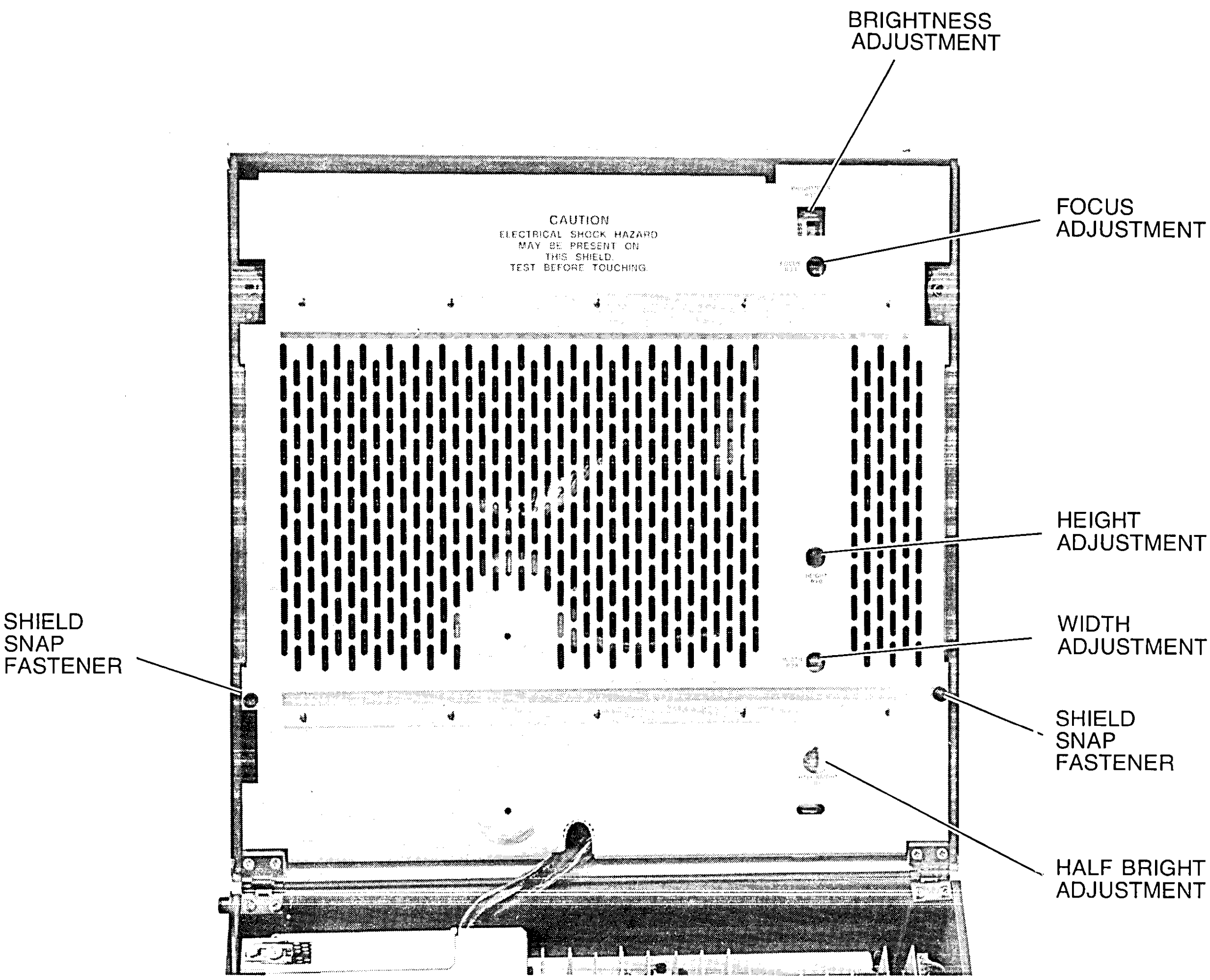


Figure 7-3. Mainframe Top Part Locations

GROUNDING REQUIREMENTS

To protect operating personnel, the National Electrical Manufacturers' Association (NEMA) recommends that the terminal's frame be grounded. The terminal is equipped with a three-conductor power cable which, when connected to an appropriate power receptacle, grounds the frame of the terminal. To preserve this protection feature, do not operate the terminal from an ac power outlet with no ground connection.

SELECTING LINE VOLTAGE

The terminal can be operated from either 115 or 230V, 60 Hz line voltage (230V, 50 Hz optional). When shipped from the factory, the line voltage for which the terminal is configured is stamped on the mainframe rear panel identification label. If it is necessary to change the operating line voltage, ensure that power cord is disconnected and proceed as follows:

1. ( ) Open terminal to its half open position in accordance with "Opening the Terminal" paragraph.

2. ( ) Remove power supply cover by removing the screw at the front of the cover and pulling the cover up and out of the mainframe.

3. ( ) Select the operating voltage by inserting the proper fuses into the appropriate locations shown in figure 7-4. For 115 volts, use a 0.5A, SB, 250V fuse and a 4A, SB, 250V fuse. For 230 volts, use a 0.20A, SB, 250V fuse and a 2A, SB, 250V fuse.

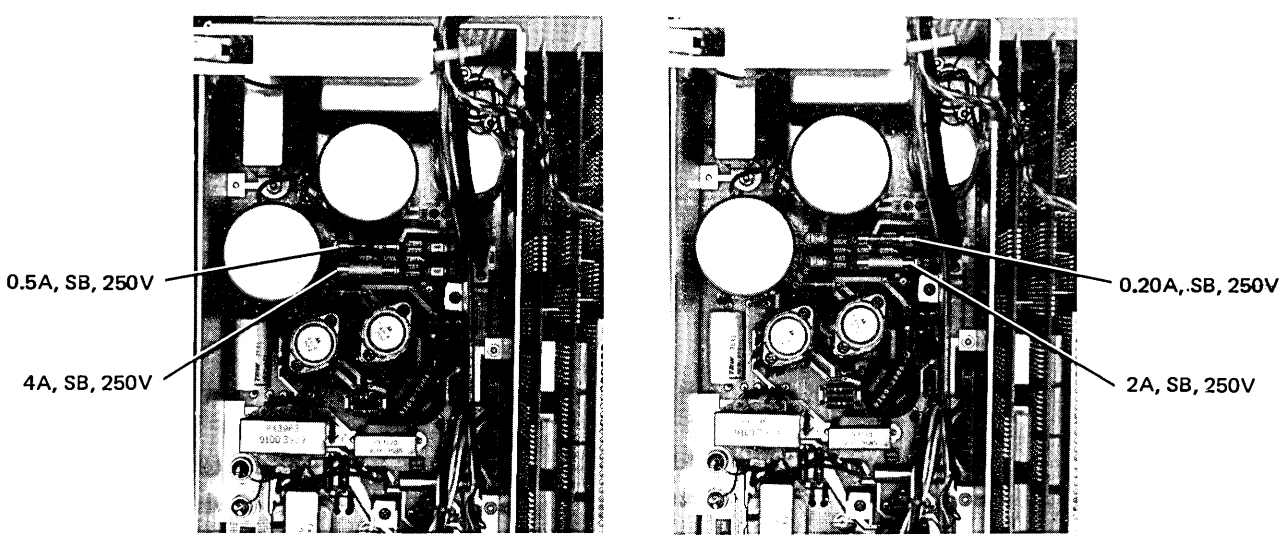
4. ( ) If changing from 60 Hz to 50 Hz operation or vice versa, ensure that crystal Y1 on the Display Timing PCA (figure 7-2) is changed. For 60 Hz operation, use a 21.06 MHz crystal (part no. 0410-0647) and for 50 Hz operation, use a 17.55 MHz crystal (part no. 0410-0646).

5. ( ) Check and, if necessary, adjust power supply in accordance with "Power Supply Adjustment".

6. ( ) Replace power supply cover, and secure in place with the screw.

7. ( ) Firmly grasp mainframe top cover in one hand and release safety latch by pressing it inboard with other hand. Then, using both hands, carefully lower top cover to its closed position.

8. ( ) Perform terminal self-test (refer to "Self-Test").



FUSE IN 115 VAC POSITION

FUSE IN 230 VAC POSITION

Figure 7-4. Fuse Positions for 115 VAC and 230 VAC Line Voltage

ACCESSORY INSTALLATION PROCEDURES

Instructions for installing add-on accessories to the standard model terminal are contained in the following paragraphs.

NOTE

> After installing any accessory, always use the terminal self-test feature (refer to "Self-Test") to ensure proper operation.

64 CHARACTER LOWER CASE ROM

The 64 Character Lower Case ROM, part no. 1816-0613, is used to upgrade standard 64 character set terminals to 128 Roman characters. Do not confuse this with the alternate character sets described in "HP 13231A Display Enhancements" paragraph. Install the ROM as follows:

CAUTION

> MOS integrated circuits can be damaged by electrostatic discharge. Use the following precautions:
>
> DO NOT wear clothing subject to static charge buildup, such as wool or synthetic materials.
>
> DO NOT handle MOS circuits in carpeted areas.
>
> DO NOT remove the circuit from its conductive foam pad until you are ready to install it.
>
> AVOID touching the circuit leads. Handle by the plastic package only.
>
> ENSURE that the circuit work surface (table, desk, etc.) and PCA are all at the same ground potential. This can be done by touching the foam pad to the PCA and then touch the foam pad, circuit, and PCA to the work surface.

1. ( ) Open terminal to its half open position (refer to "Opening the Terminal").

2. ( ) Insert connector removal tool under Top Plane Assembly as shown in figure 7-7 and remove Top Plane Assembly by pressing down on connector removal tool handle.

3. ( ) Locate and remove Display Control PCA from Backplane Assembly.

4. ( ) Using figure 7-5 as a guide, locate the 128 CH jumper W1 position and solder in a jumper. (If the board uses a jumper socket or switch, insert a jumper or make the proper setting.)

5. ( ) Locate the vacant lower case ROM socket XU28.

6. ( ) Carefully insert 64 Characters Lower Case ROM in socket XU28 so that ROM pin 1 is at upper right corner of XU28.

7. ( ) Reinstall Display Control PCA in Backplane Assembly connector from which it was removed.

8. ( ) Reinstall Top Plane Assembly on DMA, Display Timing, and Display Control PCA's top connectors.

9. ( ) Firmly grasp top cover in one hand and release safety latch by pressing it inboard with other hand. Then, using both hands, carefully lower top cover to its closed position.

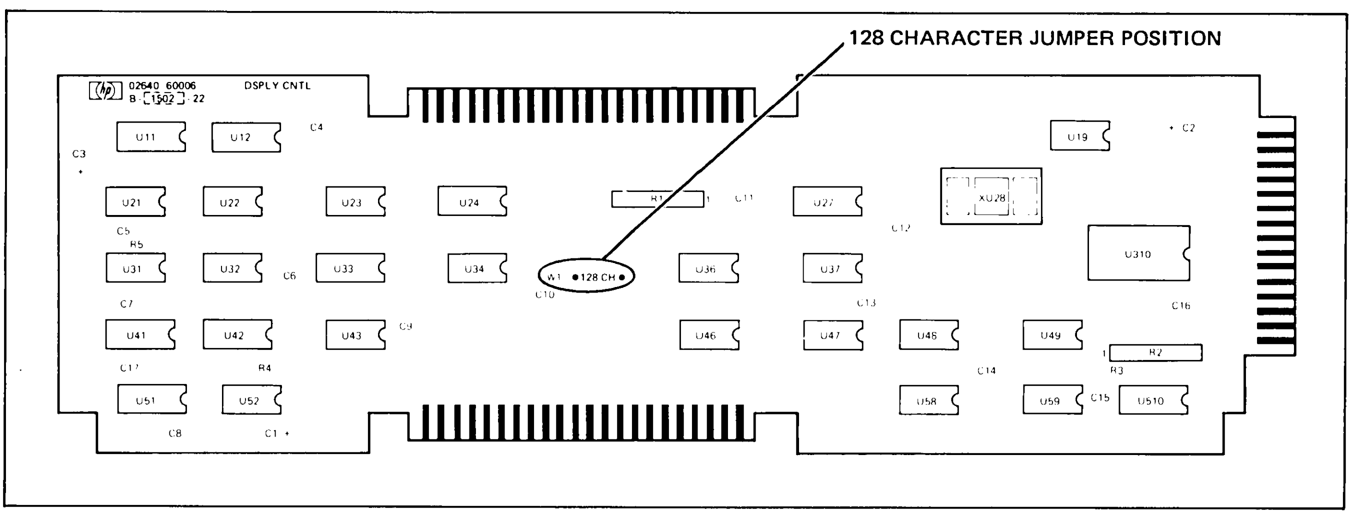


Figure 7-5. Display Control PCA Component Locations

HP 13231A DISPLAY ENHANCEMENTS

These instructions apply to the HP 13231A-201, HP 13231A-202 and HP 13231A-203 accessories as well as the HP 13231A accessory. The HP 13231A accessory consists of a Display Enhancement PCA, part no. 02640-60024; a Top Plane Connector Assembly, part no. 02640-60022; and a Connector Removal Tool, part no. 02640-00029. The HP 13231A-201, -202 and -203 accessories consist of the same three items with the applicable ROM IC's mounted on the Display Enhancement PCA. Install any of these accessories as follows:

The alternate character sets are configured with jumpers located on the upper right corner of the Display Enhancement PCA. There are six jumpers, two for each of the three possible alternate character sets. Jumpers 1 and 2 are for alternate character set 1 (referred to as set A in the User's Manual), jumpers 3 and 4 are for alternate character set 2 (set B in the User's Manual), jumpers 5 and 6 are for alternate character set 3 (set C in the User's Manual).

The first jumper for each set (jumpers 1, 3, and 5) indicates whether the set is composed of 128 (jumper in) or 64 (jumper out) characters. The second jumper for each set (jumpers 2, 4, and 6) indicates whether the character set data is in alphanumeric (jumper in) or microvector (jumper out) format. A detailed description of data formats for alternate character sets is given in the application note: *2640 Series Character Set Generation* (part number 13245-90001).

When using the three standard alternate character sets (Math Set, Line Set and Large Character Set) the jumpers would normally be configured as follows:

Math Set (placed in the first socket of set 1)

Jumper 1 = Out, since only 64 characters are used.

Jumper 2 = In, since character data is in alphanumeric format.

Line Set (placed in the first socket of set 2)

Jumper 3 = Out, since only 64 characters are used.

Jumper 4 = Out, since character data is in microvector form.

Large Character Set (placed in the first select of set 3)

Jumper 5 = Out, since only 64 characters are used.

Jumper 6 = Out, since character data is in microvector form.

Note that the Math Set has been shown as alternate character set 1 (A in the User's Manual), the Line Set as alternate 2 (B in the User's Manual), and the Large Character Set as alternate 3 (C in the User's Manual). They could have been configured as any combination of the three possible alternate sets. There is no requirement that the sets be configured in any order.

NOTE

> Do not confuse the 128/64 character jumpers for *alternate character sets* with the 128 character jumper for the *standard character set* discussed in "64 Character Lower Case Rom."

EFFECT OF IMPROPER JUMPER PLACEMENT.

128 Characters Strapped for 64. When a 128 character set is used and is jumpered for 64 characters, only the first 64 characters in the set will be accessed. This will cause the "q" character for example to access the same display character as the "Q" character.

64 Characters Strapped for 128. Any attempt to access one of the lower case 64 characters ("a", "q", etc.) will result in a blank being displayed.

Alphanumeric Data Strapped as Microvector. Alphanumeric data strapped as microvector will normally result in characters that are skewed or fuzzy.

Microvector Data Strapped as Alphanumeric. Microvector data strapped as alphanumeric will display blanks for the microvector characters.

INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. ( ) Using figure 7-6 and table 7-1 as a guide, check that Display Enhancement PCA jumpers are arranged correctly for the ROM character set configuration. If there are no alternate character set ROM's installed (HP 13231A), all jumpers should be in the jumper socket.
2. ( ) Open terminal to its half open position (refer to "Opening the Terminal").
3. ( ) Insert connector removal tool under Top Plane Assembly as shown in figure 7-7.
4. ( ) Remove Top Plane Assembly by pressing down on connector removal tool handle. Retain Top Plane Assembly for possible future use.

Table 7-1. Display Enhancement PCA Jumper Protocol

ALTERNATE SET	128/64 (JUMPER IN/JUMPER OUT) CHARACTERS	ALPHANUMERIC/MICROVECTOR (JUMPER IN/JUMPER OUT) CHARACTER DATA
A	JUMPER 1	JUMPER 2
B	JUMPER 3	JUMPER 4
C	JUMPER 5	JUMPER 6

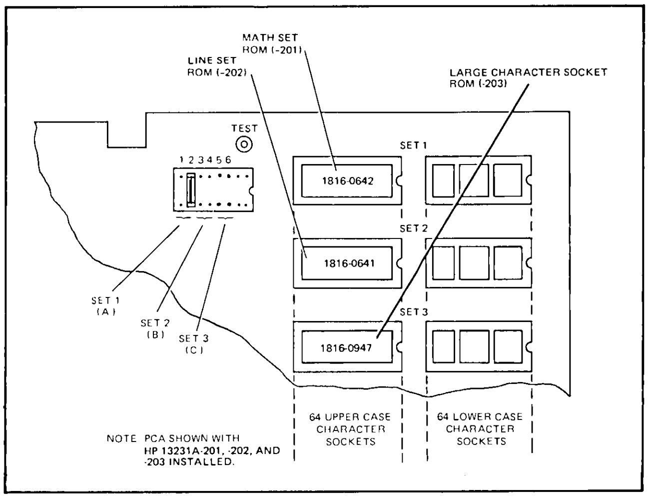


Figure 7-6. Display Enhancement PCA Jumper and ROM Socket Locations

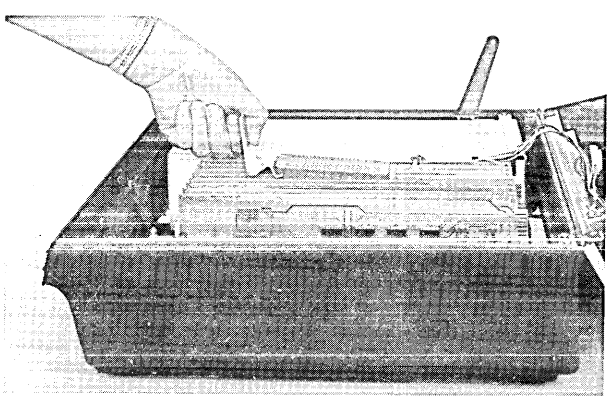


Figure 7-7. Top Plane Assembly Removal

5. ( ) If necessary, rearrange PCA's in Backplane Assembly so that an unused connector is available for the Display Enhancement PCA adjacent to the Display Memory Access (DMA), Display Control, and Display Timing PCA's.

NOTE

PCA arrangement can be in any configuration with the following exceptions. The Keyboard Interface and data communications PCA's should be installed in one of the first three Backplane Assembly connectors closest to the power supply.

The Display Enhancement, DMA, Display Control, and Display Timing PCA's must always be installed as a group in adjacent connectors. No Backplane Assembly connectors can be left vacant between any PCA's. In addition, the Processor PCA must be installed adjacent to the display PCA's described previously.

6. ( ) Install Display Enhancement PCA in Backplane Assembly connector.

7. ( ) Install Top Plane Connector Assembly, part no. 02640-60022 on Display Enhancement, DMA, Display Control, and Display Timing PCA connectors.

8. ( ) Check and, if necessary, adjust power supply (refer to "Power Supply Adjustment").

9. ( ) Depress TEST key and observe last line of test pattern for correct display enhancements. If enhancements are correct skip to step 11. If adjustment is necessary, perform step 10.

10. ( ) Perform brightness, half bright, focus, and field adjustments in accordance with the *HP 2641A/2645A/S Display Station Service Manual,* part no. 02645-90003.

11. ( ) Firmly grasp mainframe top cover in one hand and release safety latch by pressing it inboard with other hand. Then, using both hands, carefully lower top cover to its closed position.

HP 13232 CABLE ASSEMBLIES

The HP 13232 cable assemblies provide interface connections between the terminal and modems, printers, and computers. Table 7-2 below lists the particulars of each cable.

Table 7-2. 13232 Cable Assemblies

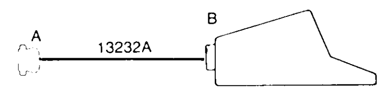
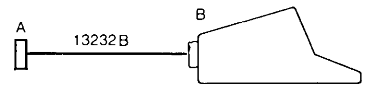
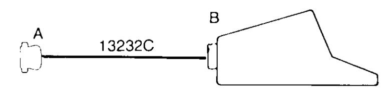
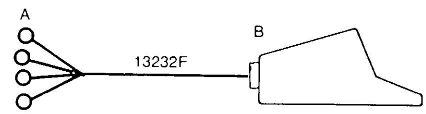
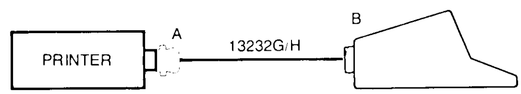
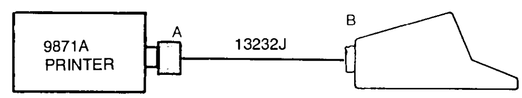
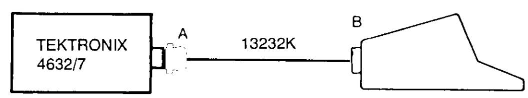
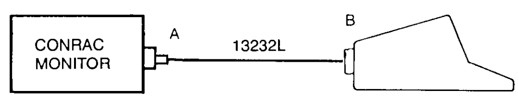
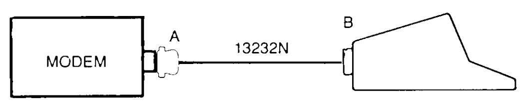
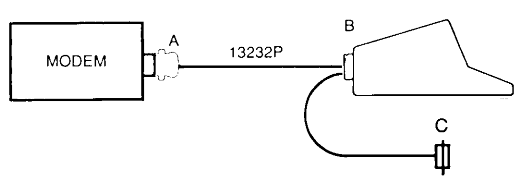
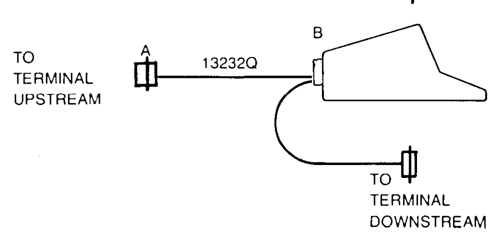
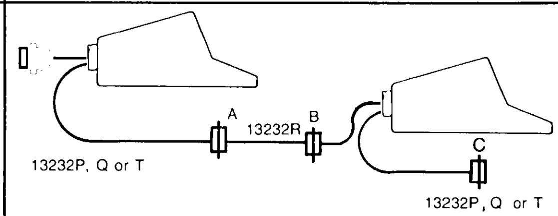
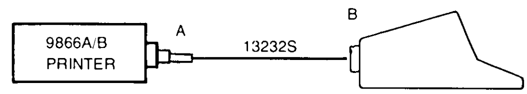
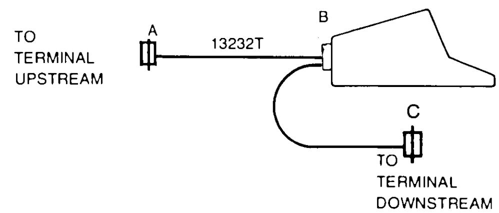
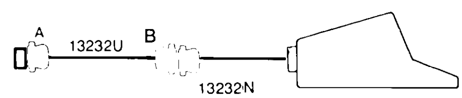
CABLE	FUNCTION	CONNECTORS A	CONNECTORS B	CONNECTORS C	LENGTH	HOOKUP
13232A	Connects data communications interface PCA to modem 103/202. (Cable part no. 02640-60043.)	RS232 (male)	Hood	—	4.57 Metres 15 feet	
13232B	Connects 12531/12880 teleprinter interface PCA to terminal. (Cable part no. 02640-60058.)	Hood	Hood	—	15.25 Metres 50 feet	
13232C	Connects data communications interface PCA to RS232 connector. (Cable part no. 02640-60059.)	RS232C (female)	Hood	—	1.52 Metres 5 feet	
13232F	Provides current loop connections for 13260B data communications interface. (Cable part no. 02640-60097.)	4 terminal lugs	Hood	—	1.52 Metres 5 feet	
13232G	Connects 13250A/B Serial Printer Interface to RS232 compatible printers. (Cable part no. 02640-60098.)	RS232C (male)	Hood	—	4.57 Metres 15 feet	
13232H	Same as 13232G. (Cable part no. 02640-60099.)	RS232C (female)	Hood	—	4.57 Metres 15 feet	
13232J	Connects 13238A Duplex Register PCA to 9871A Printer. (Cable part no. 02640-60116.)	9871A printer (female)	Hood	—	1.83 Metres 6 feet	
13232K	Connects 13254A Video Interface PCA to Tektronix 4632/7 Video Copier. (Cable part no. 02640-60120.)	RS232 (male)	Hood	—	4.57 Metres 15 feet	
13232L	Connects 13254A Video Interface PCA to Conrac Monitor. (Cable part no. 02640-60121.)	BNC	Hood	—	7.61 Metres 2.5 feet	
13232N	Connects data communications interface PCA to modem. (Cable part no. 02640-60131.)	RS232C (male)	Hood	—	4.57 Metres 15 feet	
13232P	Connects 13260C or 13260D data communication interface PCA to modem in multipoint configurations. (Cable part no. 02640-60132.)	RS232C (male)	Hood	Multipoint (female)	4.57 Metres 15 feet (each leg)	
13232Q	Connects 13260C or 13260D data communications interface PCA to other terminals in downstream multipoint configuration. (Cable part no. 02640-60133.)	Multipoint (male)	Hood	Multipoint (female)	4.57 Metres 15 feet (each leg)	

Table 7-2. 13232 Cable Assemblies (Continued)

CABLE	FUNCTION	CONNECTORS A	CONNECTORS B	CONNECTORS C	LENGTH	HOOKUP
13232R	Provides 100-foot extension to 13232P, Q, T, multipoint cables. (Cable part no. 02640-60134.)	Multipoint (male)	Multipoint (female)	Multipoint (female)	30.5 Metres 100 feet	
13232S	Connects 13238A Duplex Register PCA to 9866A/B Printer. (Cable part no. 02640-60135.)	9866 printer (male)	Hood	—	1.83 Metres 6 feet	
13232T	Provides power-down protection for a terminal in multipoint configuration. (Cable part no. 02640-60151.)	Multipoint (male)	Hood	Multipoint (female)	4.57 Metres 15 feet (each leg)	
13232U	Provides direct connection to a computer by replacing the modem connections. (Cable part no. 5060-2403.)	RS232C (female)	RS232C (female)	—	1.52 Metres 5 feet	

HP 13234A (4K) TERMINAL MEMORY MODULE

Install the HP 13234A (+4K) memory accessory as follows:

1. ( ) Open terminal to its half open position (refer to page "Opening the Terminal").

2. ( ) Locate and ensure that the Control Memory PCA, part no. 02640-60192, has all jumpers installed. (See figures 7-2 and 7-8.) For HP 2641A, refer to figure 7-36 for second Control Memory PCA jumper configuration.

3. ( ) Using figure 7-9 as a guide, locate memory jumpers on 4K Memory PCA.

4. ( ) Using figures 7-10 and 7-11 as guides, arrange PCA starting address jumpers to select appropriate memory starting address for the size memory being configured. For example: to configure an 8K memory, remove all jumpers from one of the 4K Memory PCAs, and remove all but the 4K jumper from the other 4K Memory PCA.

NOTE

If a full 16K of memory is to be configured, the 4K block of data comm buffer is located outside the zero to 12K of display memory space.

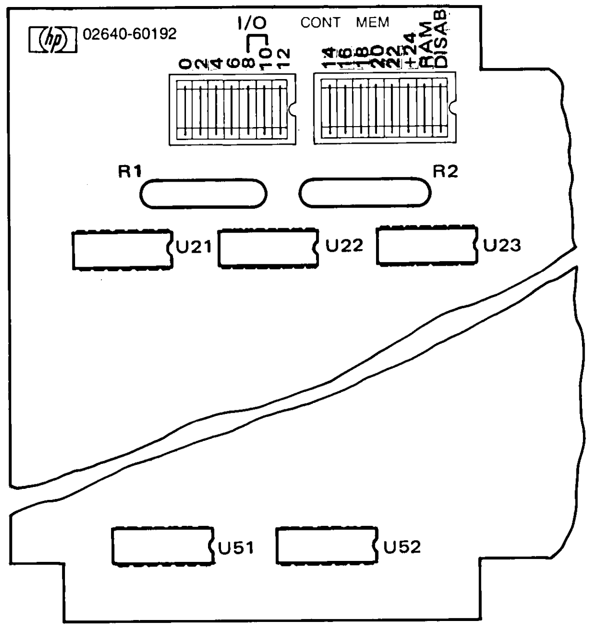
5. ( ) Install memory PCA's in any vacant Backplane Assembly connectors ensuring that no connectors are left vacant between any PCA's other than the two cartridge tape unit PCA's (if installed).

6. ( ) Check and, if necessary, adjust power supply (refer to "Power Supply Adjustment").

7. ( ) Firmly grasp mainframe top cover in one hand and release safety latch by pressing it inboard with other hand. Then, using both hands, carefully lower top cover to its closed position.

HP 13236B CARTRIDGE TAPE UNIT

The HP 13236B Cartridge Tape Unit is provided to upgrade the terminals to include mass storage capabilities. This accessory consists of two cartridge tape (CTU) Transport Assemblies, two Tape Cartridges, a CTU Interface PCA, a Read/Write PCA, a CTU Top Plane Assembly, a Motor Cable Assembly, a front bezel and required attaching hardware. Installation procedures are contained in the HP 13236A/B Cartridge Tape Unit Accessory Manual, part no. 13236-90001.



Notes: 1. All jumpers should be installed regardless of memory configuration.
2. Jumper configuration for first Control Memory PCA in 2641 and 2645.

Figure 7-8. Control Memory PCA Jumper Socket Location

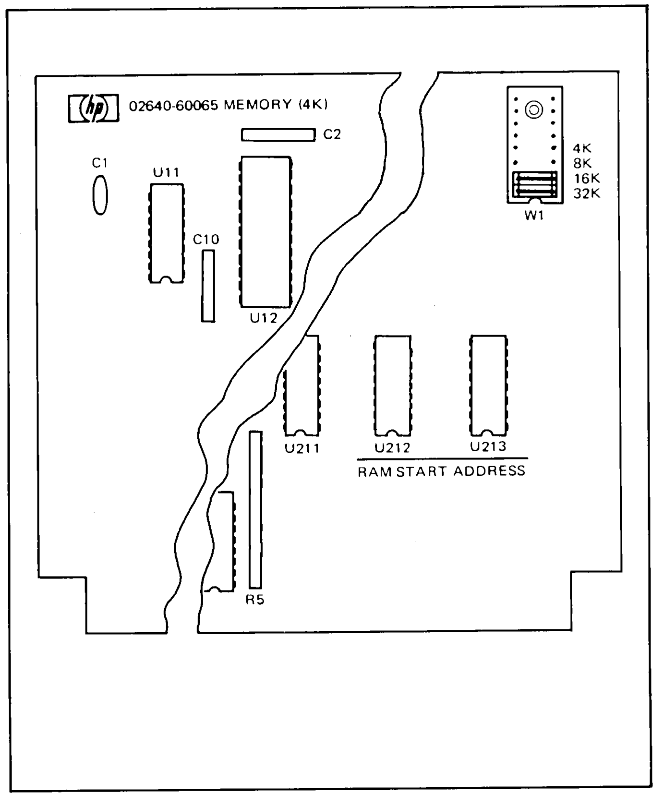


Figure 7-9. 4K Memory PCA Jumper Socket Location

HP 13238A TERMINAL DUPLEX REGISTER

To install the HP 13238A accessory, perform all the following steps except steps 4 and 5.

1. ( ) Open terminal to its half open position (refer to "Opening the Terminal").

2. ( ) Configure jumpers in Terminal Duplex Register PCA jumper sockets as shown in figure 7-12.

3. ( ) Install Terminal Duplex Register PCA in first vacant Backplane Assembly connector adjacent to existing PCA's.

NOTE

To ensure proper terminal operation, all PCA's must be installed in adjacent Backplane Assembly connectors. There should never be vacant connectors between PCA's except for the two CTU PCA's in option 007 (Read/Write PCA and CTU Interface PCA) which can be separated from the others.

4. ( ) Open mainframe rear door by twisting two lock extrusions.

5. ( ) Holding Terminal Duplex Register PCA firmly in place, carefully connect hood connector of the cable assembly, supplied with the printer subsystem, to PCA connector P2.

NOTE

The hood connector and PCA connector P2 are identically keyed to prevent inadvertant erroneous connections. Connecting the two together requires minimal hand pressure. If excessive resistance is encountered, an incorrect connection is being attempted.

For printer interfacing information refer to the *HP 9866A/B Printer Operator's Manual,* part no. 09866-90901, or the *HP 13349A Printer Subsystem Operating Manual,* part no. 13349-9?901.

6. ( ) Check and, if necessary, adjust power supply (refer to "Power Supply Adjustment").

7. ( ) Firmly grasp mainframe top cover in one hand and release safety latch by pressing it inboard with other hand. Then, using both hands, carefully lower top cover to its closed position.

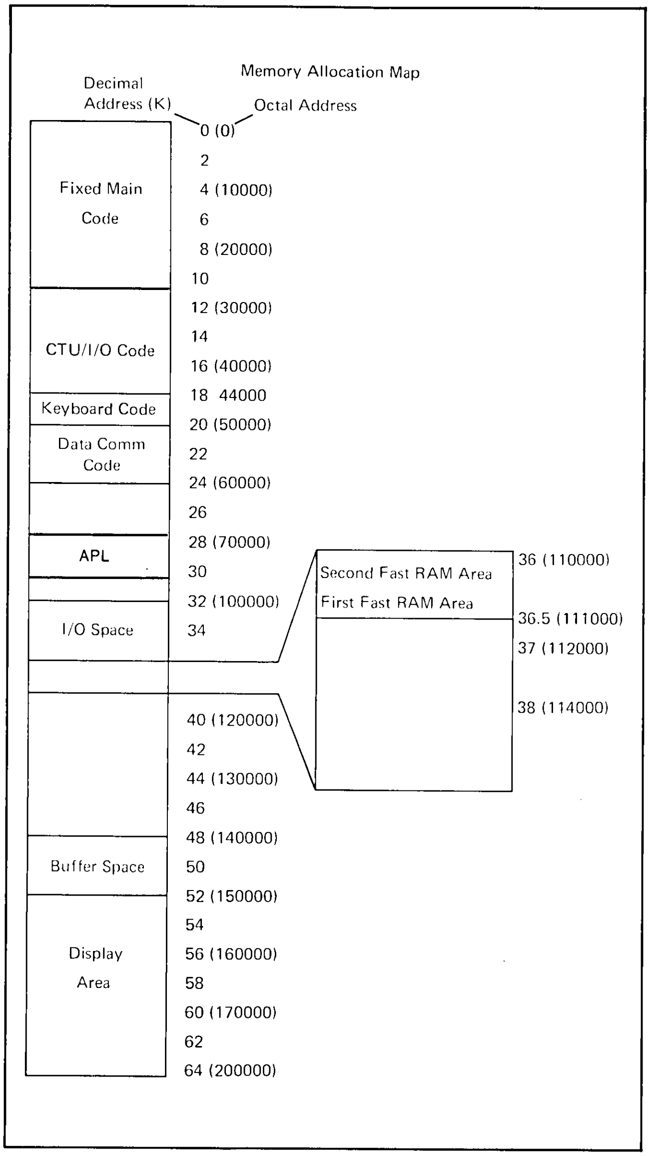
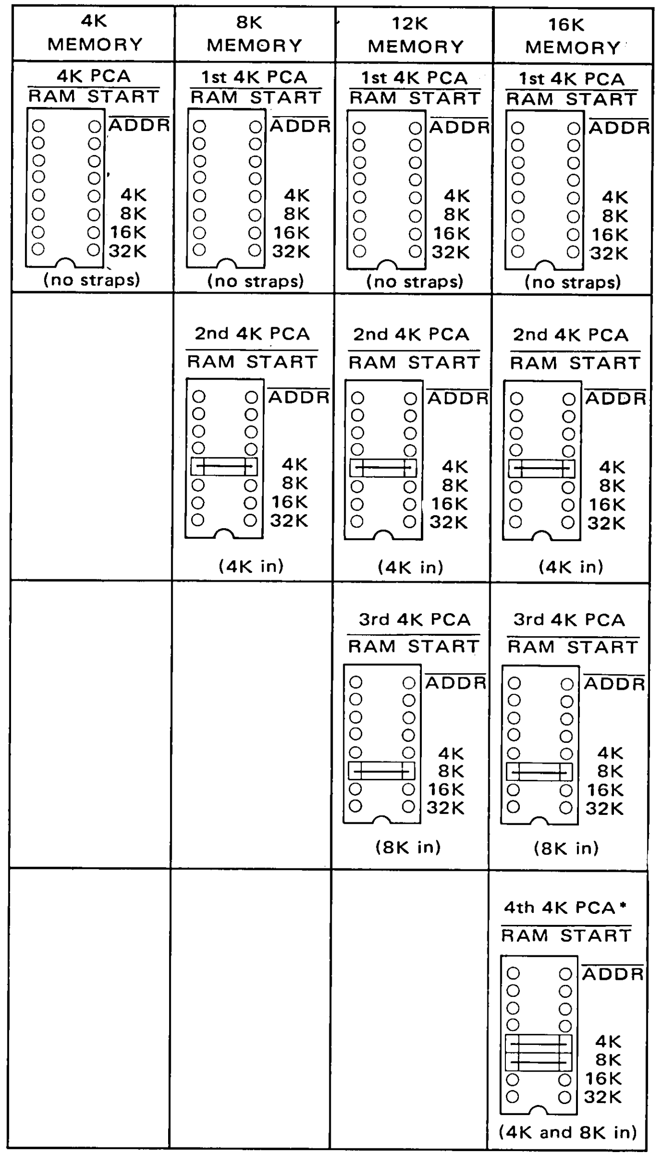


Figure 7-10. Typical Memory Map



*Used for data comm buffer only.

Figure 7-11. Configuring 4K Memory PCA Jumpers

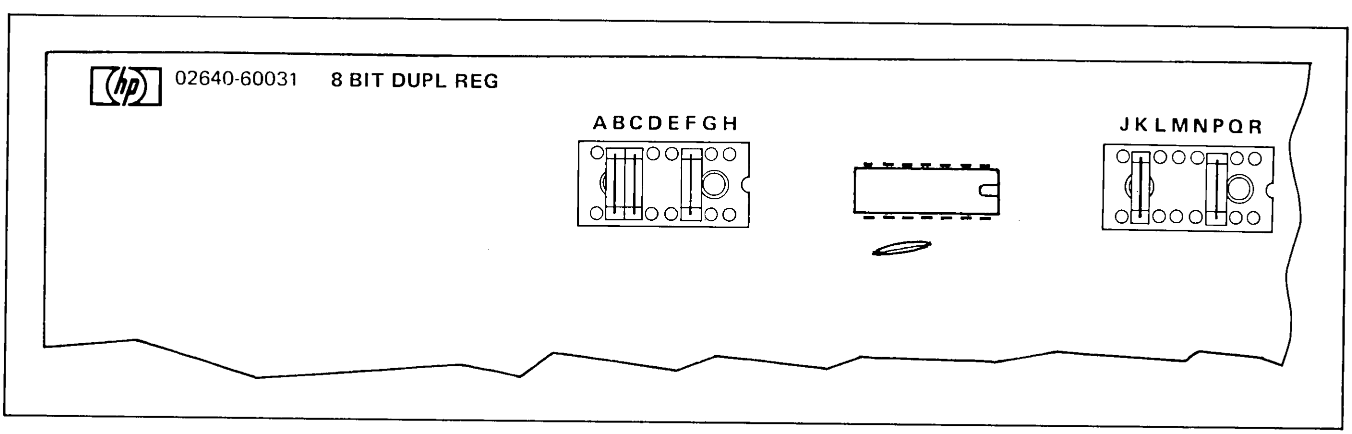


Figure 7-12. Terminal Duplex Register PCA Jumper Configuration

HP 13245A CHARACTER SET GENERATION KIT

The Character Set Generation Kit Accessory consists of a PROM Character PCA, part no. 02640-60053 and a Connector Assembly, part no. 02640-60070. Install the HP 13245A accessory as follows:

1. ( ) Open terminal to its half open position (refer to "Opening the Terminal").

2. ( ) Rearrange PCA's in the Backplane Assembly so that an unused connector is available for the PROM Character PCA adjacent to either the Display Control PCA or Display Enhancement PCA depending on the character set(s) to be replaced. If the base character set is to be replaced, vacate a connector adjacent to the Display Control PCA. If an alternate character set(s) is to be replaced, vacate a connector adjacent to the Display Enhancement PCA.

NOTE

PCA arrangement can be in any configuration with the following exceptions. The Keyboard Interface and data communications PCA's should always be installed in one of the first three Backplane Assembly connectors closest to the power supply. The Display Enhancement, DMA, Display Control, and Display Timing PCA's must always be installed as a group in adjacent connectors to accommodate the Top Plane Connector Assembly. The CTU Interface and Read/Write PCA's (option 007) must always be installed in adjacent connectors. No Backplane Assembly connectors can be left vacant between any PCA's except for the two CTU PCA's which can be separated from the others.

3. ( ) Install PROM Character PCA in vacated Backplane Assembly connector.

NOTE

The base or alternate character set ROM(s) to be replaced by the user generated PROM set(s) must be removed from the applicable PCA in accordance with the instructions contained in the *Character Set Generation Kit Application Note,* part no. 13245-90001.

4. ( ) When connected to the Display Enhancement PCA, the PROM Character PCA character sets 1 and 2 replace the Display Enhancement PCA character sets 1 and 2 respectively. If an alternate set(s) is to be replaced, first determine if the user generated PROM set(s) is alphanumeric or microvector. Then, using table 7-1 and figure 7-6 as a guide, correctly arrange Display Enhancement PCA jumpers 2 and 4 for the PROM character set type(s). (Jumpers 1 and 3 can either be removed or left installed.)

5. ( ) Attach Connector Assembly, part no. 02640-60070 between the two interface connectors (P2) on the PROM Character PCA and Display Control PCA or Display Enhancement PCA.

6. ( ) Check and, if necessary, adjust power supply (refer to "Power Supply Adjustment").

7. ( ) Firmly grasp mainframe top cover in one hand and release safety latch by pressing it inboard with other hand. Then, using both hands, carefully lower top cover to its closed position.

HP 13246A/B PRINTER SUBSYSTEM (9866)

This accessory consists of a Terminal Duplex Register PCA, part no. 02640-60031; a 13232S Cable Assembly, part no. 02640-60135; and an HP 9866A or B Printer. To install this accessory, first perform the HP 13238A Terminal Duplex Register installation instructions steps 1 through 7. After the PCA and cable assembly have been installed, install the printer in accordance with the instructions contained in the HP 9866A/B *Printer Operator's Manual,* part no. 09866-90901.

HP 13250B SERIAL PRINTER INTERFACE

The HP 13250B provides an RS232C interface to serial printers. You can configure the 13250B to be compatible with many RS232 serial printers requiring handshake or full-character protocol. For details on configuring and installing the interface, refer to the HP 13250 accessory manual, part no. 02640-90042.

HP 13260A,B,C,D DATA COMMUNICATIONS ACCESSORIES

The HP 13260A,B,C,D Data Communications Accessories provide various types of data communications from teletypewriter compatible data communications to asynchronous or synchronous multipoint polling. (Refer to Section V for details of these accessories.) Only one data communications interface may be installed in the terminal at any time. Each accessory consists of the items listed in table 7-3.

CAUTION

MOS integrated circuits can be damaged by electrostatic discharge. Use the following precautions:

Table 7-3. Contents of 13260 Data Communications Accessories

ITEM	PART NUMBERS			
	13260A	13260B	13260C	13260D
Interface Printed Circuit Assembly	02640-60086	02640-60143	02640-60106	02640-60107
ROM IC's	1818-0513[1]	1818-0513[1]	1818-0584 (std only)[2] 1818-0583 (opt 001 only)[2] 1818-0585[2]	1818-0584 (std only)[2] 1818-0583 (opt 001 only)[2] 1818-0585[2]
Keyboard Overlay	02644-00005[3]	02644-00005[3]	02645-00007	02645-00007
Baudrate Label	7120-6388	7120-6388	7120-6386	7120-6386
Test Connector Assembly	02645-60002	02645-60003	02645-60002 02645-60004	02645-60002 02645-60004

[1] Earlier units used 1818-0213. If this older part number must be replaced refer to the Service Manual for additional compatibility information.

[2] Earlier units use one of the following sets of IC's:

1818-0214 (std only)	1818-0434 (std only)
1818-0261 (opt. 001 only)	1818-0433 (opt. 001 only)
1818-0288	1818-0435

If replacement is necessary, replace with the same part number (i.e., do not use 1818-0584 to replace 1818-0214 or 1818-0434. IC's from different sets cannot be mixed. Also, if it is necessary to replace an entire set, it is recommended that the same set be used. If replacement is made with a different set, it may be necessary to reconfigure the terminal. (Refer to Appendix C for backdating information.)

[3] HP 2641A terminals use part number 02641-00004.

DO NOT wear clothing subject to static charge buildup, such as wool or synthetic materials.

DO NOT handle MOS circuits in carpeted areas.

DO NOT remove the circuit from its conductive foam pad until you are ready to install it.

AVOID touching the circuit leads. Handle by the plastic package only.

ENSURE that the circuit, work surface (table, desk, etc.) and PCA are all at the same ground potential. This can be done by touching the foam pad to the PCA and then touch the foam pad, circuit, and PCA to the work surface.

1. ( ) Perform complete terminal SELF-TEST (refer to "Self-Test") to verify proper terminal operation before installing the accessory.
2. ( ) Turn off ~ LINE switch at rear of terminal and disconnect power cord.
3. ( ) Open terminal as described in "Opening the Terminal."
4. ( ) Locate the Control Memory PCA, part no. 02640-60136 (see figure 7-2).
5. ( ) Insert connector removal tool under Top Plane Assembly as shown in figure 7-7, and remove Top Plane Assembly by pressing down on connector removal tool handle.
6. ( ) Remove the Control Memory PCA.
7. ( ) Remove IC's, if present, from DATA COMM sockets 20 and 22 of Control Memory PCA (see figure 7-13).
8. ( ) Carefully unpack and inventory 13260 accessory parts per table 7-3 above.
9. ( ) Carefully insert ROM(s) contained in accessory package into DATA COMM socket(s) so that ROM pin 1 is at upper right corner of socket (see figure 7-13).
10. ( ) Reinstall Control Memory PCA into backplane assembly connector from which it was removed.
11. ( ) Reinstall Top Plane Assembly on Processor and Control Memory PCA's top connectors.
12. ( ) Configure the 13260B, C, or D Interface PCA's for your particular application by setting the switches on the PCA. For additional options, refer to "Selecting Optional Operating Functions."
13. ( ) Install the Interface PCA in the first vacant backplane assembly connector adjacent to existing PCA's. For 13260C/D installation, connect ground cable assembly (part no. 02640-60083) between power supply chassis ground and PCA ground connector lug.

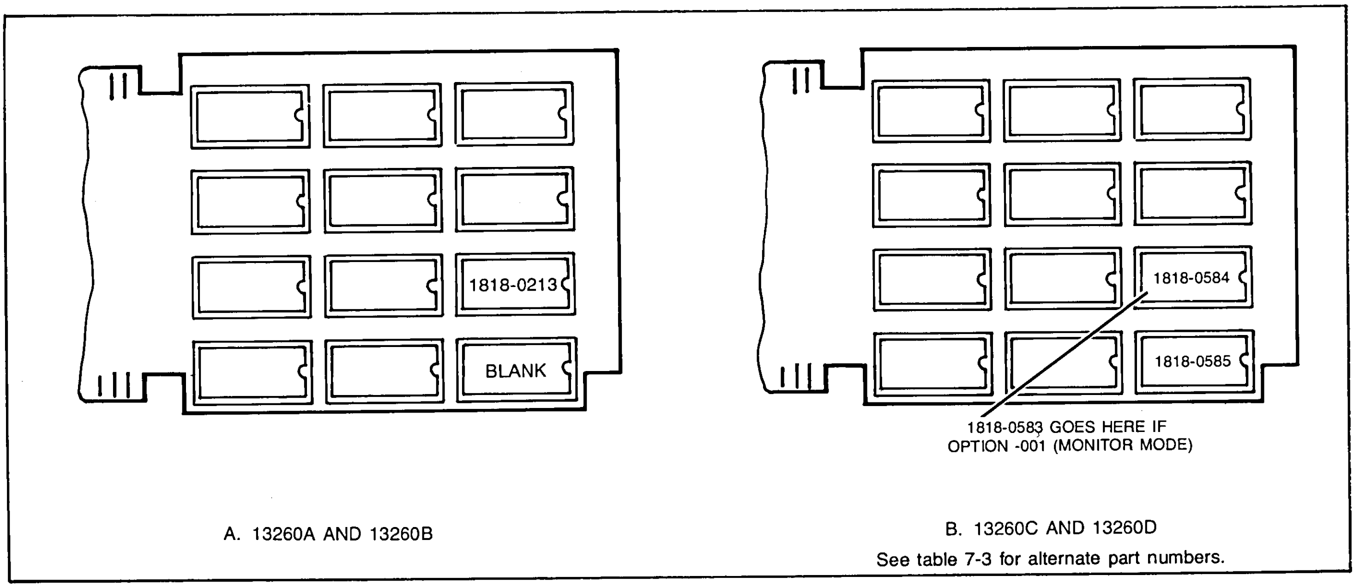


Figure 7-13. Control Memory PCA Data Comm Firmware IC Locations

NOTE

To ensure proper terminal operation, all PCA's must be installed in adjacent Backplane Assembly connectors. There should never be vacant connectors between PCA's except for the two CTU PCA's (Read/Write PCA and CTU Interface PCA and datacomm PCA's) in option 007 which can be separated from the others.

14. ( ) Open mainframe rear door by twisting the two lock extrusions.

15. ( ) Holding the communications interface PCA firmly in place, carefully connect Test Connector Assembly supplied with the accessory to PCA, and perform the DATA COMM SELF-TEST to verify proper operation of the PCA (refer to "Data Communications Self-Test"). After self test is performed, remove the Test Connector Assembly.

16. ( ) Holding the communications interface PCA firmly in place, carefully connect hood connector of a 13232C, F,N,P,Q, or T Cable Assembly to PCA. For cabling information, refer to "HP 13232 Cable Assemblies" and "Data Communications Cabling."

NOTE

The hood connector and PCA connector P2 are identically keyed to prevent inadvertant erroneous connections. Connecting the two together requires minimal hand pressure. If excessive resistance is encountered, an incorrect connection is being attempted.

17. ( ) Install baudrate switch overlay and keyboard overlay as shown in figure 7-14.

18. ( ) Firmly grasp top cover in one hand, and release safety catch by pressing it inboard with your other hand. Then, using both hands, carefully lower top cover to its closed position.

13261A DEVICE SUPPORT FIRMWARE

The 13261A Device Support Firmware provides the firmware required to operate peripheral devices from the terminal (such as printers, hard copy unit, etc.). This firmware is not required if option 007, the cartridge tape units, is installed.

The accessory consists of four ROM IC's (part nos. 1818-0208, 1818-0209, 1818-0210, and 1818-0426) mounted on a conductive foam pad. The pad prevents the ROM IC's from being damaged by electrostatic discharge.

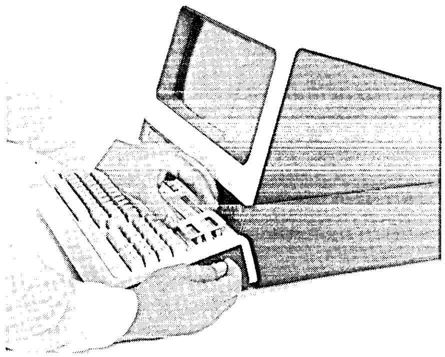
CAUTION

MOS integrated circuits can be damaged by electrostatic discharge. Use the following precautions:

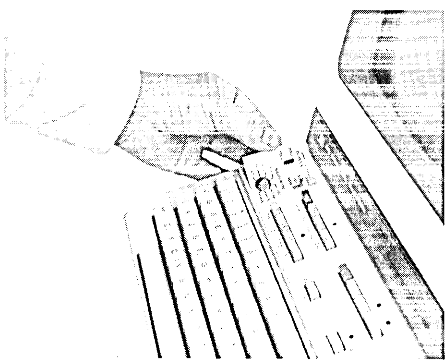
DO NOT wear clothing subject to static charge buildup, such as wool or synthetic materials.

DO NOT handle MOS circuits in carpeted areas.

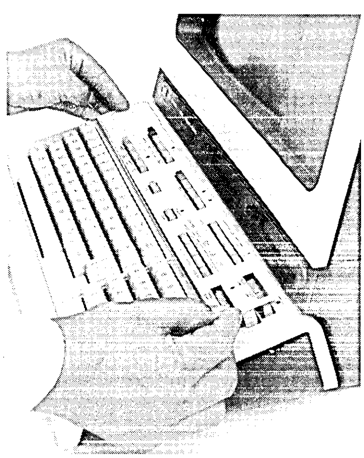
DO NOT remove the circuit from its conductive foam pad until you are ready to install it.



A. REMOVING A KEYBOARD OVERLAY



B. INSTALLING BAUDRATE OVERLAY



C. INSTALLING KEYBOARD OVERLAY

Figure 7-14. Installing Keyboard Overlays

AVOID touching the circuit leads. Handle by the plastic package only.

ENSURE that the circuit, work surface (table, desk, etc.) and PCA are all at the same ground potential. This can be done by touching the foam pad to the PCA and then touch the foam pad, circuit, and PCA to the work surface.

1. ( ) Perform complete terminal SELF-TEST (refer to "Self-Test") to verify proper terminal operation before installing the accessory.
2. ( ) Turn off AC POWER switch at rear of terminal and disconnect power cord.
3. ( ) Open terminal (refer to "Opening the Terminal").
4. ( ) Locate the Control Memory PCA, part no. 02640-60136 (see figure 7-2).
5. ( ) Insert connector removal tool under Top Plane Assembly as shown in figure 7-7.
6. ( ) Remove the Control Memory PCA.
7. ( ) Carefully unpack and inventory 13261A accessory parts.
8. ( ) Carefully insert the appropriate ROM contained in accessory package into ROM socket 10 through 16 that ROM pin 1 is at upper right corner of each socket (see figure 7-15).
9. ( ) Reinstall Control Memory PCA into backplane assembly connector from which it was removed.
10. ( ) Reinstall Top Plane Assembly on Processor and Control Memory PCAs' top connectors.
11. ( ) Perform terminal SELF-TEST to verify proper terminal operations after installing accessory.

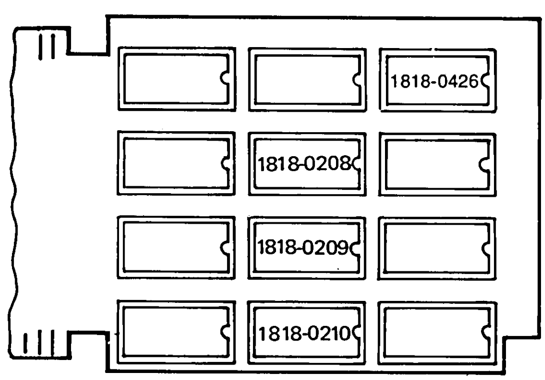


Figure 7-15. 13261A Device Support Firmware IC Locations on Control Memory PCA

HP 13349A PRINTER SUBSYSTEM (9871)

This accessory consists of a Terminal Duplex Register PCA, part no. 02640-60031; an Interface Cable Assembly, part no. 02640-60116; and an HP 9871A Printer. To install this accessory, first perform the HP 13238A Terminal Duplex Register installation instructions steps 1 through 7. After the PCA and cable assembly have been installed, install the printer in accordance with the instructions contained in the *HP 13349A Printer Subsystem Operating Manual,* part no. 13349-90901.

POWER SUPPLY ADJUSTMENT

After installing or removing accessories, you should adjust the +5 volt output of the terminal's power supply. Only this voltage need be adjusted because the +5 volts provides reference for the other supply voltages. The adjustment requires a 20,000 ohms/volt voltmeter.

To adjust the +5V, proceed as follows:

1. ( ) Open the terminal, and remove power supply cover.

2. ( ) Turn on ac power to terminal, and ensure that neither cartridge tape transport motor is running (if installed).

3. ( ) Check the voltages at the following points with the multimeter. (See figure 7-2.)

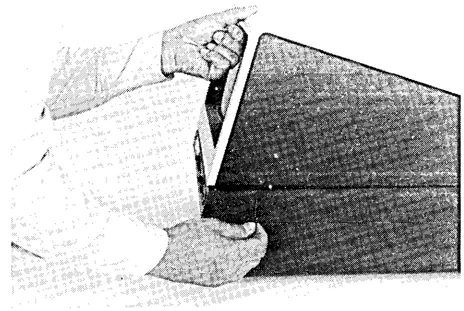
TEST POINT	VOLTAGE TOLERANCE
+5V diode	+4.85V to +5.25V
−42V diode	−40V to −46V
+12V diode	+11.8V to +12.6V
−12V diode	−11.8V to −12.6V

4. ( ) Adjust +5 volt potentiometer until all voltages are within tolerance.

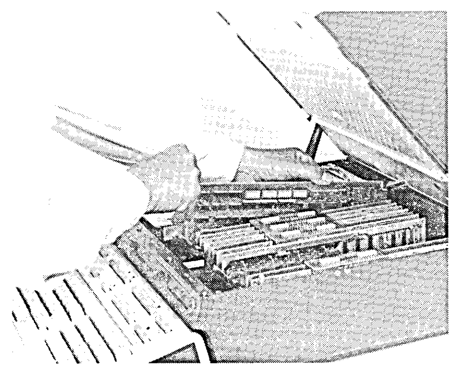
5. ( ) When all voltages are within tolerance, turn off power, disconnect multimeter, and replace power supply cover.

SELECTING OPTIONAL OPERATING FUNCTIONS

The terminal is equipped with jumper and switch selectable options that can be used to alter some of its operating functions (see figure 7-16. These options and their effects on terminal operation are discussed in tables 7-4 through 7-8. To select an operating function, proceed as follows:

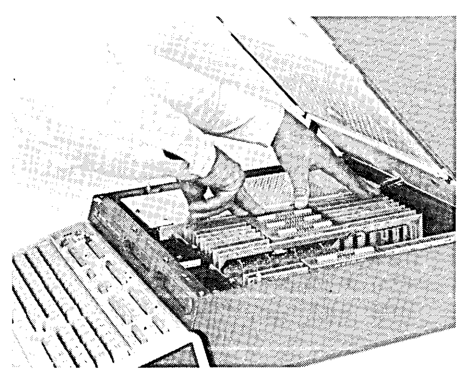


1. ( ) Open the terminal to its half open position (refer to "Opening the Terminal").

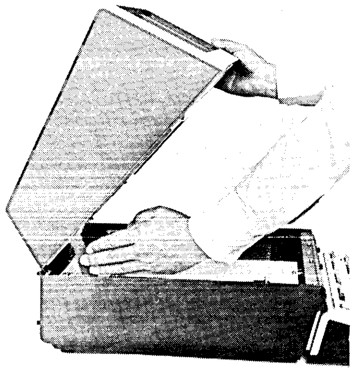


2. ( ) Locate the particular PCA, and remove the cable hood connector from the PCA. Then, remove the PCA from the Backplane Assembly connector.

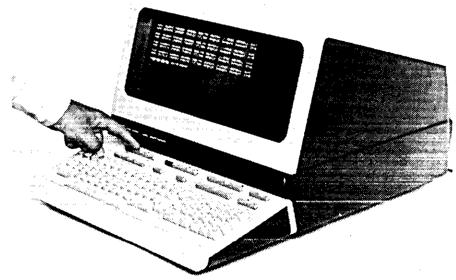
3. ( ) Using figure 7-17, 7-18, 7-19, or 7-20 (as applicable) and table 7-4, 7-5, 7-6, 7-7 or 7-8 (as applicable), select the desired operating functions, and set the switches to the appropriate positions. (More information on configuration is given in Section V.)



4. ( ) Reinstall the PCA into the vacated Backplane Assembly connector.



5. ( ) Firmly grasp mainframe top cover in one hand and release safety latch by pressing it inboard with your other hand. Then, using both hands, carefully lower top cover to its closed position.



6. ( ) Perform SELF-TEST (refer to "Self-Test").

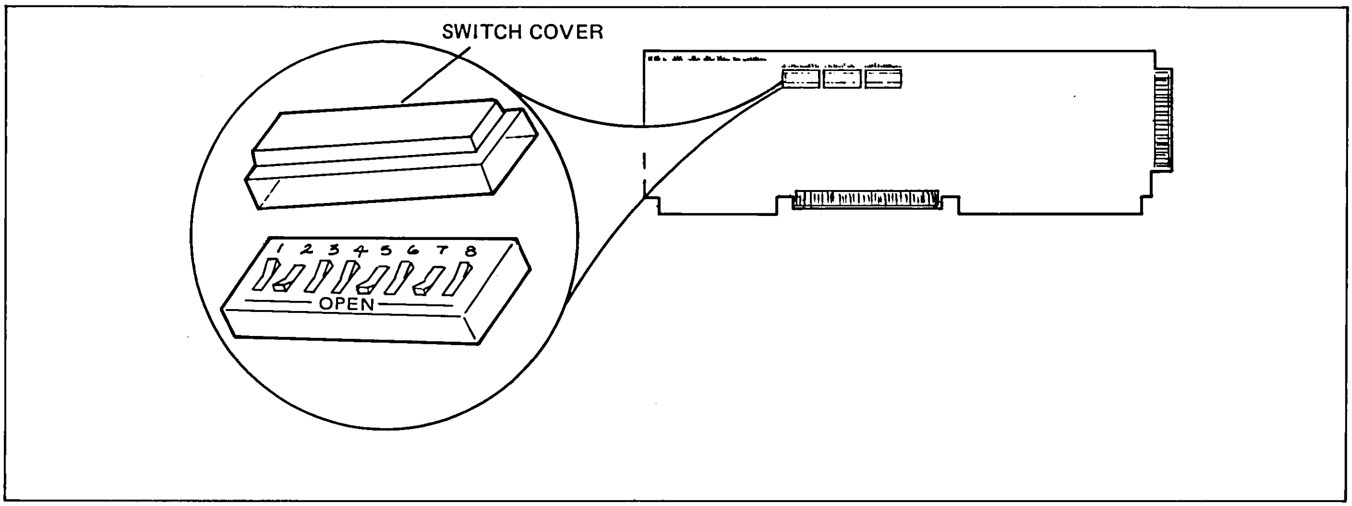


Figure 7-16. Typical Strapping Option Switch Assembly

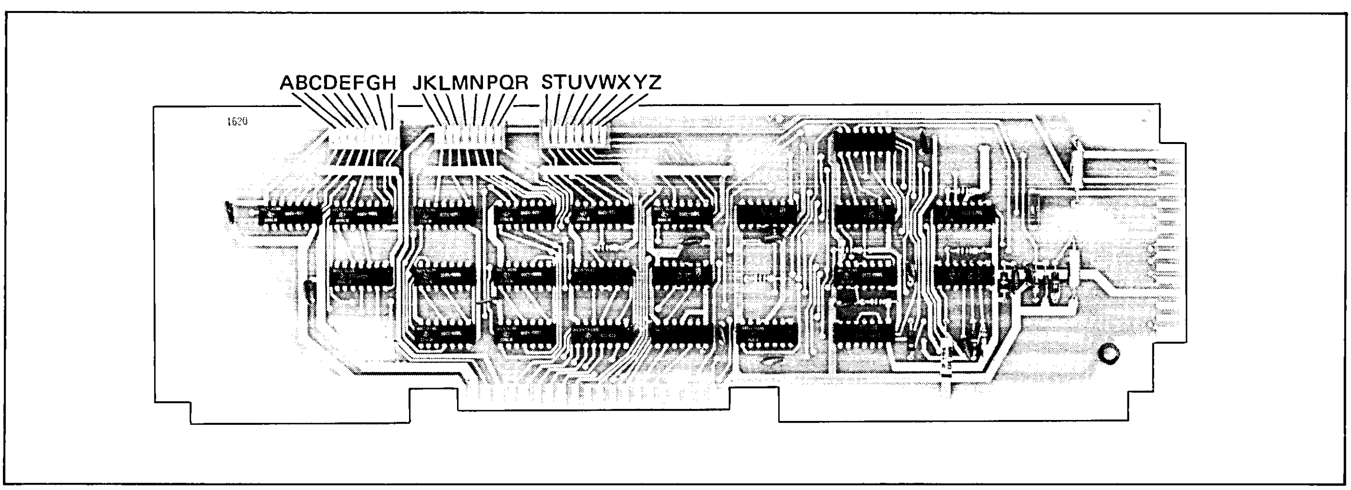


Figure 7-17. Keyboard Interface PCA Strapping Options

Table 7-4. Keyboard Interface PCA Strapping Options for Point-to-Point

STRAP	STRAPPING OPTION	NORMAL OPERATION (SWITCH CLOSED)	OPERATION WITH STRAPPING OPTION (SWITCH OPEN)
A	Function Key Transmission	The escape code sequence generated by the major function keys (such as, ROLL UP, ROLL DOWN, etc.) are executed locally, but not transmitted to the computer.	The escape code sequences generated by all keys are transmitted to the computer. If operating in half duplex, the function is also executed locally.
B	Space Overwrite (SPOW)	Spaces typed will overwrite existing characters.	When the SPOW latch is off, overwriting occurs as normal. When the SPOW latch is on, spaces cause the cursor to forward but not overwrite any existing characters. The SPOW latch is turned on by a Carriage Return, and off by a Line Feed, Home or Tab.
C	Cursor End-of-Line Wrap Around	At the end of each line, a local Carriage Return and Line Feed are generated; the cursor moves to the beginning of the next line.	A Carriage Return and Line Feed are not generated at the end of each line. The cursor remains in and overwrites column 80.
D	Line/Page Mode	The terminal is set to transfer a line at a time in Block Mode.	Entire pages of information are transferred in Block Mode.
E	Paper Tape Mode	When READ key is pressed with AUTO LF key latched down, each tape record begins with a LF and terminates with a CR.	Each tape record is terminated by CR(LF).
F	Fast Binary Read	The terminal transmission rate is determined by the BAUD RATE switch on the keyboard.	When an ESC e (Fast Binary Read) is issued by the computer, the baud rate is switched automatically to 9600 baud (if the terminal is equipped with cartridge tape units).
G	Block Transfer Handshake	In Block Mode, all data transfers to the computer are sent upon receipt of a DC1 from the computer.	All Block Mode transfers (i.e., cursor sense, terminal and device status, device I/O responses, display memory, and function keys) are preceded by a DC2. The terminal sends the DC2 upon receipt of a DC1 from the computer. After the CPU receives the DC2 from the terminal, another DC1 is required to trigger transmission of data from the terminal.
H	Inhibit DC2	During Block Mode Handshake transfers, the terminal sends a DC2 in response to a DC1 prior to sending data. (See Block Transfer Handshake strapping above.)	A DC1 from the computer is not required to trigger data transfers to the computer. Also, the DC2 from the terminal is not sent during Block Mode Transfer handshakes. (See Block Transfer Handshake strapping above.) Opening both switches G and H eliminate the terminal's use of the Handshake protocol entirely. Additionally, when the ENTER key is pressed in Block Mode the cursor will be placed in the first column before transmission occurs if operating in Line/Field Mode (switch D closed) or Home'd if operating in Page Mode (switch D open).
J	Auto Terminate	No effect.	When in BLOCK mode and the ENTER key is pressed, places a non-displayable terminator after the cursor position.
K	Clear Terminator	No effect.	Clear terminator caused by Strapping Option J.
L	Self Test Inhibit	No effect.	Self Test function is inhibited. Pressing TEST key or issuing ESC z has no effect. TAPE TEST and DATA COMM SELF TEST functions are not affected.
M	INSERT and DELETE CHAR Reverse Sense	No effect.	Reverses control function of INSERT CHAR and and DELETE CHAR key i.e., when key is pressed, line wrap around is in effect without having to press CNTL key. When either key is pressed while pressing CNTL, normal insert character and delete character functions are in effect.)

Table 7-4. Keyboard Interface PCA Strapping Operations for Point-to-Point (Continued)

STRAP	STRAPPING OPTION	NORMAL OPERATION (SWITCH CLOSED)	OPERATION WITH STRAPPING OPTION (SWITCH OPEN)
N	Escape Code Transfer	No effect.	Escape codes relating to the display (e.g., display enhancements, alternate character sets, format mode, fields, etc.) are sent to printer if it is selected as a destination device.
P,Q		Refer to page 7-49 for APL applications	
R	Circuit Assurance	The transition from receive state to transmit state occurs after both CB (Clear to Send) and SB (Secondary Receive Data) go on within 2.6 seconds. Otherwise, the terminal returns to the receive state.	The transition from receive state to transmit state occurs after CB (Clear to Send) goes on.
S,T	Main Channel Protocol	Non-main channel protocol (both switches closed).	**S-closed, T-open:** Main channel with STX/ETX as Start of Data and End of Data. **S-open, T-closed:** Main channel with EOT as End of Data. **S-open, T-open:** Main channel with ETX as End of Data.
U	CPU Break	The CPU can interrupt the terminal while it is in the transmit state. The CPU initiates an ON to OFF transition of the SB (Secondary Receive Data) line. The terminal responds by turning off CA (Request to Send) and going to the receive state.	The terminal ignores all transitions on the SB (Secondary Receive Data) line from the modem in the transmit state.
V	Carrier Detect	When the terminal is in the receive state, an ON to OFF transition of CF (Carrier Detect) line from the modem causes the terminal to go into the transmit state. Transitions of CF have no effect while the terminal is in the transmit state.	Transitions of CF (Carrier Detect) line have no effect on the terminal.
W	Data Comm Self Test Enable	Enables DATA COMM SELF TEST from either the keyboard or escape sequence.	Disables DATA COMM SELF TEST. If self test is attempted (by either the keyboard or escape sequence), the test will be aborted and ERROR 0 will appear on the display.
X	Data Speed Select	Holds data speed signal low (CH = 0).	Sets data speed signal high (CH = 1).
Y	Transmit LED	The TRANSMIT light on the keyboard is turned on when CB (Clear to Send) line from the modem is high. It is turned off when the CB line goes low.	The TRANSMIT light on the keyboard is turned on when the CC (Data Set Ready) line from the modem is high and the 13260B Extended Asynchronous Communications Interface PCA is used. It is turned off when the CC line goes low.
Z	Force Parity	The PARITY switch on the terminal keyboard is affected as follows:	
		No Parity: Send 8 bits and receive 8 bits. Force bit 8 to zero. **Odd Parity:** Send 7 data bits + odd parity. Receive 7 data bits + odd parity. Check for parity error. **Even Parity:** Send 7 data bits + even parity. Receive 7 data bits + even parity. Check for parity error.	**No Parity:** Send 8 bits and receive 8 bits. Force bit 8 to one. **Odd Parity:** Send 7 bits + odd parity. Receive 7 bits. No check for parity error. **Even Parity:** Send 7 data bits + even parity. Receive 7 data bits. No check for parity error.

Table 7-5. Keyboard Interface PCA Strapping Options for Multipoint

STRAP	STRAPPING OPTION	NORMAL OPERATION (SWITCH CLOSED)	OPERATION WITH STRAPPING OPTION (SWITCH OPEN)
A	Function Key Transmission	The escape code sequence generated by the major function keys (such as, ROLL UP, ROLL DOWN, etc.) are executed locally, but not transmitted to the computer.	(Same as switch closed.)
B	Space Overwrite (SPOW)	Spaces typed will overwrite existing characters.	When the SPOW latch is off, overwriting occurs as normal. When the SPOW latch is on, spaces cause the cursor to forward but not overwrite any existing characters. The SPOW latch is turned on by a Carriage Return, and turned off by a Line Feed, Home, or Tab.
C	Cursor End-of-Line Wrap Around	At the end of each line, a local Carriage Return and Line Feed are generated; the cursor moves to the beginning of the next line.	A Carriage Return and Line Feed are not generated at the end of each line. The cursor remains in and overwrites column 80.
D	Line/Page Mode	The terminal is set to transfer a line at a time from display memory, an unprotected field in format mode, or a record from the tape cartridge.	Transfers the entire contents of display memory (a "page"), all unprotected fields in format mode, or a file from the tape cartridge.
E	Paper Tape Mode	When the READ key is pressed with the AUTO LF down, each tape record begins with a LF and terminates with a CR.	Each tape record is terminated by CR(LF).
F	(Not Used)		
G	Block Transfer Handshake	No effect.	No effect.
H	Inhibit DC2	No effect.	No effect.
J	Auto Terminate	No effect.	When the ENTER key is pressed places a non-displayable terminator after the cursor position.
K	Clear Terminator	No effect.	Clear terminator caused by Strapping Option J.
L	Self Test Inhibit	No effect.	Self Test function is inhibited. Pressing TEST key or issuing ESC z has no effect. TAPE TEST and DATA COMM SELF TEST functions are not affected.
M	INSERT and DELETE CHAR Reverse Sense	No effect.	Reverses control function of INSERT CHAR and DELETE CHAR keys (i.e., when key is pressed, line wrap around is in effect without having to press CNTL key. When either key is pressed while pressing CNTL, normal insert character and delete character functions are in effect.)
N	Escape Code Transfer	No effect.	Escape codes relating to the display (e.g., display enhancements, alternate character sets, format mode, fields, etc.) are sent to printer if it is selected as a destination device.
P, Q		Refer to page 7-49 for APL applications	
R	Set Trailing Pad	If in ASCII mode (switch J07 open on multipoint PCA), sets pad to 177 (octal) + parity. If in EBCDIC mode (switch J07 closed on multipoint PCA), sets pad to 377 (octal).	Sets pad to 377 (octal) if any of the following conditions are present: (1) PARITY switch on keyboard is set to NONE. (2) Switch Z on this PCA is open. (3) CRC-16 is selected (switch J06 on multipoint PCA is closed).
S	(Not Used)		

Table 7-5. Keyboard Interface PCA Strapping Options for Multipoint (Continued)

STRAP	STRAPPING OPTION	NORMAL OPERATION (SWITCH CLOSED)	OPERATION WITH STRAPPING OPTION (SWITCH OPEN)
T, U	Output Block Size	**T U**	**BLOCK SIZE (BYTES)**
		C C	1/2 Data Comm Buffer (refer to switches J16, J17 on multipoint PCA).
		O C	256
		C O	512
		O O	1024
		C = closed, O = open	
V	Continuous Carrier	Continuous carrier off indicates that the modem does not have continuous carrier.	Continuous carrier on indicates that the modem does have continuous carrier. Allows firmware to abort after 3 seconds of continuous carrier if terminator is not detected.
W	Data Comm Self Test Enable	Enables DATA COMM SELF TEST from either the keyboard or escape sequence.	Disables DATA COMM SELF TEST. If self text is attempted (by either the keyboard or escape sequence), the test will be aborted and ERROR 0 will appear on the display.
X	Data Speed Select	Holds data speed signal low (CH = off).	Sets data speed signal high (CH = on).
Y	Transmit Indicator	Lights TRANSMIT indicator on keyboard when terminal is communicating with the computer.	Lights TRANSMIT indicator on keyboard when Data Set Ready (CC) is on, and it goes out when CC goes off.
Z	Transparency	No Effect	Causes all data sent from the terminal to be transparent.

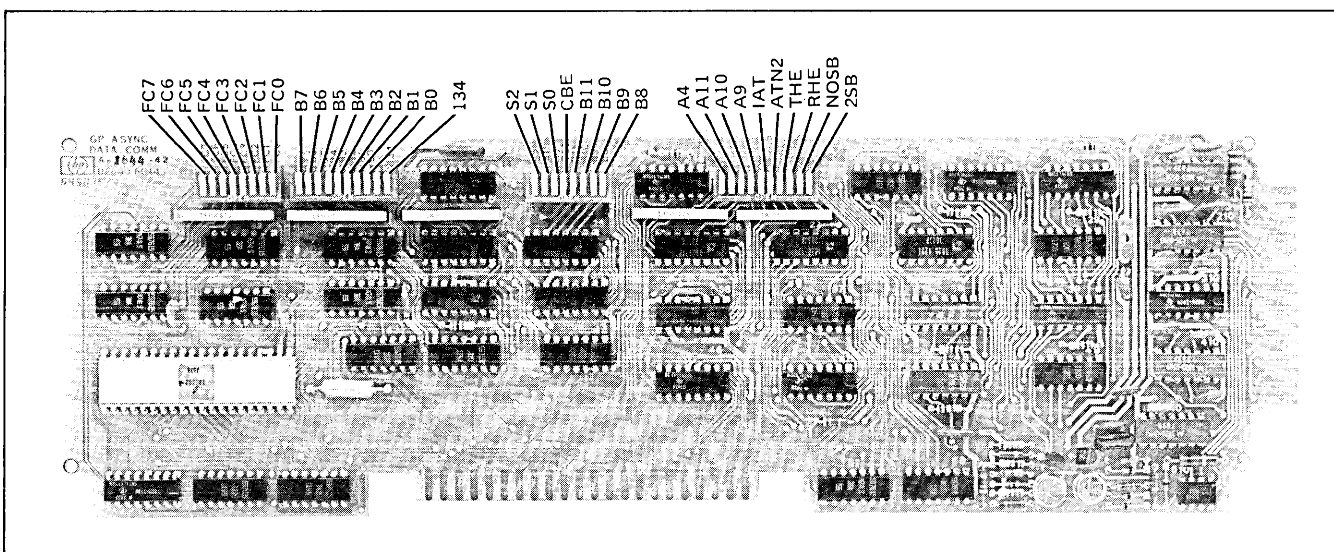


Figure 7-18. Extended Asynchronous Communications PCA Strapping Options

Table 7-6. Extended Asynchronous Communications Interface Strapping Options

<table>
<tr><th>STRAP</th><th>STRAPPING OPTION</th><th>DESCRIPTION</th></tr>
<tr><td>FC0
thru
FC7</td><td>(Not Used)</td><td>(This switch should always be open.)</td></tr>
<tr><td>B0
thru
B7</td><td>Custom Baud
Rate Select</td><td>The switches are set to the binary equivalent of a number determined by the formula:
$INT\left(\frac{153600}{\text{baud rate}}\right) - 1$
(See example in figure 5-10.)</td></tr>
<tr><td>134</td><td>134.5 Baud</td><td>(This switch should always be open.)</td></tr>
<tr><td>S0
thru
S2</td><td>Transmit Baud
Rate</td><td><table>
<tr><th colspan="3">SWITCH SETTING</th><th>TRANSMIT BAUD RATE</th></tr>
<tr><th>S0</th><th>S1</th><th>S2</th><th></th></tr>
<tr><td>O</td><td>O</td><td>O</td><td>Transmit baud rate = receive baud rate.</td></tr>
<tr><td>O</td><td>C</td><td>C</td><td>110</td></tr>
<tr><td>C</td><td>O</td><td>C</td><td>150</td></tr>
<tr><td>O</td><td>O</td><td>C</td><td>300</td></tr>
<tr><td>C</td><td>C</td><td>O</td><td>1200</td></tr>
<tr><td>O</td><td>C</td><td>O</td><td>2400</td></tr>
<tr><td>C</td><td>C</td><td>C</td><td>Custom</td></tr>
</table>O = open, C = closed</td></tr>
<tr><td>CBE</td><td>Custom Baud</td><td>Closed: Enables custom receive baud rates. (The keyboard BAUD RATE switch must be set to EXT.)
Open: Receive baud rate is set by keyboard BAUD RATE switch.</td></tr>
<tr><td>B8
thru
B11</td><td>Custom Baud
Rate Select</td><td>The switches are set to the binary equivalent of a number determined by the formula:
$INT\left(\frac{153600}{\text{baud rate}}\right) - 1$</td></tr>
<tr><td>A4,A9
thru
A11</td><td>Module Address</td><td>Provides PCA address so that firmware can address the PCA. These switches should always be set to 10, (A4 open, A9 thru A11 closed).</td></tr>
<tr><td>IAT</td><td>Inhibit
Attention</td><td>(This switch must be closed when receive handshake is used.)</td></tr>
<tr><td>ATN2</td><td>Enable
Attention
Two</td><td>(This switch should always be open.)</td></tr>
<tr><td>THE</td><td>Transmit
Handshake
Enable</td><td>Closed: Permits the associated external device (a or computer) to signal a "busy" condition on CB (Clear to Send) or SCF (Secondary Carrier) control lines and temporarily stop data transmission from the terminal.
Open: Transmit Handshake disabled.</td></tr>
<tr><td>RHE</td><td>Receive
Handshake
Enable</td><td>Closed: Permits the terminal to signal a "busy" condition on the CD (Data Terminal Ready) control line and temporarily stop data transmission from the associated external device (a computer).
Open: Receive Handshake Disabled.</td></tr>
<tr><td>NOSB</td><td>SCF Inhibit</td><td>Closed: Inhibits RS232 SCF (Secondary Carrier) control line.
Open: Enables RS232 SCF (Secondary Carrier) control lines.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2SB</td><td>Stop Bit Select</td><td>Selects the number of stop bits to be appended to the data bits during transmission.
Closed: Selects 2 stop bits.
Open: Selects 1 stop bit.
NOTE: Selecting 110 baud automatically appends 2 stop bits.</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7-7. Asynchronous Multipoint Communications Interface Strapping Options

<table>
<tr><th>STRAP</th><th>STRAPPING OPTION</th><th colspan="3">DESCRIPTION</th></tr>
<tr><td>J10
thru
J14</td><td>Device ID</td><td colspan="3">Selects device ID code (0-27) which identifies one terminal from another on a particular communication line. For example: to set an ID code of 6, set switches J14 through J10 to 00110 respectively. (See "Device I.D. Number" and "Configuration Procedure" in Section V.)
0 = closed, 1 = open</td></tr>
<tr><td>J15</td><td>(not used)</td><td colspan="3"></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">J16,
J17</td><td rowspan="3">Input Buffer Size</td><td>J17</td><td>J16</td><td>BUFFER SIZE</td></tr>
<tr><td>C
C
O
O</td><td>C
O
C
O</td><td>500 bytes
1000 bytes
2000 bytes
4000 bytes</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">C = closed, O = open</td></tr>
<tr><td>J00
thru
J04</td><td>Group ID</td><td colspan="3">Selects group ID code (0-27) which identifies the communications line that the terminal is on. For example: to set an ID code of 20, set switches J04 thru J00 to 10100 respectively. (See "Device I.D. Number" and "Configuration Procedure" in Section V.)
0 = closed, 1 = open</td></tr>
<tr><td>J05</td><td>Extended Text Mode</td><td colspan="3">Open: Enable Extended Text features. See "Extended Text Mode", Section V.
Closed: Disable Extended Text features.</td></tr>
<tr><td>J06</td><td>BCC (Block Check Character)</td><td colspan="3">Determines which type of parity check will be used for an entire block of data in Block Mode.
Closed = 0: LRC (longitudinal redundancy check)
Open = 1: CRC — 16 (cyclic redundancy check)</td></tr>
<tr><td>J07</td><td>Code Select</td><td colspan="3">Selects data character and control character code format.
Open = 1: EBCDIC
Closed = 0: ASCII</td></tr>
<tr><td>INT</td><td>Firmware Interrupt</td><td colspan="3">This switch should always be open.</td></tr>
<tr><td>PL0
thru
PL6</td><td>Poll Bits</td><td colspan="3">These switches should always be open.</td></tr>
<tr><td>A4, A9
thru
A11</td><td>Module Address</td><td colspan="3">Provides PCA address so that the firmware can address the PCA. These switches should always be set to 7 (A4 closed, A9 thru A11 open).</td></tr>
<tr><td>−12</td><td>13232T Accessory Power</td><td colspan="3">Closed: Provides −12 volts for operation of relays in the 13232T Power Protect Multipoint Cable.
Open: No power supplied.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2SB</td><td>Stop Bit Select</td><td colspan="3">Selects the number of stop bits to be appended to the data bits during transmission.
Open: Selects 2 stop bits.
Closed: Selects 1 stop bit (normal position)</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7-8. Synchronous Multipoint Communications Interface Strapping Options

<table>
<tr><th>STRAP</th><th>STRAPPING OPTION</th><th colspan="3">DESCRIPTION</th></tr>
<tr><td>J10
thru
J14</td><td>Device ID</td><td colspan="3">Selects device ID code (0-27) which identifies one terminal from another on a particular communication line. For example: to set an ID code of 6, set switches J14 thru J10 to 00110 respectively. (See "Device I.D. Number" and "Configuration Procedure" in Section V.)
0 = closed, 1 = open</td></tr>
<tr><td>J15</td><td>(not used)</td><td colspan="3"></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">J16,
J17</td><td rowspan="3">Input Buffer Size</td><th>J17</th><th>J16</th><th>BUFFER SIZE</th></tr>
<tr><td>C
C
O
O</td><td>C
O
C
O</td><td>500 bytes
1000 bytes
2000 bytes
4000 bytes</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">C = closed, O = open</td></tr>
<tr><td>J00
thru
J04</td><td>Group ID</td><td colspan="3">Selects group ID code (0-27) which identifies the communications line that the terminal is on. For example: to set an ID code of 20, set switches J04 thru J00 to 10100 respectively. (See 'Device I.D. Number" and "Configuration Procedure" in Section V.)
0 = closed, 1 = open</td></tr>
<tr><td>J05</td><td>Extended Text Mode</td><td colspan="3">Open: Enable Extended Text features. See "Extended Text Mode", Section V.
Closed: Disable Extended Text features.</td></tr>
<tr><td>J06</td><td>BCC (Block Check Character)</td><td colspan="3">Determines which type of block check will be used for an entire block of data.
Closed = 0: LRC (longitudinal redundancy check)
Open = 1: CRC — 16 (cyclic redundancy check)</td></tr>
<tr><td>J07</td><td>Code Select</td><td colspan="3">Selects data character and control character code format.
Open = 1: EBCDIC
Closed = 0: ASCII</td></tr>
<tr><td>−12</td><td>13232T Accessory Power</td><td colspan="3">Closed: Provides −12 volts for operation of relays in the 13232T Power Protect Multipoint Cable.
Open: No power supplied.</td></tr>
<tr><td>A4, A9
thru
A11</td><td>Module Address</td><td colspan="3">Provides PCA address so that the firmware can address the PCA. These switches should always be set to 7 (A4 closed, A9 thru A11 open).</td></tr>
<tr><td>RCLK</td><td>Receive Data Clock</td><td colspan="3">When the terminal is directly connected to a computer (no modem) by using the 13232U Modem Bypass Cable, the PCA can provide the receive data clock (DD) by closing this switch. (This applies only to the first terminal in the multipoint chain.)
Normally, this switch is open. One of the transmit data clock switches (see below) must be selected for this function.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2400
4800
9600</td><td>Transmit Data Clock</td><td colspan="3">Usually, the modem or computer provides both the receive (DD) and transmit (DB) data clocks for timing the data transfers. If the modem requires a terminal-supplied transmit clock (DA), select the appropriate rate for that modem.
If using the 13232U Modem Bypass Cable, select the desired rate.
9600 must be closed for the DATA COMM SELF TEST.
CAUTION
Close only one switch, otherwise damage to the PCA may result.</td></tr>
</table>

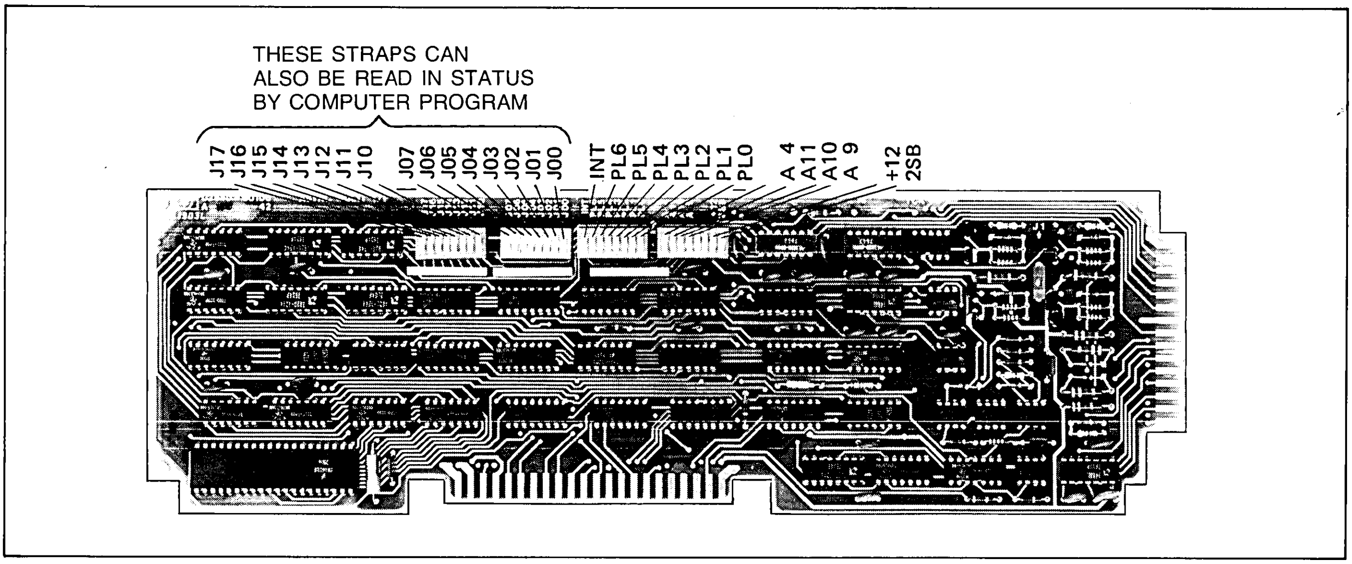


Figure 7-19. Asynchronous Multipoint Communications PCA Strapping Options

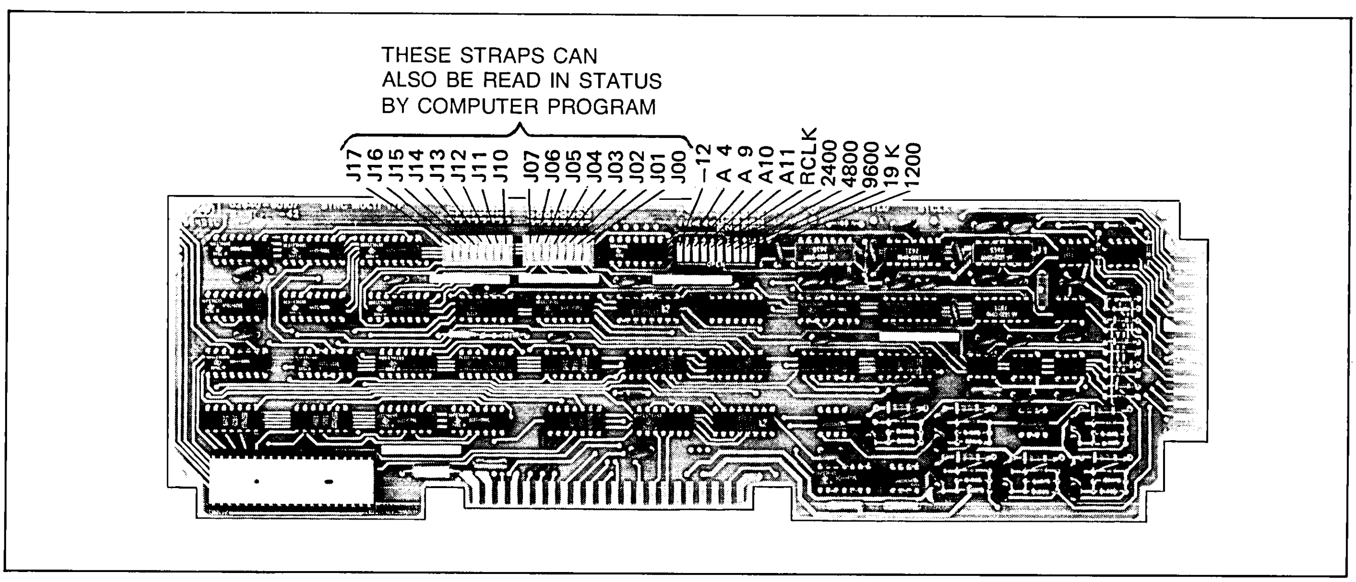


Figure 7-20. Synchronous Multipoint Communications PCA Strapping Options

DATA COMMUNICATIONS CABLING

INTERFACE SIGNALS

The RS232 signals available on each of the communication interfaces are listed in table 7-9. This information can be used to verify interface capability or to fabricate special interface cables. Refer to "Fabricating Your Own Data Communications Cable" for additional cabling information.

LOGIC LEVELS

Table 7-10 gives the logic levels of signals used by the 13260 series data communications accessories.

CABLE TYPES

There are five cable types that are available for use in multipoint networks. These cables are described in table 7-11.

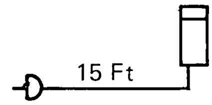
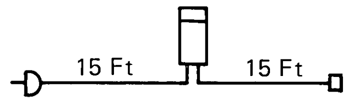
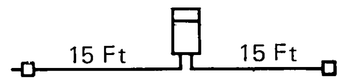
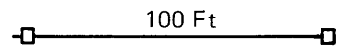
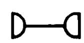
Table 7-9. EIA RS232C and CCITT V24 Interface Data and Control Signals

CONNECTOR					CIRCUIT			MODEM					
RS232	P2 13260				RS232	CCITT V24	DESCRIPTION			GND	DATA	CON-TROL	TIMING
	A	B	C	D				TO	FROM				
—	A	A	A	A	AA	—	Protective Ground			X			
7	H	H	H	H	AB	102	Signal Ground/Common Return			X			
2	B	B	B	B	BA	103	Transmitted Data	X			X		
3	C	C	C	C	BB	104	Received Data		X		X		
4	D	D	D	D	CA	105	Request to Send	X				X	
5	E	E	E	E	CB	106	Clear to Send		X			X	
6	F	F	F	F	CC	107	Data Set Ready		X			X	
20	P	P	P	P	CD	108.2	Data Terminal Ready	X				X	
22	—	—	14	14	CE	125	Ring Indicator		X			X	
8	J	J	J	J	CF	109	Received Line Signal Detector		X			X	
—	—	—	—	—	CG	110	Signal Quality Detector	X				X	
23	—	R	R	R	CH	111	Data Rate Selector (DTE Source)	X				X	
—	—	—	—	—	CI	112	Data Rate Selector (DCE Source)		X			X	
24	—	—	S	S	DA	113	Transmitter Timing (DTE Source)	X					X
15	—	—	—	12	DB	114	Transmitter Timing (DCE Source)		X				X
17	—	—	—	13	DD	115	Receiver Timing		X				X
—	—	—	—	—	SBB	118	Secondary Transmitted Data	X			X		
—	—	—	—	—	SBB	119	Secondary Received Data		X		X		
19	M	M	M	M	SCA	120	Secondary Request to Send	X				X	
—	—	—	—	—	SCB	121	Secondary Clear to Send		X			X	
12	N	N	N	N	SCF	122	Secondary Received Line Detector		X			X	

Table 7-10. Data Communications Signal Levels

DATA:		
Name	Space	Mark
Logic	0	1
Voltage	>+3V but <+25V	<−3V but >−25V
CONTROL:	ON (true)	OFF (false)
CLOCK SIGNALS:	0 = ground	1 = +5V

Table 7-11. Multipoint Data Communication Cables

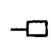
ACCESSORY NO.	DESCRIPTION	SYMBOL
13232N	Male RS232C Modem to terminal cable	
13232P	RS232 Modem to terminal plus multipoint	
13232Q	Multipoint terminal to terminal	
13232R	Multipoint extender	
13232T	Power Down protect (same symbol as Q)	
13232U	Modem Bypass	

where:

 = RS232 (Modem) connector (female)

 = Terminal hood connector

 = Multipoint connector (female)

— = Male connector i.e.,  or 

For example, to connect 3 terminals you could use the following configuration:

POINT-TO-POINT COMMUNICATIONS CABLING

Figures 7-21 through 7-23 show the cable connections and signals used by the 13260A/B/C/D and 13250A/B accessories.

MULTIPOINT COMMUNICATIONS CABLING

Figures 7-24 and 7-25 show the cable connections and signals used by the 13260C/D accessories in the multipoint configuration.

POWER DOWN PROTECT CABLING

Figure 7-26 and 7-27 show the cable configuration and effects of signal switching during power-down.

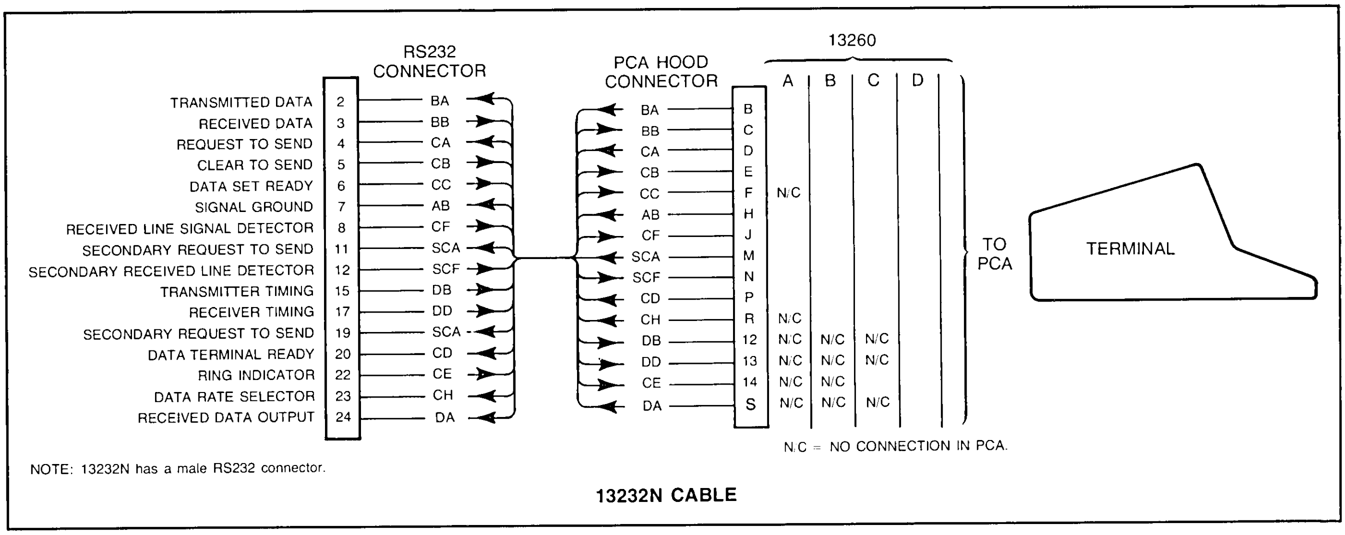


Figure 7-21. Point-to-Point Communications Cabling

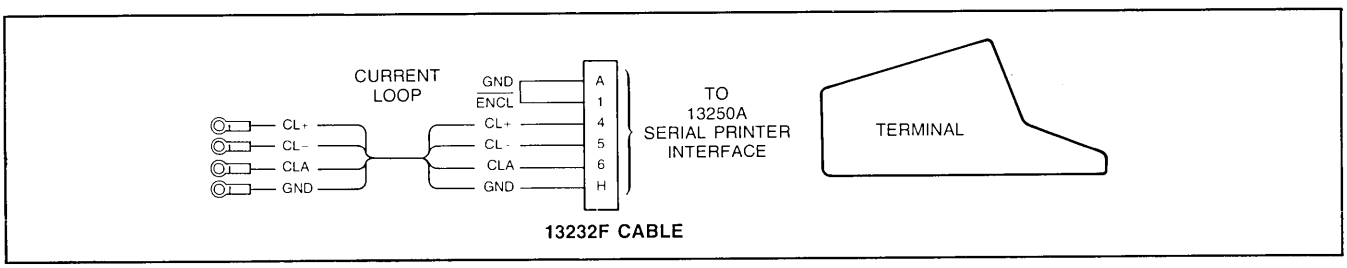


Figure 7-22. Current Loop Cabling

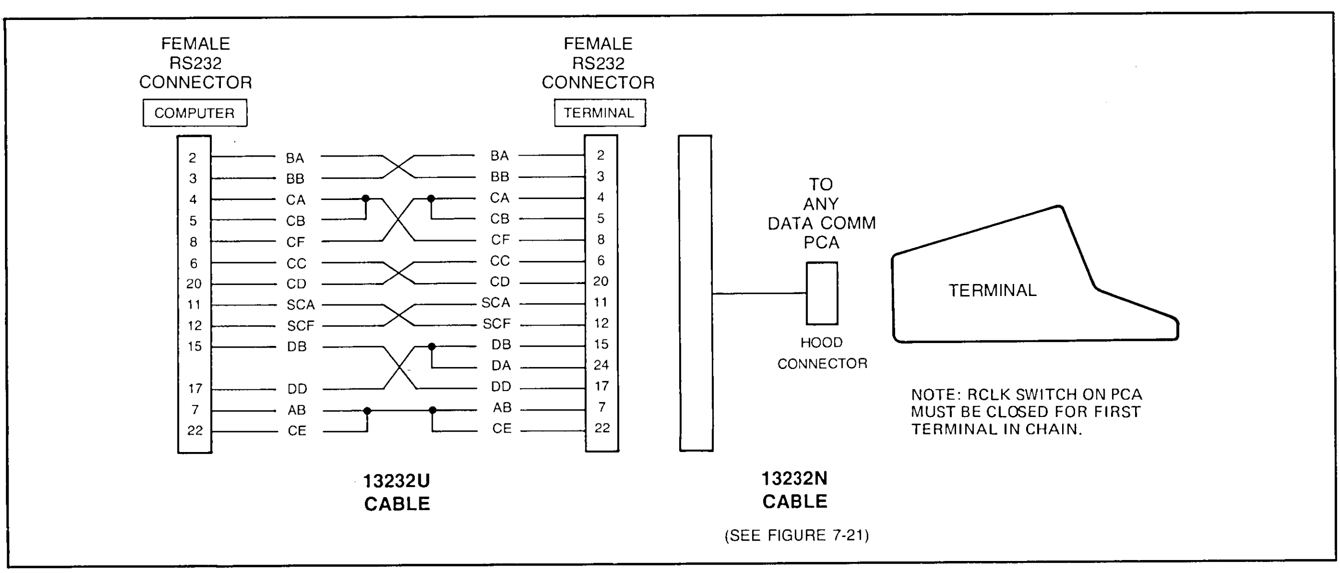


Figure 7-23. Modem By-Pass Cabling

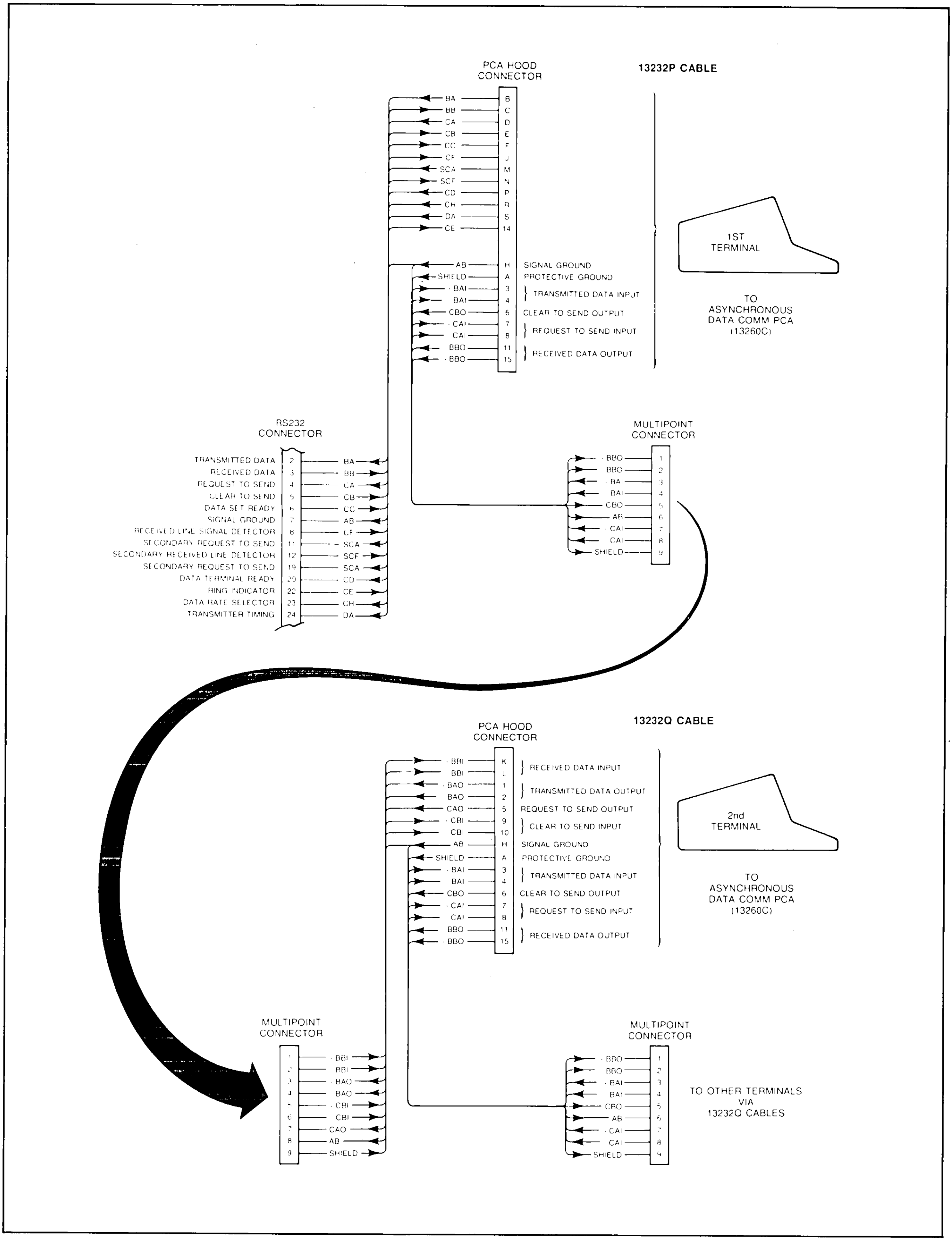


Figure 7-24. Asynchronous Multipoint Cabling

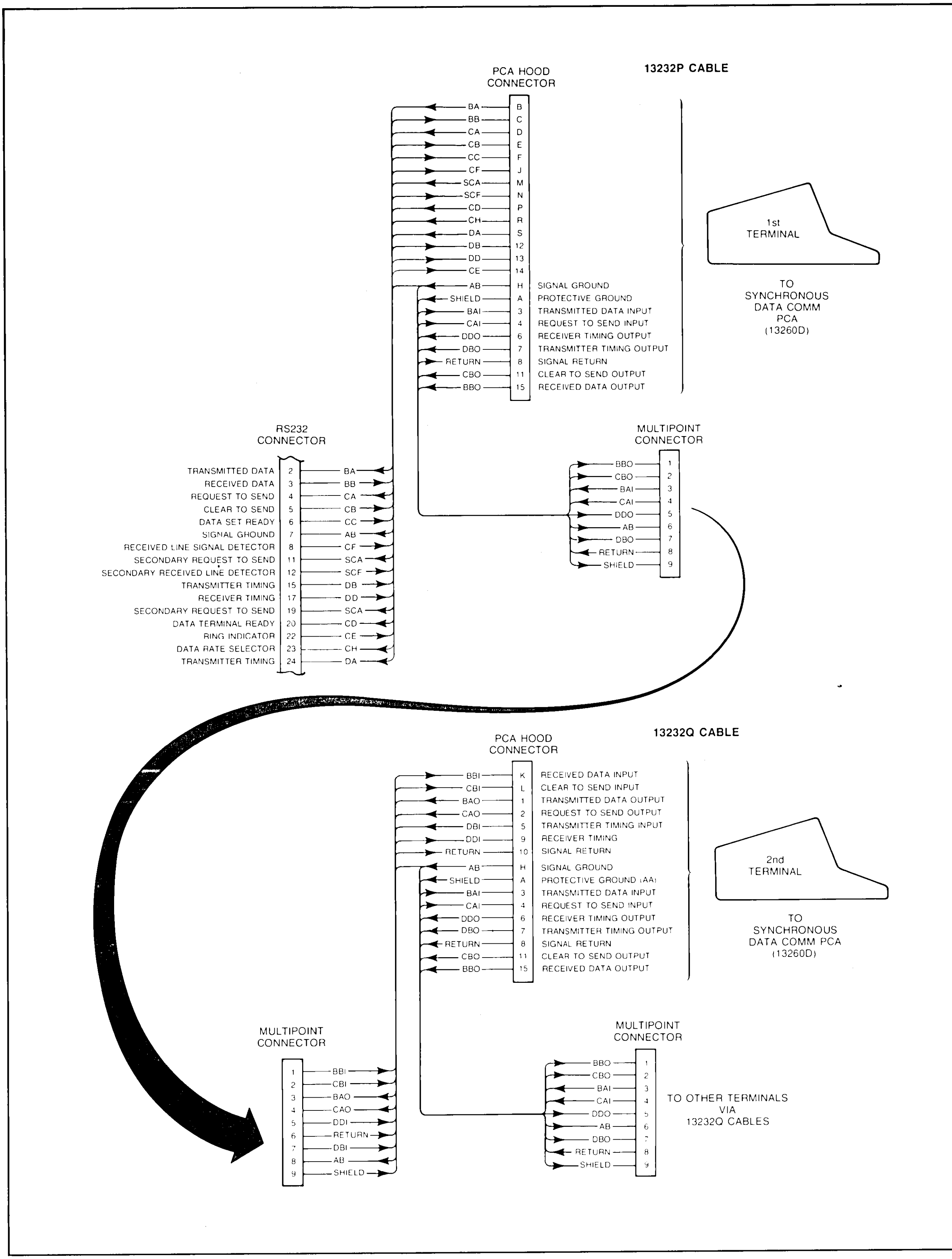


Figure 7-25. Synchronous Multipoint Cabling

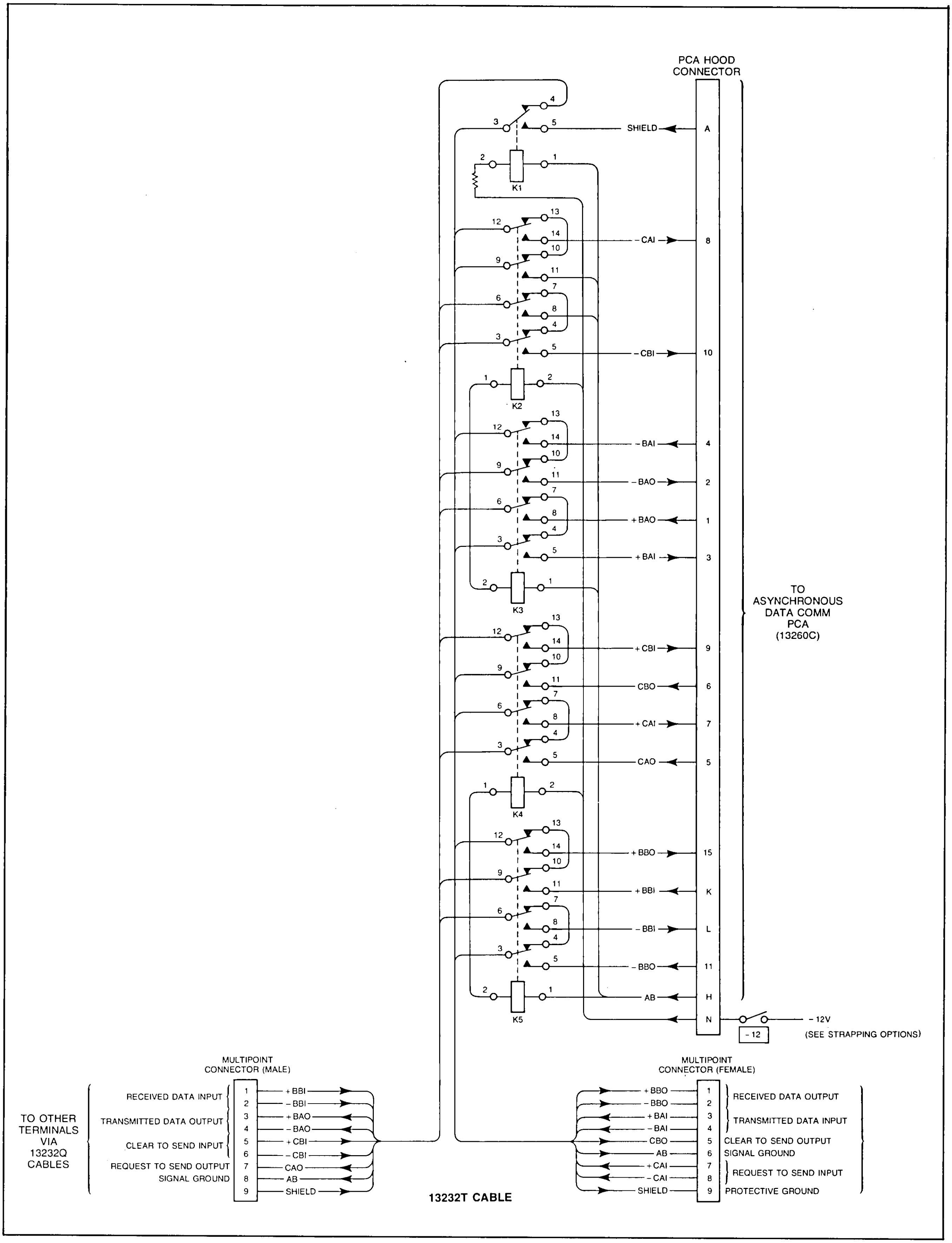


Figure 7-26. Power-Down-Protect Cabling for Asynchronous Multipoint Configuration

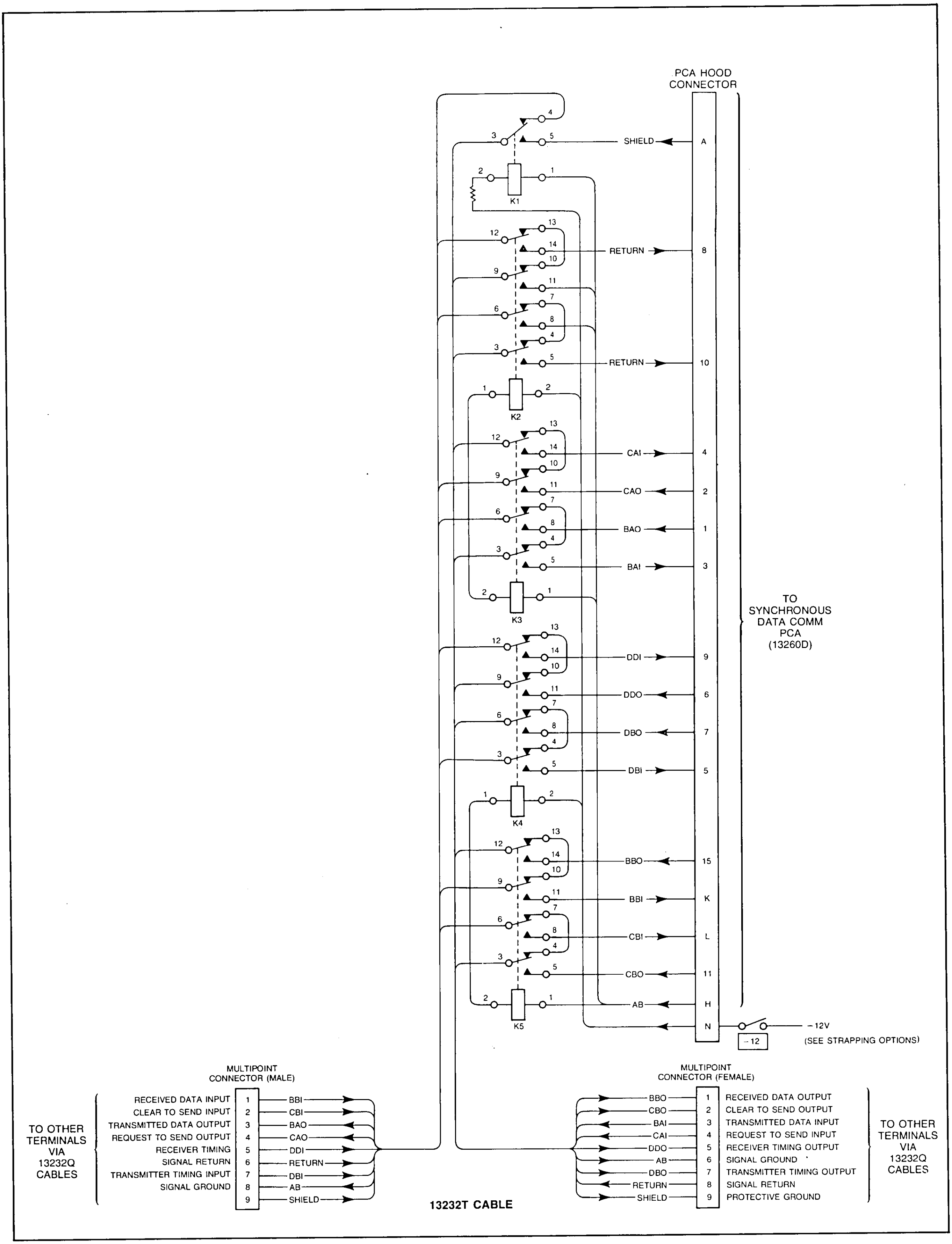


Figure 7-27. Power-Down-Protect Cabling for Synchronous Multipoint Configuration

FABRICATING YOUR OWN DATA COMMUNICATIONS CABLE

PCA hood connectors, RS232C connectors, multipoint connectors, and cables are available should you need to fabricate your own data communications cable. Part numbers of the items are given in table 7-12.

Figures 7-28 through 7-30 show the details of assembling each type of connector. Table 7-13 lists the interface signals on each of the data communications PCA's. Also, the illustrations of the HP cables (figures 7-21 through 7-27) may be used as a guide.

There are maximum length limitations on each type of cable. The following may be used as a guide for length considerations.

Maximum Distances:

Modem/Computer to first terminal: 50 feet (RS232-C standard)

Modem/Computer to terminal: 1000 feet (current loop on 13260B)

Terminal to terminal —
Note: Maximum total distance 16,000 feet.

Asynchronous (13260C) @ 300 to 9600 bits per second: up to 2000 feet between terminals with up to 32 terminals per line.

Synchronous (13260D) (2000 feet maximum between terminals):

Terminals/Line \ Bits/Sec.	2400	4800	9600
4	2000 ft	2000 ft	2000 ft
8	2000 ft	2000 ft	1200 ft
16	2000 ft	1200 ft	480 ft
32	1200 ft	480 ft	120 ft

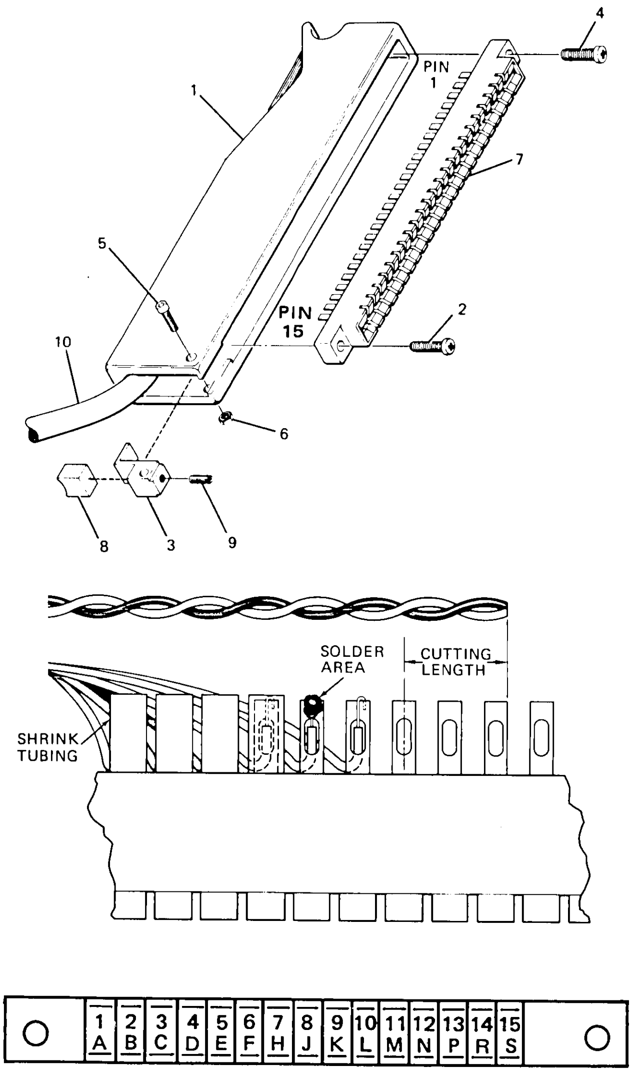
Table 7-12. Parts for Fabricating Your Custom Data Communications Cable

ITEM	HP PART NO.	ALTERNATE SOURCE	DESCRIPTION
RS232 Connector	5061-2405		(See figure 7-29.)
PCA Hood Connector	5061-1340		(See figure 7-28.)
Multipoint Connector	5061-2401		(See figure 7-30.)
PCA Hood to RS232 Connector Cable	8120-1903 or 8120-1930		26 AWG (or greater) Low Voltage Computer Cable.
Multipoint Cable	8120-2305	Brand Rex POSS4P22	22 AWG, 4 twisted pairs, overall shield, 75 ohm differential mode characteristic impedance.
Note: All connectors include contacts.			

Table 7-13. 13260 Series Data Communications PCA Signal Names

P2 PIN	SIGNAL NAMES			
	13260A	13260B	13260C	13260D
1	(no connection)	ENCL (see note)	+BAO	BAO
2	(no connection)	INI	−BAO	CAO
3	(no connection)	CL+12	+BAI	BAI
4	(no connection)	CL+ (see note)	−BAI	CAI
5	(no connection)	CL− (see note)	CAO	DBI
6	(no connection)	CLA (see note)	CBO	DDO
7	(no connection)	CLP	+CAI	DBO
8	(no connection)	INO	−CAI	RET-D
9	(no connection)	PON	+CBI	DDI
10	(no connection)	ISB	−CBI	RET-U
11	(no connection)	XECL	−BBO	CBO
12	(no connection)	TTY IN	(no connection)	DB
13	(no connection)	+5V	(no connection)	DB
14	(no connection)	CE	CE	CE
15	TEST	TEST	+BBO	BBO
A	AB	GND	AA	AA
B	BA	BA	BA	BA
C	BB	BB	BB	BB
D	CA	CA	CA	CA
E	CB	CB	CB	CB
F	(no connection)	CC	CC	CC
H	AB	AB (see note)	AB (GND)	AB (GND)
J	CF	CF	CF	CF
K	X8OUT	X8OUT	+BBI	BBI
L	X16OUT	X16OUT	−BBI	CBI
M	SCA	SCA	SCA	SCA
N	SCF	SCF	SCF	SCF
P	CD	CD	CD	CD
R	(no connection)	CH	CH	CH
S	X16IN	X16IN	(no connection)	DA

NOTE: Used in current loop mode.



VIEWED FROM SOLDER SIDE

Assembly Procedure:

1. ( ) Insert approximately 10 inches of cable (item 10) into the connector hood (item 1).

2. ( ) Strip the outer jacket of the cable back 5 inches.

3. ( ) Remove approximately 1/4-inch of insulation from each signal wire.

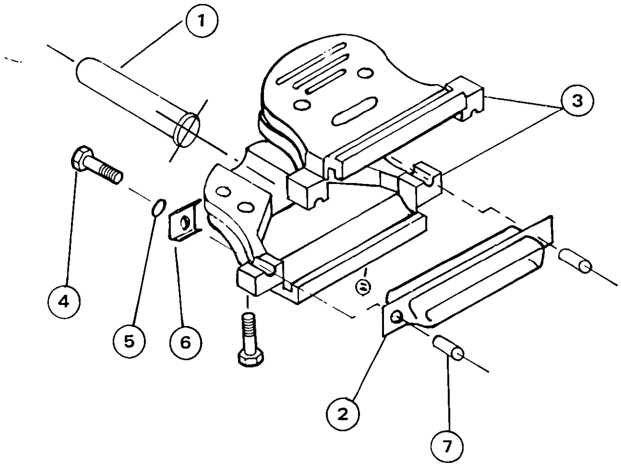
4. ( ) Starting at the end of the 30-pin connector (item 7) nearest pins S and 15, solder the signal wires to the appropriate pins on the connector, and insulate each pin with tubing as shown at left.

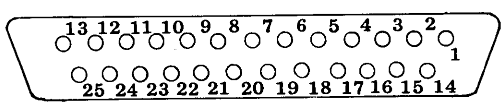
5. ( ) Install the 30-pin connector in the connector hood using the two self-tapping screws (items 2 and 4).

6. ( ) Install the cable clamp (items 3 and 8), and tighten it in place with the screw and nut (items 5 and 6).

7. ( ) Tighten the cable clamp on the cable with the setscrew (item 9).

Figure 7-28. Assembling the PCA Hood Connector





VIEWED FROM SOLDER SIDE

Assembly Procedure:

1. ( ) Slide rubber bushing (item 1) over end of cable, leaving about 6 inches of cable end exposed for wire stripping, etc.

2. ( ) Strip back the cable jacket 1-inch.

3. ( ) Clip the unused conductor wires to the edge of the cable jacket.

4. ( ) Remove 1/4-inch of insulation from the ends of the conductor wires to be used.

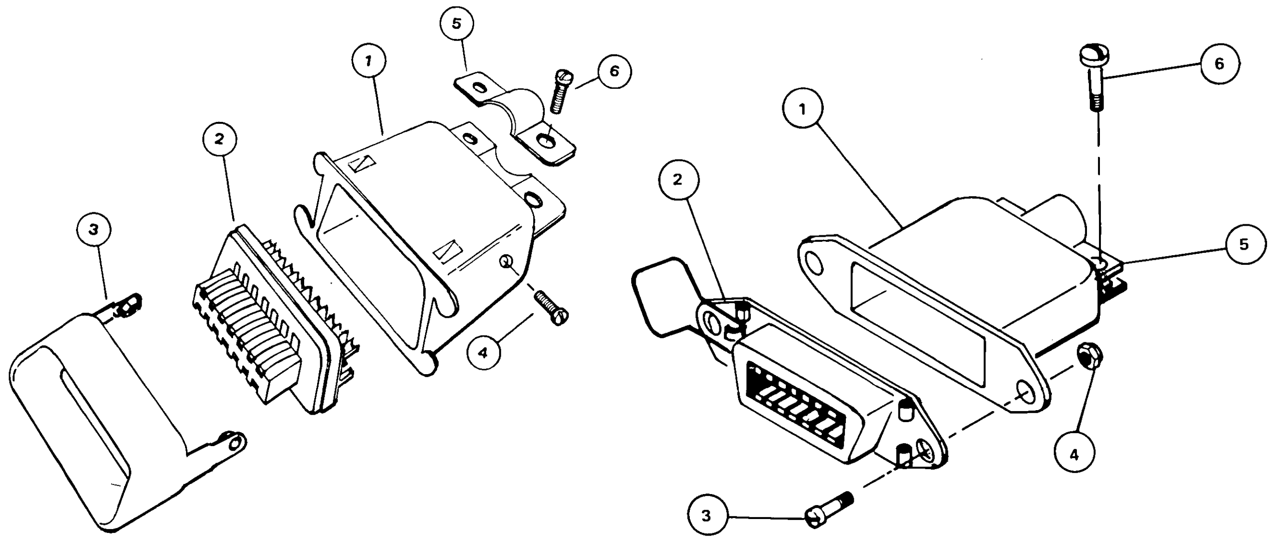
5. ( ) Solder the conductor wires onto the contacts of the contact assembly (item 2). (Select either the male or female contact assembly provided for your particular application.)

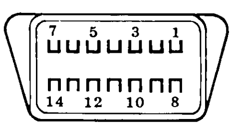
6. ( ) Slide the rubber bushing to the end of the cable such that the rubber bushing flange is flush with the stripped end of the cable jacket.

7. ( ) Assemble the two halves of the connector (item 3) onto the contact assembly (item 2). (Use the screws and nuts provided.)

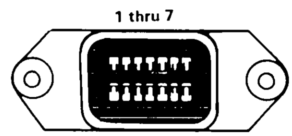
8. ( ) Mount the two screws, threaded spacers, and other hardware (items 4 thru 7) onto the contact assembly.

Figure 7-29. Assembling the RS232C Connector



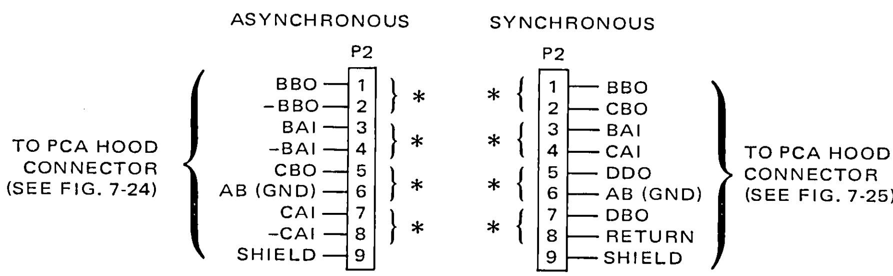


MULTIPOINT CONNECTOR P2
(VIEWED FROM SOLDER SIDE)



FEMALE
MULTIPOINT CONNECTOR
(VIEWED FROM SOLDER SIDE)

MULTIPOINT CONNECTOR CABLING



* TWISTED PAIR

Assembly Procedure:

1. ( ) Insert cable through the outer housing (item 1).

2. ( ) Strip back the cable jacket 1-inch.

3. ( ) Clip any unused conductor wires to the edge of the cable jacket.

4. ( ) Remove 1/4-inch of insulation from the ends of the conductor wires to be used.

5. ( ) Solder the conductor wires onto the contacts of the contact assembly (item 2).

6. ( ) Assemble the multipoint connector by sliding the inner housing (item 3) over the contact assembly (item 2). Slide the outer housing over items 2 and 3 until the screw holes are aligned. Secure the entire assembly with the two screws (item 4).

7. ( ) Mount the cable clamp (item 5), and secure with the two screws (item 6).

Figure 7-30. Assembling the Multipoint Connector

SELF-TEST

The terminal tests itself. Should you suspect a malfunction while operating the terminal, you can perform the SELF-TEST function to checkout the terminal. Also, after installing any accessory, the terminal's self-test function should be performed to insure that the terminal is functioning properly. There are three types of self-test, each testing a specific function of the terminal.

BASIC SELF-TEST

Pressing TAPE TEST, checks out the terminal, except for the cartridge tape units (if installed) and the data communications. The following is performed when the TAPE TEST key is pressed (also see the flowchart in figure 7-32):

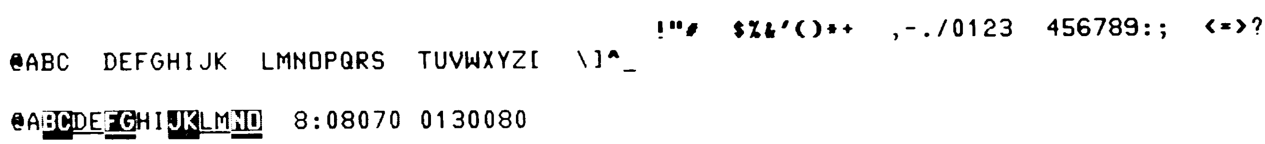
- The light-emitting diodes (indicators) on the keyboard are turned on briefly as an indication that the power supply and microprocessor board are functioning.
- A checksum test is done on the read-only memory (ROM). This verifies that the firmware is working properly. An error here causes a ROM ERROR message to be displayed. (See flowchart, figure 7-32.)
- A checkerboard test is performed on the random access memory. An error here causes a RAM ERROR message to be displayed. (See flowchart, figure 7-32.)
- The bell is beeped indicating success up to this point.
- The entire character set contained in the terminal is displayed.
- A line of characters, @ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO, is displayed. If the Display Enhancement option is installed, then Underline, Half-Bright, and Blinking will be displayed with Inverse Video in all of the possible Display Enhancement combinations by this line of characters.
- The 14 bytes of status information are displayed. (See Section VI "Status" for an explanation of the status bytes.)

Generally, if the terminal beeps and the display shows a pattern similar to those shown in figure 7-31 then the terminal is functioning properly (only those character sets actually present in the terminal will be displayed in the test pattern and consequently the actual test pattern displayed will be dependent on which features are present in each terminal).

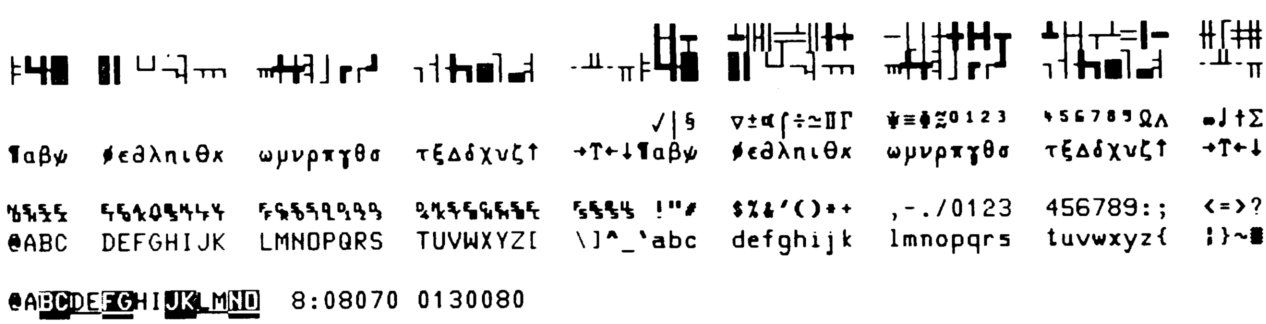
RESET TERMINAL must be pressed to resume operation if any error occurred. However, the station's operation will not be reliable if the Self-Test failed.

NOTE

> The test pattern cannot be recorded because of imbedded Record Separators (RS).



A. Test Pattern for the standard terminal.



B. Test Pattern for terminals containing Display Enhancements, 128 Roman Character Set, Math Symbol Set, and Line Drawing Set.

Figure 7-31. Basic Self-Test Patterns (HP 2645A)

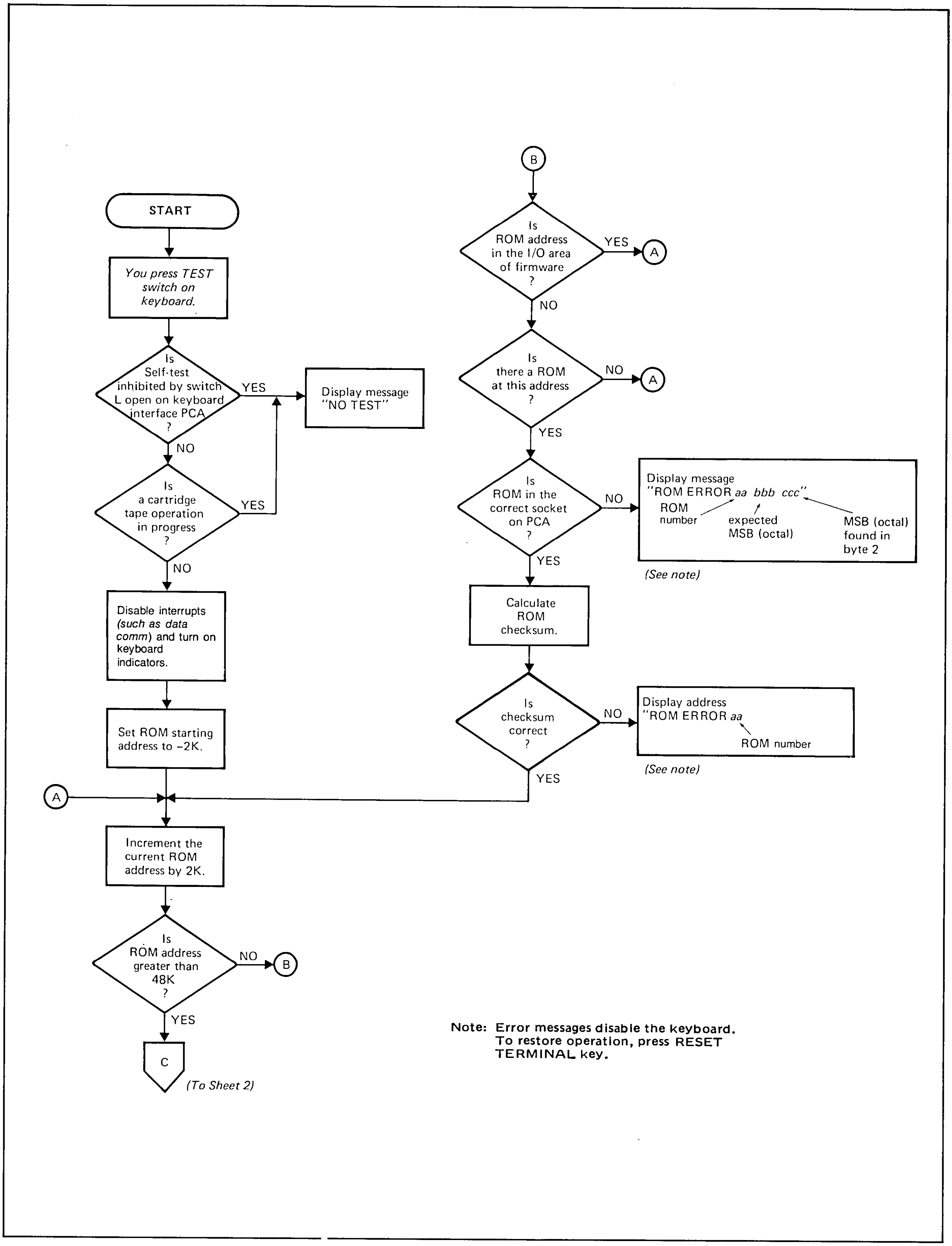


Figure 7-32. Basic Terminal Self-Test Flowchart (Sheet 1 of 3)

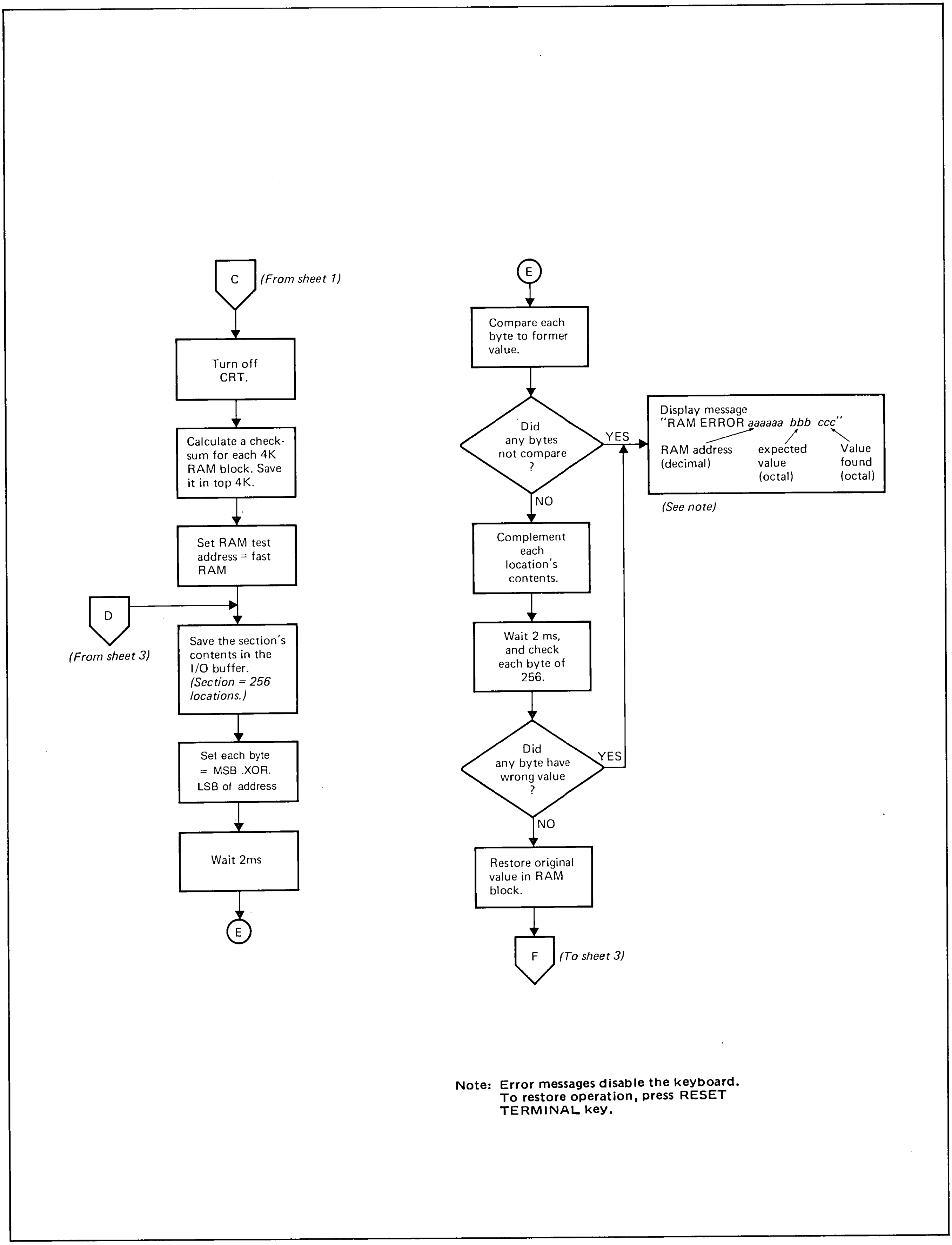


Figure 7-32. Basic Terminal Self-Test Flowchart (Sheet 2 of 3)

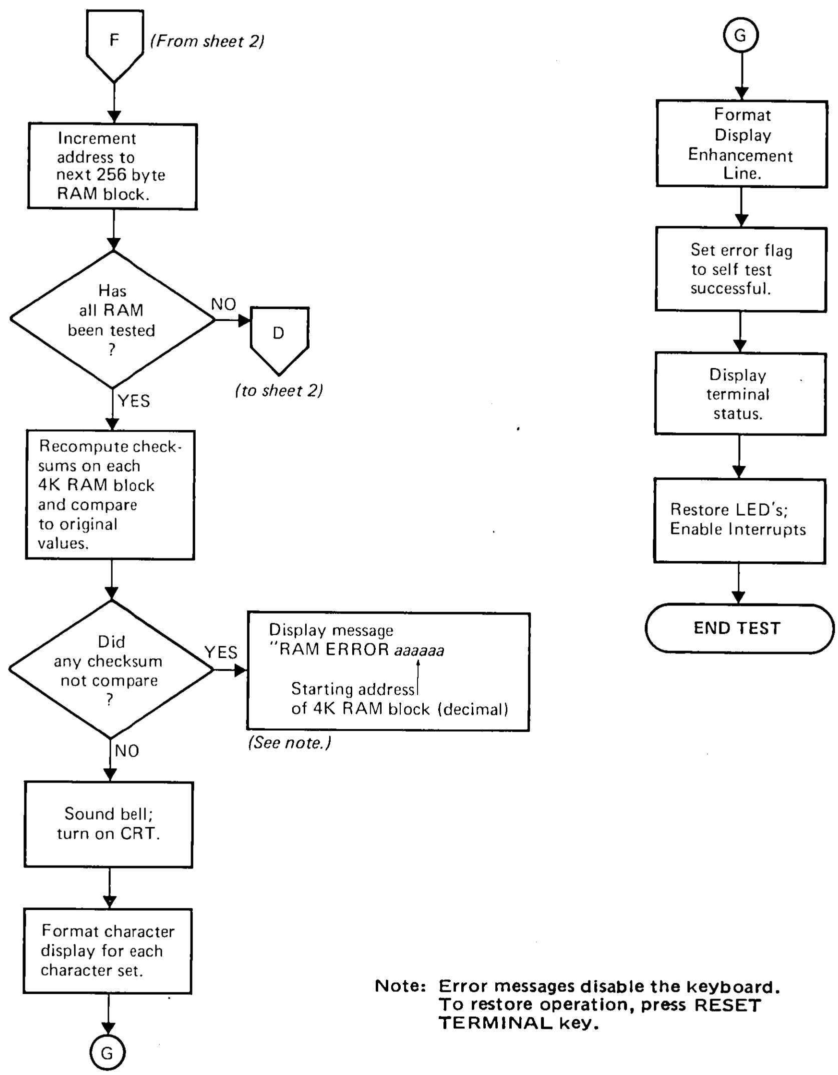


Figure 7-32. Basic Terminal Self-Test Flowchart (Sheet 3 of 3)

CARTRIDGE TAPE UNIT SELF-TEST

CAUTION

The following self-test is performed with two unprotected tape cartridges. Make sure that any data on these tapes need not be saved.

FROM THE KEYBOARD. The following is performed when the (green) key is pressed then the TAPE TEST key is pressed:

- A test is performed on the left tape unit:
  - — A worst case data pattern ("%Z" repeated 128 times to form a 256 character record) is recorded on the tape cartridge.
  - — The tape is backspaced over the record to the beginning of the test pattern.
  - — The test pattern is read and verified.
  - — A file mark is recorded.
- Two basic self-tests are performed as described previously.
- A test is performed on the right tape unit (same as the left tape unit).
- Another basic self-test is performed.

If a fault is detected during the tape transport test, the eject button will be lit on the transport being tested, the test will not proceed any further, and one of the error messages shown below will be displayed.

```
NO TAPE, RUNOFF, DATA PROTECTED, FAIL
WRITE FAIL, STALL, or END OF TAPE
```

These messages are explained in the *2641A/2645A/S User's Manual.*

If a hardware failure has occurred during the self-test, the reliability of the station cannot be assured. If any error occurred, press RESET TERMINAL to restore normal operation. Try replacing the tape cartridge and running the self-test again to make sure that the error is a hardware malfunction. Servicing procedures are contained in the *Service Manual.*

You may verify that the tapes you record may be used by other terminals as follows:

- Perform the tape transport test.
- Rewind the tapes.
- Exchange tape between the left and right transports.
- Read each tape, and check that a line of "%Z" appears on the screen. If this does not happen, a hardware malfunction may exist in one of the transports.

FROM COMPUTER. The tape transports may be tested from your program by coding:

ESC & p 1u 7C (for the left tape transport)
ESC & p 2u 7C (for the right tape transport)

After the test is performed, the terminal will respond with an "S" CR(LF) if the test was successful or an "F" CR(LF) if the test failed. The status of the tested tape unit may be interrogated to determine the reason for the failure. (See Section VI, "Status".)

DATA COMMUNICATIONS SELF-TEST

This self-test checks the data communications PCA (13260A, B, C or D) and the associated network cabling. Test connectors are used with the self-test function to provide signal loop-back while the internal diagnostic is being run. A description of the test connectors is provided in table 7-14. To run the self-test, follow the instructions in table 7-15 or 7-16, whichever is applicable. Flowcharts of the self-test are contained in figures 7-33 and 7-34.

Table 7-14. Data Communications Self-Test Connectors

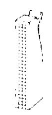
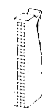
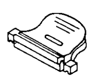
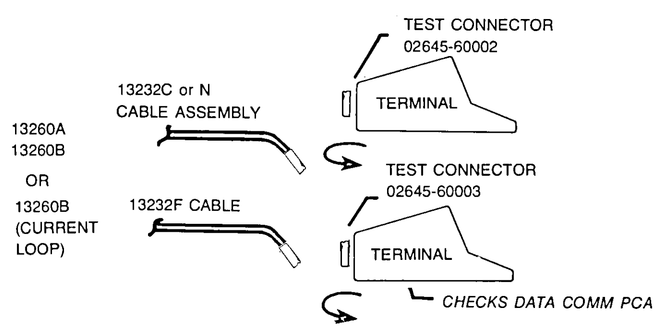
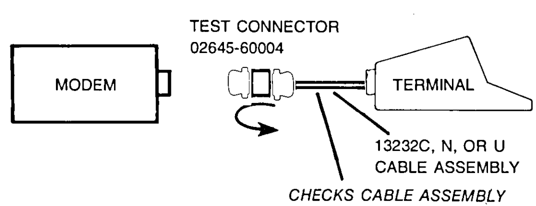
SELF-TEST CONNECTORS	HP PART NO.	USED FOR
	02645-60002	Checks RS232 circuits on 13260A, B, C, D accessory PCA's. (Does not check multipoint circuits on PCA; use 02645-60004 test connector below.)
	02645-60003	Checks current loop circuits on 13260B accessory PCA.
	02645-60004	Provides loop-back of RS232 signals at RS232 connector end of cable. Used during self-test of multipoint configurations.

Table 7-15. Point-to-Point Data Communications Self-Test Procedure

STEP 1. a. Ensure power is off, and disconnect cable data communications PCA. b. Connect PCA Test Connector, part no. 02645-60002, to data communications PCA. c. Turn on power, set the terminal to REMOTE, and press [GREEN], [ENTER] (see note). d. Refer to data comm self-test flowcharts for diagnosing possible error messages. e. If operating in current loop, turn power off and use test connector part no. 02645-60003 to connect to the 13260B Data Communications PCA. Turn on power, and type characters on the keyboard. The characters should be echoed back (two characters displayed if the terminal is set for Half Duplex). This verifies proper operation of current loop send and receive circuits.	
STEP 2. a. Turn off power, and connect 13232C or N Cable Assembly to 13260A, B, C, or D data communications PCA. (If operating in current loop, connect 13232F cable to 13260B data communications PCA.) b. Connect RS232 Test Connector, part no. 02645-60004, to RS232 connector on 13232C or N cable. c. Turn on power, set the terminal to REMOTE and press [GREEN], [ENTER] (see note). d. Refer to data comm self-test flowcharts for diagnosing possible error messages.	

NOTE: For terminals without cartridge tapes, use ESC x to perform data comm self-test.

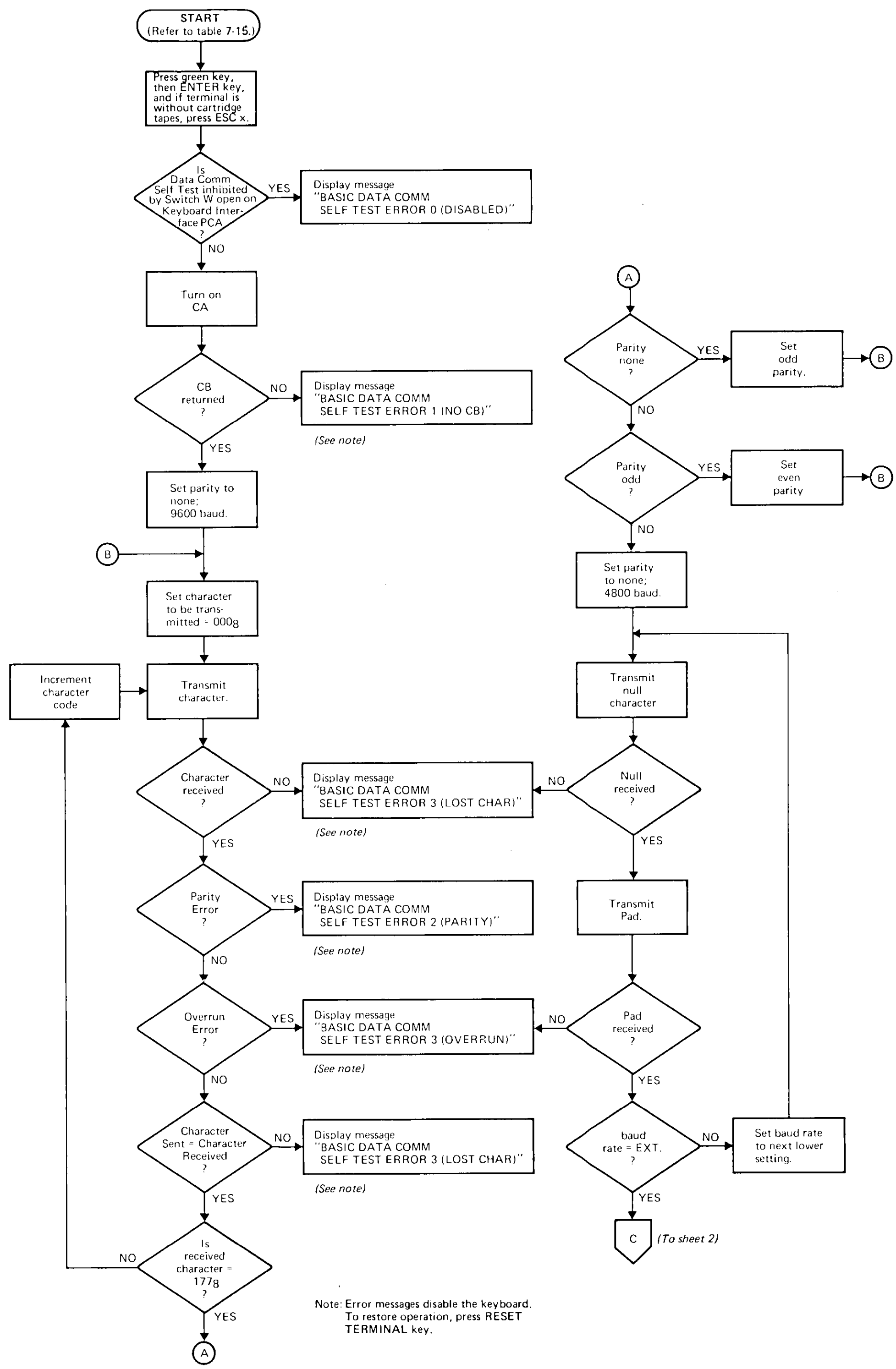


Figure 7-33. Basic Data Comm Self-Test Flowchart (Sheet 1 of 2)

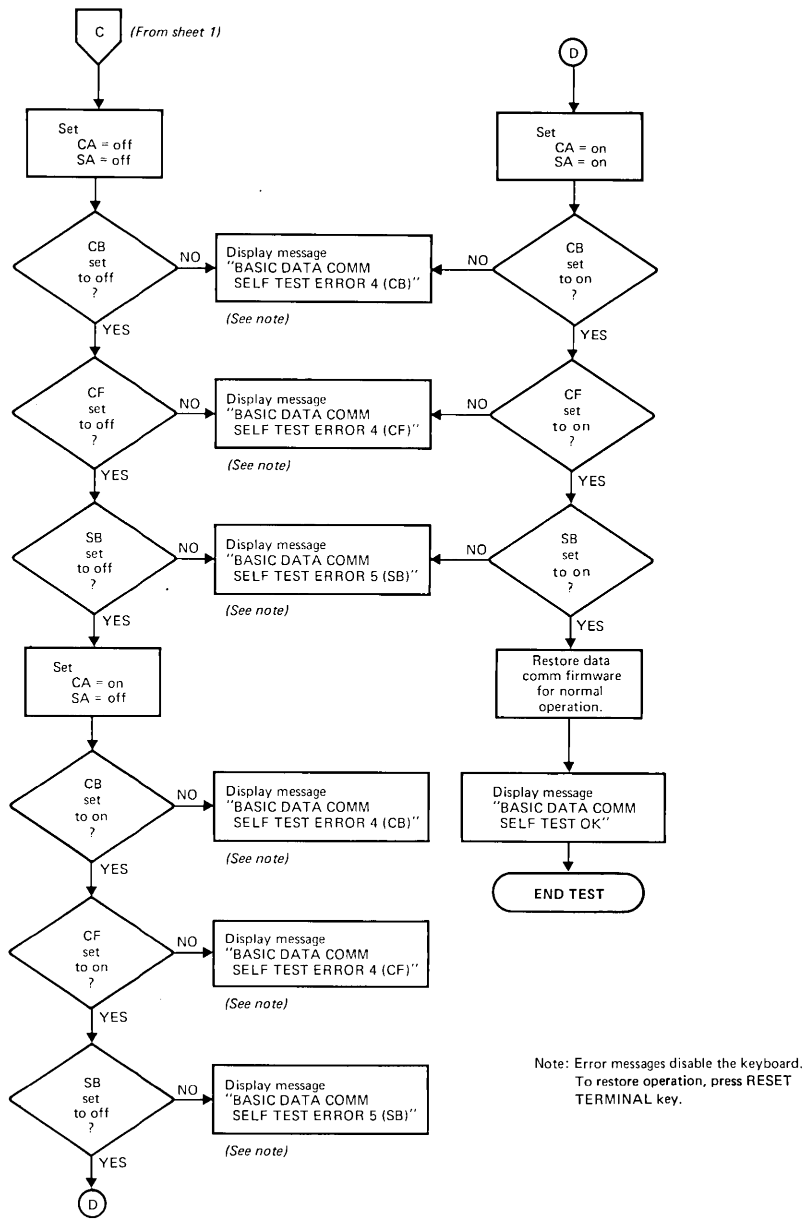


Figure 7-33. Basic Data Comm Self-Test Flow chart (Sheet 2 of 2)

Table 7-16. Multipoint Data Communications Self-Test Procedure

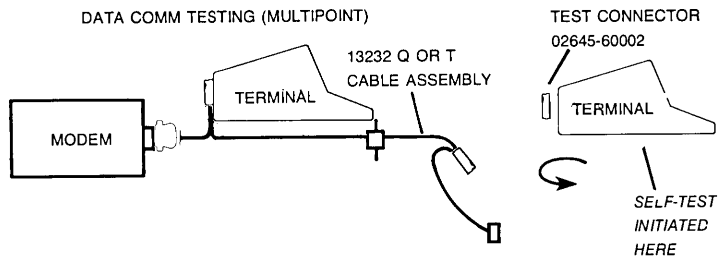
STEP 1.

a. Ensure power is off, and disconnect cable from 13260C or D communications PCA.

b. Connect PCA Test Connector, part no. 02645-60002, to 13260C or D data communications PCA.

c. Turn on power, and press GREEN, ENTER (see note).

d. Refer to multipoint data comm self-test flowchart for diagnosing possible error messages.



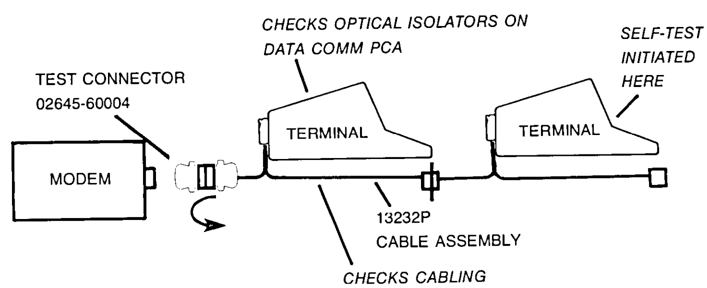
STEP 2.

a. Turn off power, and reconnect cable to 13260C or D data communications PCA.

b. Connect RS232 Test Connector, part no. 02645-60004, to RS232 connector on 13232P cable.

c. Turn on power, and press GREEN, ENTER (see note).

d. Refer to multipoint data comm self-test flowchart for diagnosing possible error messages.



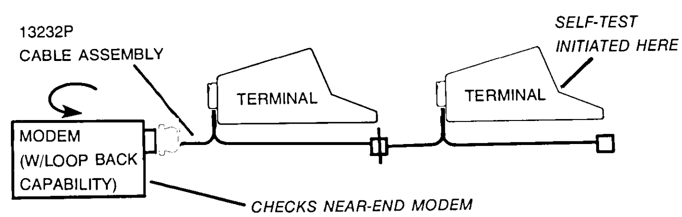
STEP 3.

a. Turn off power, and connect 13232P cable to modem.

b. Switch modem to loop-back mode (if possible).

c. Turn on power, and press GREEN, ENTER (see note).

d. If self-test did not pass, the modem may be malfunctioning. Refer to multipoint data comm self-test flowchart for diagnosing possible error messages.



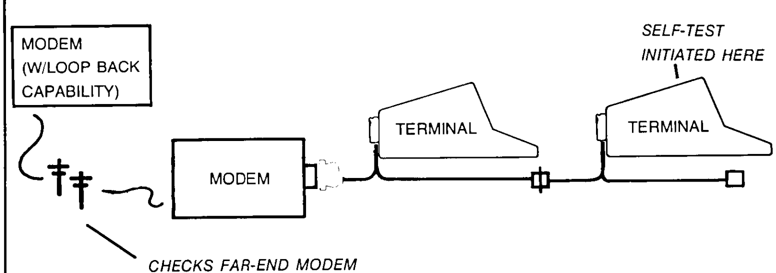
STEP 4.

a. Switch modem back to normal operation.

b. Switch far-end modem to loop-back mode (if possible).

c. Turn on power, and press GREEN, ENTER (see note).

d. If self-test did not pass, the modem may be malfunctioning. Refer to multipoint data comm self-test flowchart for diagnosing possible error messages.



NOTE: For terminals without cartridge tapes, use ESC x to perform data comm self-test.

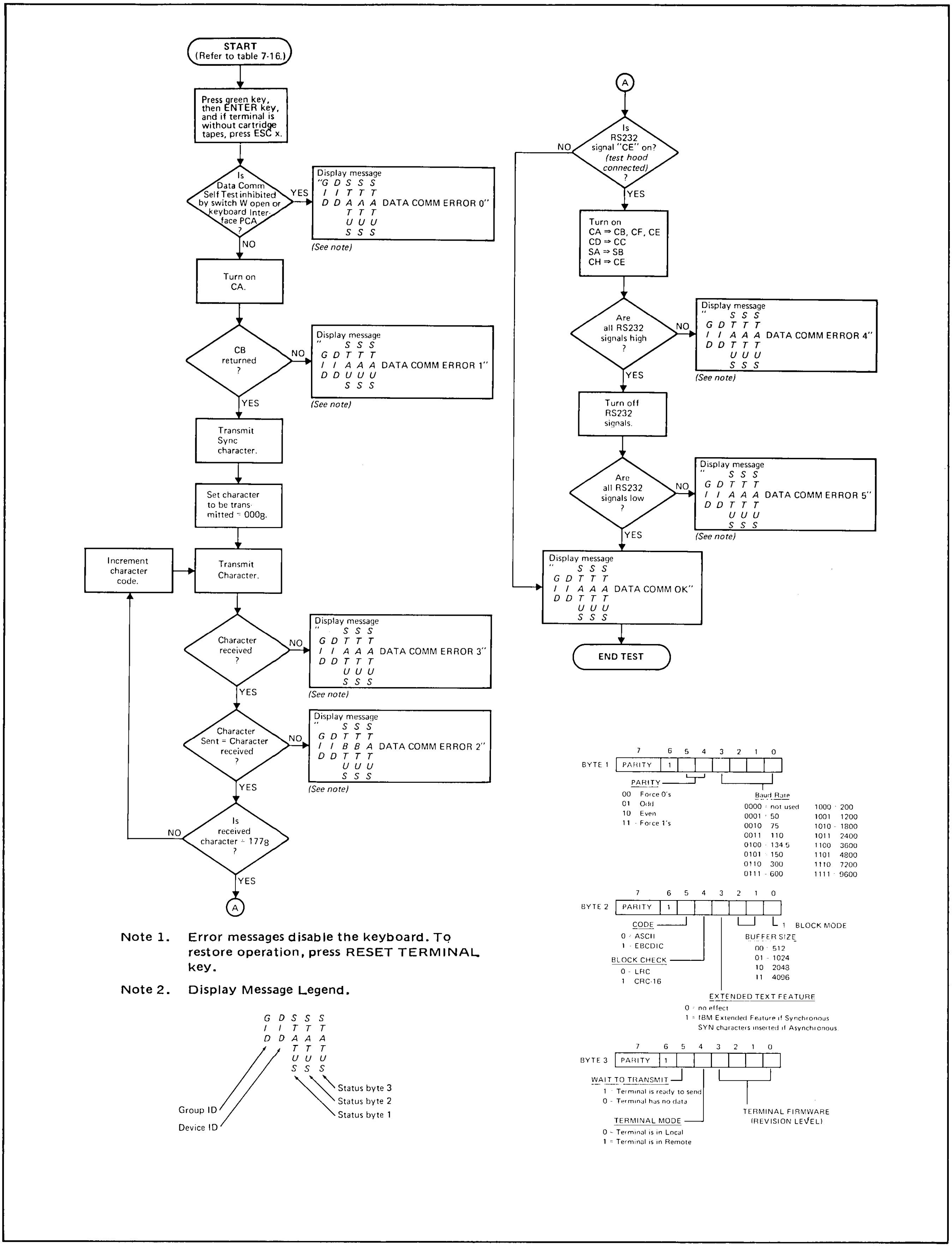


Figure 7-34. Multipoint Data Comm Self-Test Flowchart

HP 2641A DISPLAY STATION DIFFERENCES

Installation procedures for the HP 2645A are followed when installing the HP 2641A. However, the differences are described as follows:

a. The HP 13231A Display Enhancement is standard. However, only one alternate set can be installed at a time.

b. Figure 7-35 shows the jumper and ROM socket locations for the Display Enhancement PCA.

c. The second Control Memory PCA jumper and ROM socket configuration is shown in figure 7-36.

d. Figure 7-37 shows the HP 13261A Device Support Firmware IC locations on the Control Memory PCA. Perform the procedure for "13261A Device Support Firmware," except use ROM IC 1818-0274 instead of 1818-0211.

e. Additional strapping options for the Keyboard Interface PCA point-to-point and multipoint operation are given below.

f. Basic self-test patterns for the HP 2641A are given in figure 7-38.

STRAP	STRAPPING OPTION	NORMAL OPERATION (SWITCH CLOSED)	OPERATION WITH STRAPPING OPTION (SWITCH OPEN)
P	APL Printer Pairing Code	Makes terminal compatible with APL Printers with bit-pairing codes.	Makes terminal compatible with APL Printers with typewriter-pairing codes.

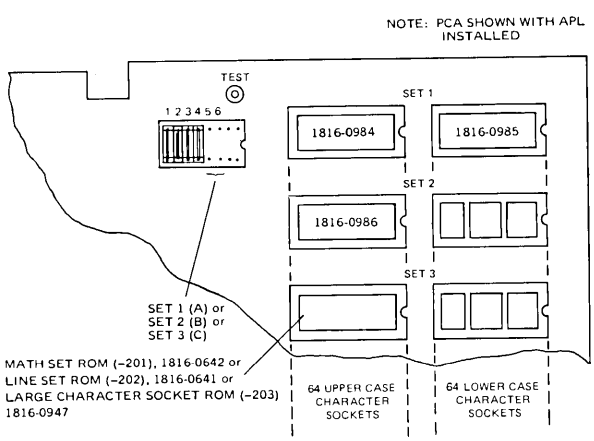
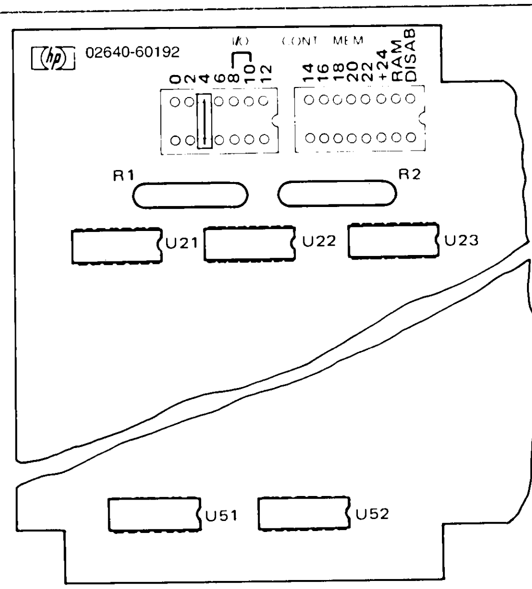


Figure 7-35. Display Enhancement PCA Jumper and ROM Socket Locations (HP 2641A)



Note: All jumpers except 4 should be removed regardless of memory configuration.

Figure 7-36. Second Control Memory PCA Jumper Configurations (HP 2641A)

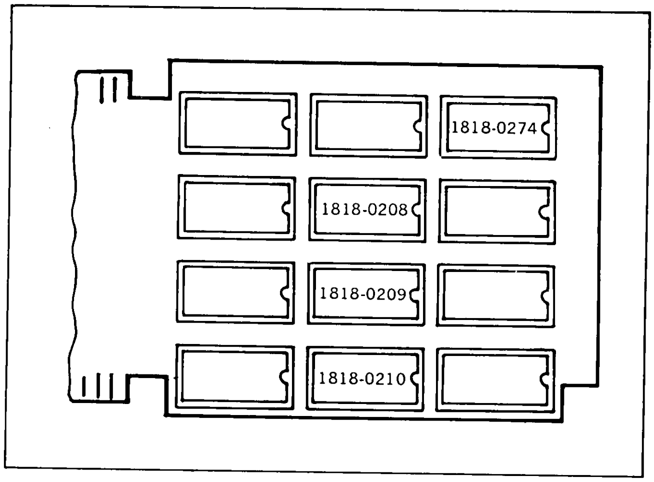
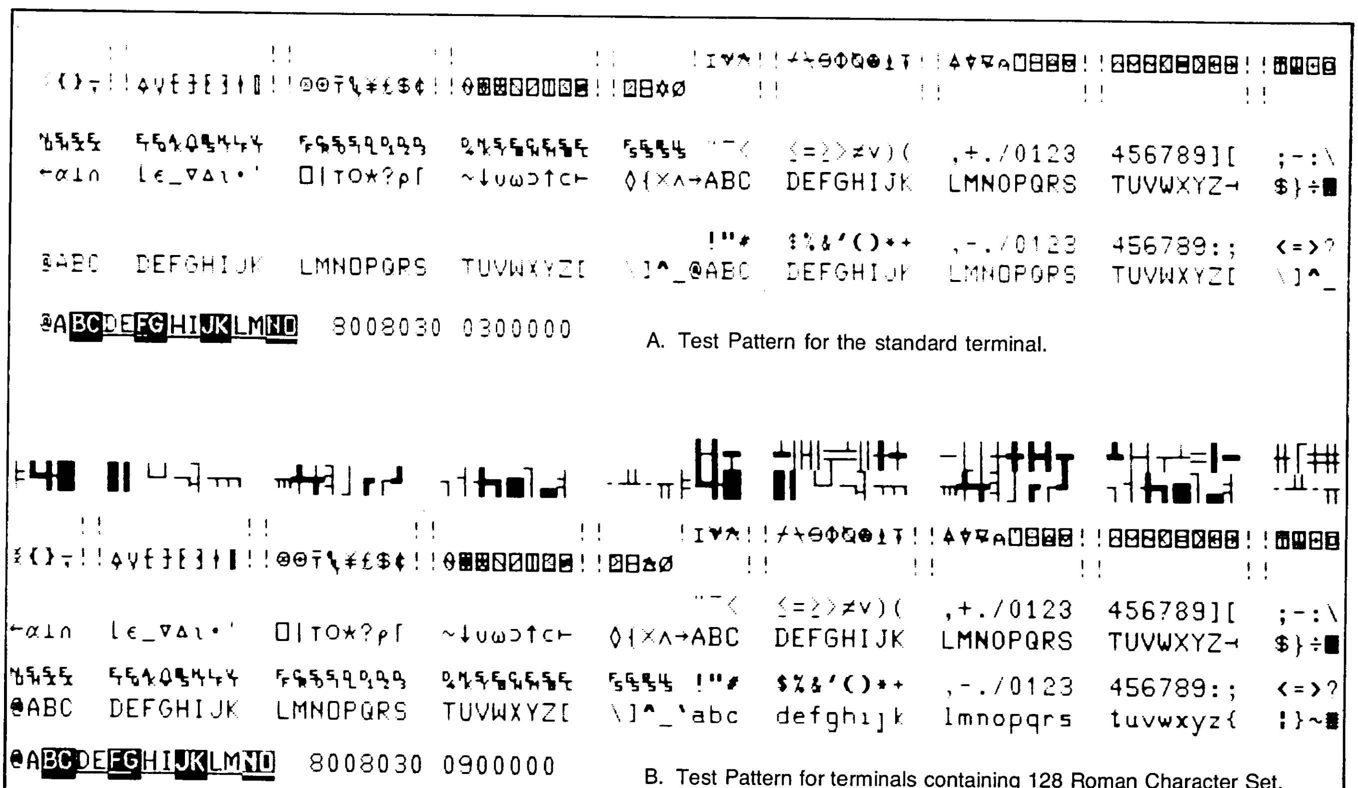


Figure 7-37. 13261A Device Support Firmware IC Locations on Control Memory PCA (HP 2641A)



A. Test Pattern for the standard terminal.

B. Test Pattern for terminals containing 128 Roman Character Set, and Line Drawing Set.

Figure 7-38. Basic Self-Test Patterns (HP 2641A)

HP 2645S/N DISPLAY STATION DIFFERENCES

Installation procedures for the HP 2645A are followed when installing the HP 2645S/N. However, the differences are described as follows:

a. To upgrade the standard 64 character set to 128 characters, use ROM IC, part no. 1816-0865 for HP 2645S and ROM IC, part no. 1816-0867 for HP 2645N, and refer to paragraph "64 Character Lower Case ROM" for installation procedures.

b. Basic self-test patterns for the HP 2645S and HP 2645N are given in figures 7-39 and 7-40, respectively.

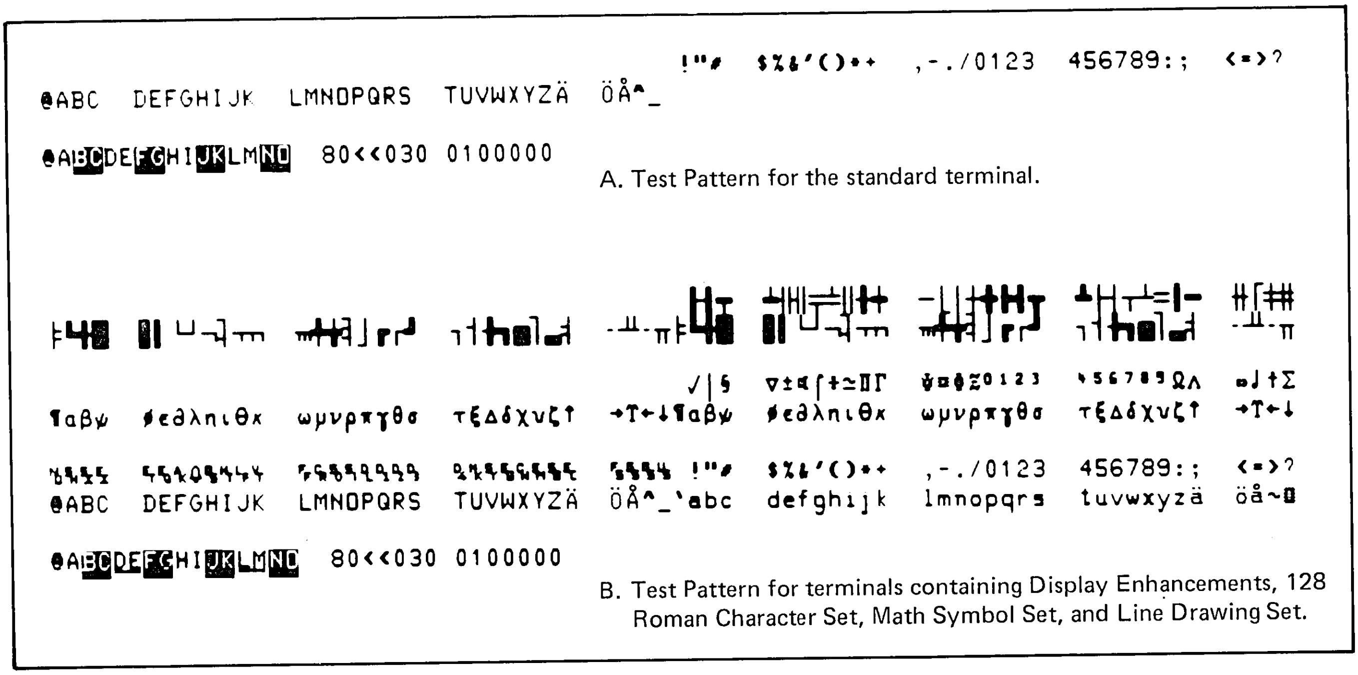


Figure 7-39. Basic Self-Test Patterns (HP 2645S)

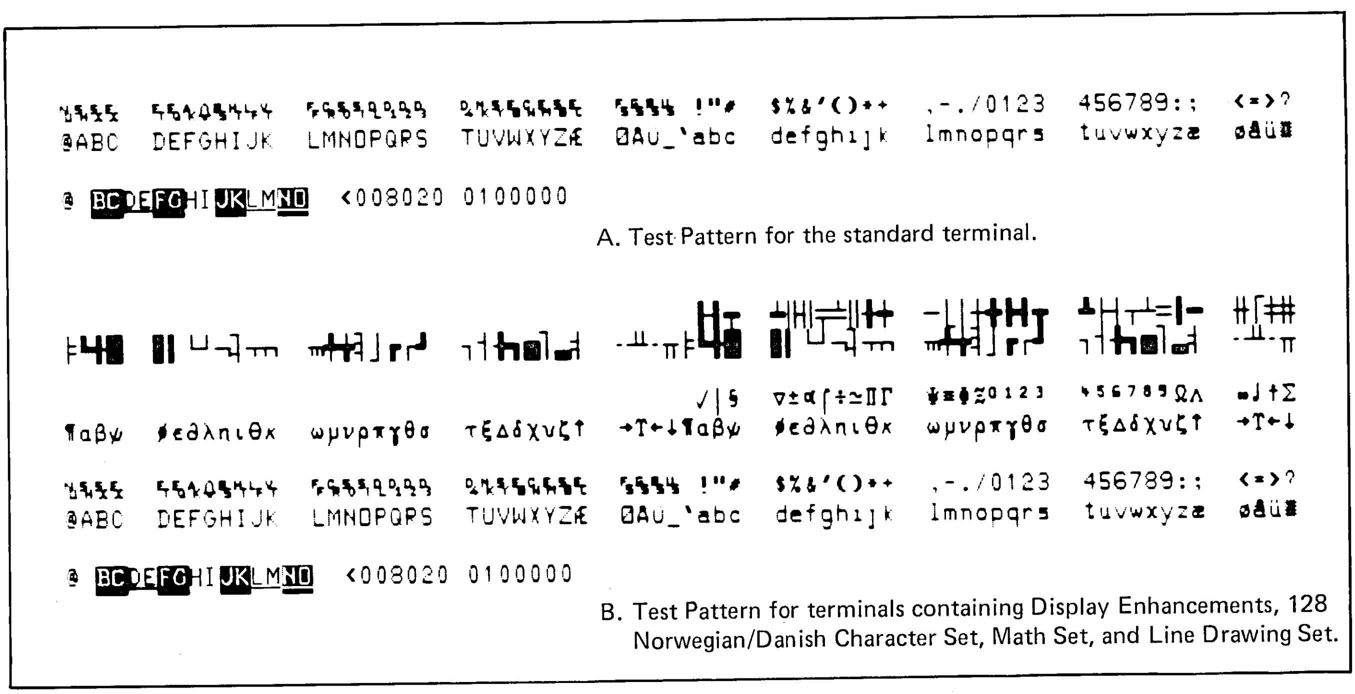


Figure 7-40. Basic Self-Test Patterns (HP 2645N)

APPLICATIONS

APPENDIX A

INTRODUCTION

This appendix contains sample applications using the terminal's unique features. They can be used as a guide in developing your own applications.

MULTIPOINT EXAMPLE

Suppose we have a group of terminals set up in a synchronous multipoint configuration. We wish to determine status of the left cartridge of the terminal with group ID D and device ID A.

We wish to send the printer status query escape sequence to terminal DA. In multipoint, this requires selecting that terminal first. Send the select sequence

S	S	S	E	P	S	S	S	S			E	P
Y	Y	Y	O	A	Y	Y	Y	Y			N	A
N	N	N	T	D	N	N	N	N	$\underbrace{d\ d}$	$\underbrace{A\ A}$	Q	D
									Lower Case	Upper Case		

Note the sync characters present before and after the EOT PAD (there must be at least 3 in both places). Turn the line around to receive (multipoint is half duplex) and the terminal will send an ACK0 to indicate it is ready to receive:

S	S	S	S	D	
Y	Y	Y	Y	L	0
N	N	N	N	E	

Turn around the line again and give the terminal the cartridge status request embedded in the appropriate protocol characters:

S	S	S	S	E					E	B	P
Y	Y	Y	T	S	&	p	1	^	T	C	A
N	N	N	X	C					X	C	D
				I/O Control escape sequence			LEFT Cartridge	STATUS		1 or 2 chars you have calculated depending on type of BCC chosen	

The terminal returns an ACK1 after the next turnaround

S	S	S	S	D	
Y	Y	Y	Y	L	1
N	N	N	N	E	

if the data was OK and a NAK

S	S	S	S	N
Y	Y	Y	Y	A
N	N	N	N	K

if not. In the latter case retransmit the escape sequence above; either a parity error occurred or the BCC is wrong. Check that the proper parity is selected on the keyboard switch and the proper BCC is strapped on the data comm card.

To receive the printer status, poll terminal DA: send

S	S	S	E	P	S	S	S	S			E	P
Y	Y	Y	O	A	Y	Y	Y	Y			N	A
N	N	N	T	D	N	N	N	N	DD	AA	Q	D

After turnaround, you may receive from the terminal

S	S	S	S	E
Y	Y	Y	Y	O
N	N	N	N	T

This means the terminal is not yet ready to send status. Poll again until you receive it:

S	S	S	S	S		E					E	B
Y	Y	Y	Y	T		S		C	L	G	T	C
N	N	N	N	X	DA	C/P	021	R	F	S	X	C
					Terminal ID	Status Header	Cartridge Status Bytes			Block Terminator for Multipoint		

You should check the BCC the terminal sends to assure the integrity of the data.

If it checks and no parity errors were detected, send the terminal an ACK1 after you turn the line around:

S	S	S	S	D	
Y	Y	Y	Y	L	1
N	N	N	N	E	

After flipping to receive mode, the program will get:

S	S	S	S	E
Y	Y	Y	Y	O
N	N	N	N	T

from the terminal indicating it has no more data to send for the moment. Now the program may examine the status byte to glean whatever information it desires from them.

If the data comm had been asynchronous, the procedure would be identical except that the sync characters are not required to be sent to the terminal (although doing so is harmless) and no sync headers would be sent by the terminal (unless strap J05 were open). So except for hardware considerations, the process flows in much the same fashion in both communication methods.

Incidentally, the programmer would not normally need to perform such tasks as turning the communication lines from send to receive and vice versa, placing the STX, ETX framing characters on the messages, calculating BCC or sending select and poll sequences. At the higher level, the program simply makes output and input statements. However, this example indicates the complete process that occurs for such a two-way communication as a status request. Transactions like cursor sensing would follow exactly the same lines; only escape sequences specific to the operation differ.

FORMS BUILDING

Special purpose forms can be built using the terminals alternate character sets and data fields. The following technique builds forms in three phases using the soft keys and tape cartridges.

- Phase 1 — Outline the form and define protected/unprotected fields.
- Phase 2 — Detail the form.
- Phase 3 — Assign field checking parameters and record the form.

This example uses one tape cartridge to hold codes to be assigned to the soft keys. A second tape cartridge is used to hold the completed form. This example assumes that the Line Drawing character set is in position "C".

PROGRAMMING THE SOFT KEYS

Figures A-1 through A-3 show the escape sequences required to program the soft keys for each of the phases of form building. To record the escape sequences on the first tape cartridge, proceed as follows:

1. Press [CNTL] [NEXT PAGE] (or Esc j).
2. Program each key as shown in figure A-1. Mark a key overlay.
3. Place a tape cartridge in the right tape slot.
4. Press [RECORD] (Esc & pF). This stores phase 1 key assignments in file 1 on the tape.
5. Press [GREEN], [f5 FUNCTION MARK FILE], [f2 FROM R TAPE].
6. Program the keys for phase 2 as shown in figure A-2.
7. Press [RECORD] (Esc & pF). Press [GREEN], [f6 FUNCTION MARK FILE], [f2 FROM R TAPE]. This stores phase 2 key assignments in file 2.
8. Program the keys for phase 3 using figure A-3.
9. Press [RECORD] (Esc & pF).
10. Press [GREEN], [f5 FUNCTION REWIND], [f2 FROM R TAPE] (Esc & p2u0C). After the tape is rewound, remove the tape.

```
f1 L
␛3␛4␛)C␎Q
f2 L
␛)C␛&d@␎;␏
f3 L
␛1␛)C␎W␏␍
f4 L
␛D␉␛]␛&d@␛)C␎:␏␍
f5 L
␛)C␎A
f6 L
␛]␛&d@␎:␏␛[
f7 L
␛)C␎S␏␛&p1u2p2C␛&p1s3dF
f8 L
␛]␛&d@␛)C␎:␏␛&dJ
```

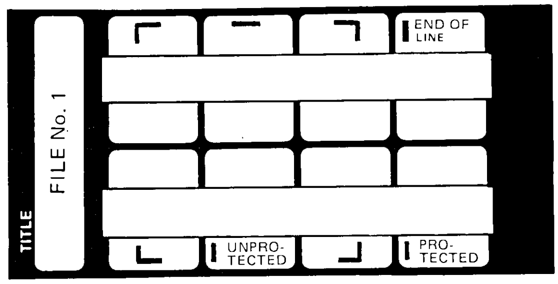


Figure A-1. Soft Key Programming and Soft Key Overlay for File 1

```
f1 L
1
f2 L
2
f3 L
0
f4 L

f5 L
3
f6 L
4
f7 L
;
f8 L
␛&p1u3p2C␛&p1s3dF
```

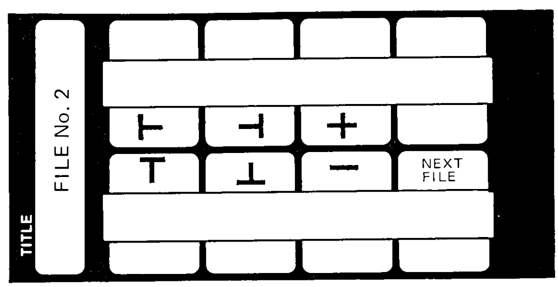


Figure A-2. Soft Key Programming and Soft Key Overlay for File 2

```
f1 L
␛6␛C
f2 L
␛7␛C
f3 L
␛8␛C
f4 L
␛&a0c0R␛4␛L␛Y␛X␛h␛J␛Z␛D␛D␛P␛P␛F␛Y␛W␛Z␛D␛D␛P␛P␛&a0c0R␛&p3s2dM␛&p2u5C
f5 L

f6 L

f7 L

f8 L
␛&p2u-1p2C␛&p2s3dF
```

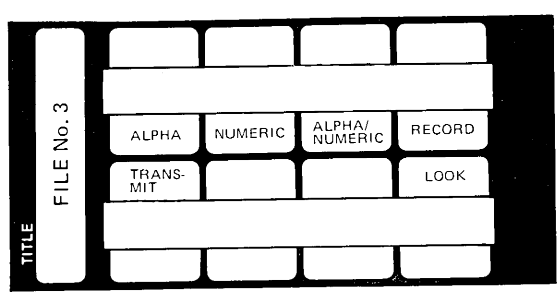


Figure A-3. Soft Key Programming and Soft Key Overlay for File 3

BUILDING THE FORM

Figure A-4 contains a simple form which will be used as an example. Insert your soft key program tape cartridge into the left tape slot and a blank tape cartridge into the right tape slot. Make sure that the device assignments are "from" left tape and "to" right tape. Forms can now be built as follows:

PHASE 1.

1. Press READ. This loads the soft keys with file 1. Place the soft key overlay for file 1 over the soft keys.

2. Starting at the top left of your form, proceed to build your form — left to right — top to bottom. The soft key overlay will help you by giving the function of each key. Figure A-5 shows the details of building the sample form line-by-line during the first phase. The field headings (Name, Address, etc.) are "protected", and the fields to be filled by an operator are "unprotected".

   After the length of the first line is defined (the top of the form), the cursor automatically tabs to the end of the first line when the END OF LINE key (f4) is pressed.

   When the ┘ (f7) key is pressed (finishing the outline phase of the form), file 2 is automatically read to load the soft eys for phase 2.

Name					
Address		State		ZIP	
Telephone					

Figure A-4. Sample Form

PHASE 2.

1. Place the soft key overlay for file 2 over the soft keys.

2. Move the cursor to each line intersection, and press the appropriate soft key. Figure A-6 shows the soft key used at each line intersection in the sample form.

3. When you have finished with the line intersection, press NEXT (f8). This will automatically load the soft keys with file 3.

PHASE 3.

1. Place the soft key overlay for file 3 over the soft keys.

2. Starting at the top of the form, move the cursor to beginning of the first unprotected field. (In this case, it would be where the operator will fill in the name.) Pressing ALPHA (f1), defines the first space as an alpha-only field. You should press f1 as many times as necessary to fill the name field. This will prevent numbers from being entered erroneously in this field.

3. Move the cursor to the beginning of each of the remaining unprotected fields, and define each as ALPHA, NUMERIC, ALPHANUMERIC, or undefined, as applicable. Figure A-7 shows the definition of each field.

4. After each field has been defined, the form is complete. Now, press RECORD (f4) to store the form on the right tape cartridge. LOOK (f8) can be used to recall the form from the right tape cartridge to insure that it has been recorded correctly.

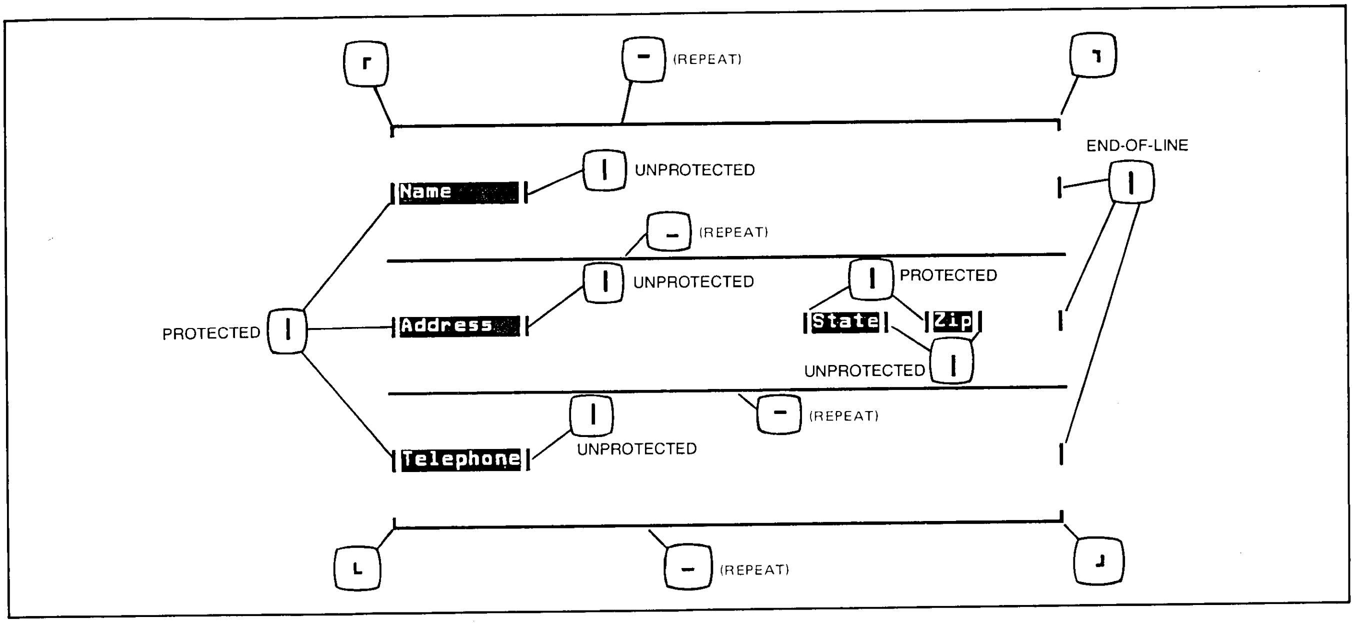


Figure A-5. Building a Form — Phase 1

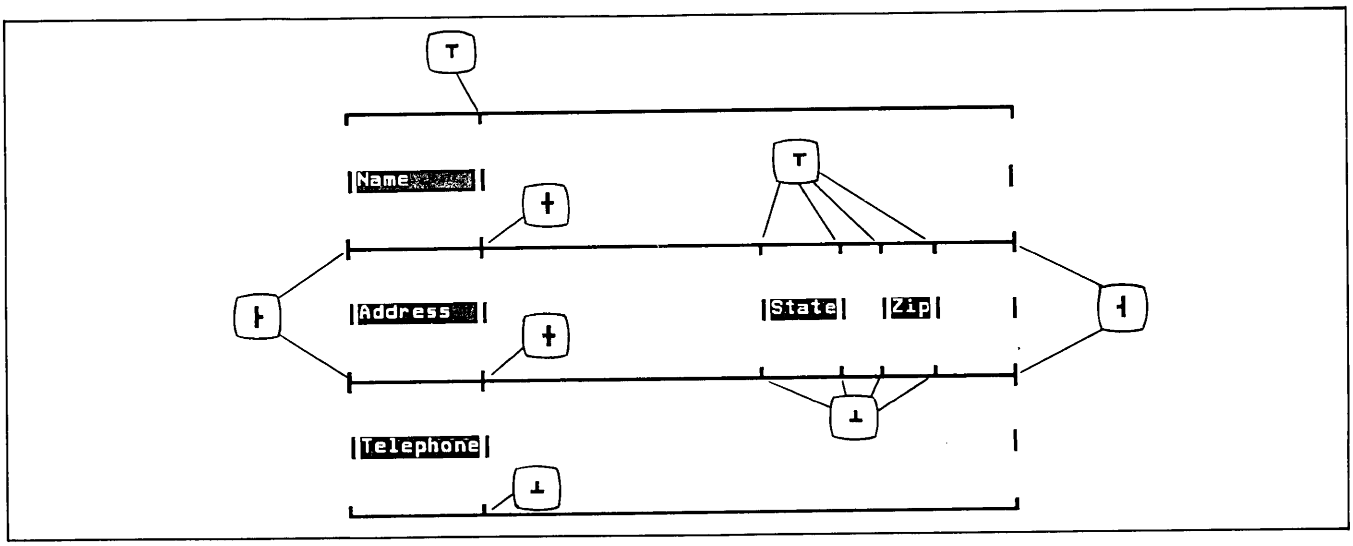


Figure A-6. Building a Form — Phase 2

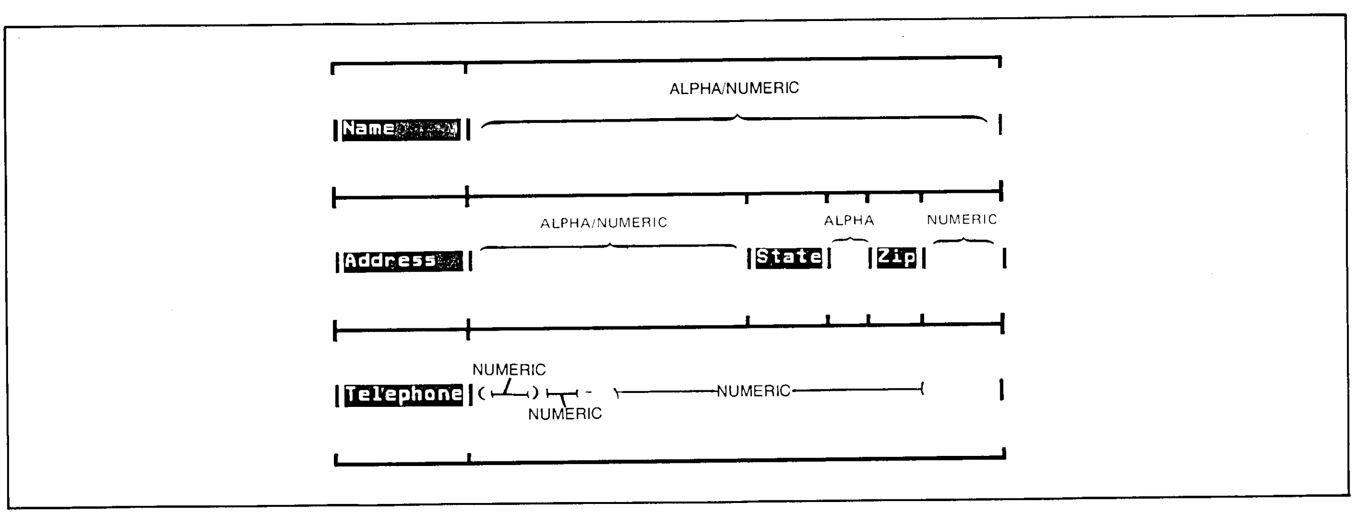


Figure A-7. Buiding a Form — Phase 3

LARGE CHARACTER SET UTILITY

Since using the Large Character Set requires using up to nine character codes for each large character, it is desirable to use a utility program. A sample utility program is given in figure A-8. The program is in written BASIC/3000 but can be adopted for use in other languages. The utility accepts an entire line or string of characters and generates the necessary codes to generate the entire line in Large Characters.

```
9000 REM SUBROUTINE TO PRINT STRING IN L1$ IN LARGE CHAR. SET
9010 REM USES VARIABLES L1$ THRU L4$, L1 THRU L3
9020 DIM L1$[26],L2$[11],L3$[128,9],L4$[1]
9030 IF UND(L1)=1 THEN DO
9040   PRINT CTL(208);'27")C";
9050   L3$[33]=" 0  E  E "
9060   L3$[34]=" ##       "
9070   L3$[35]="C&C0 0C&C"
9080   L3$[36]="!C+GC+GCL"
9090   L3$[37]="^ #3<DE ^"
9110   L3$[38]=" *  &  4 "
9100   L3$[39]=" E       "
9120   L3$[40]="!& 0  G& "
9130   L3$[41]=" &+  0 &L"
9140   L3$[42]="    (  K "
9150   L3$[43]="    C    "
9160   L3$[44]="       L "
9170   L3$[45]="    &    "
9180   L3$[46]="       E "
9190   L3$[47]="  #3<DE  "
9200   L3$[48]="!&+0 0G&L"
9210   L3$[49]=" -  0  E "
9220   L3$[50]="!&+!&LF&,"
9230   L3$[51]="!&+ &@G&L"
9240   L3$[52]="# #F&C  E"
9250   L3$[53]='34"&,F&+G&L"
9260   L3$[54]="!&+/&+G&L"
9270   L3$[55]="%&. >D E "
9280   L3$[56]="!&+5&@G&L"
9290   L3$[57]="!&+G&?G&L"
9300   L3$[58]="    E  E "
9310   L3$[59]="    E  L "
9320   L3$[60]=" 3  2    "
9330   L3$[61]="    &  & "
9340   L3$[62]=" )  D    "
9350   L3$[63]="!&+ >D V "
9360   L3$[65]="!&+/&?E E"
9370   L3$[66]='34"&+/&@F&L"
9380   L3$[67]="!&+0  G&L"
9390   L3$[68]='34"&+0 0F&L"
9400   L3$[69]='34"&,/& F&,"
9410   L3$[70]='34"&,/& E  "
9420   L3$[71]="!&+0 .G&L"
9430   L3$[72]="# #/&?E E"
9440   L3$[73]=" '  0  I "
9450   L3$[74]="  #  0G&L"
9460   L3$[75]="# #/6AE E"
9470   L3$[76]="#  0  F&,"
9480   L3$[77]="$(-070E E"
9490   L3$[78]="$)#08BE E"
9500   L3$[79]='34"&.0 0F&M"
9510   L3$[80]='34"&+/&LE  "
9520   L3$[81]="!&+0 0G&N"
9530   L3$[82]='34"&+/&@E E"
9540   L3$[83]="!&+G&+G&L"
9550   L3$[84]="%', 0  E "
9560   L3$[85]="# #0 0G&L"
9570   L3$[86]="# #0 02JD"
9580   L3$[87]="# #090HKO"
9590   L3$[88]="# #1:AE E"
9600   L3$[89]="# #2;D E "
9610   L3$[90]='34"&.3<DF&M"
9620   L3$[91]='34"& 0  F& "
9630   L3$[93]=" &.  0 &M"
9640   L3$[95]="      &&&"
9650 DOEND
9660 FOR L1=1 TO LEN(L1$)
9670   L2=NUM(UPS$(L1$[L1,L1]))
9680   IF L3$[L2]="" THEN PRINT CTL(208);'27"&a+3C";
9690   ELSE DO
9700     PRINT CTL(208);'14+L3$[L2,1,3]+'27"&a-3c+1R"+'14+L3$[L2,4,6]+&
     '27"&a-3c+1R"+'14+L3$[L2,7,9]+'27"&a-2R";
9710   DOEND
9720 NEXT L1
9730 PRINT CTL(208);'27"&a+3R"'13'10;
9740 RETURN
```

Figure A-8. Large Character Set Utility Routine

REFERENCE TABLES

APPENDIX B

INTRODUCTION

This appendix contains the following reference information for each model terminal covered by this manual:

- Programmer's Reference Table
- Character Code Chart
- Special Symbols Tables (as applicable)
- List of Options and Accessories
- List of Specifications

A Large Character Set coding table for forming characters is included at the end of this appendix.

Table B-1. Programmers Reference Table (2641A)

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
CHARACTER SET GROUP		
Alphabetical, numerical and symbol keys		Similar to typewriter keyboard
TAB key	HT (I^{c})	Forward cursor to next tab position.
TAB^{c} or Back Space^{c}	ESC i	Back tab
LINE FEED key	J^{c}	Move cursor down one line
CNTL (control) key	c	Used to generate ASCII control codes.
BACK SPACE key	BS (H^{c})	Cursor left one space
RETURN key	CR (M^{c})	Return cursor to start of line; clears I/O operations, screen messages; abort Green key operations.
^{c}Control key (CNTL) depressed at same time		
NUMERICAL AND DISPLAY CONTROL GROUP		
↑ key	ESC A	Cursor Up
↓ key	ESC B	Cursor Down
→ key	ESC C	Cursor Right
← key	ESC D	Cursor Left
↖ key	ESC h	Cursor Home
↖^{c}	ESC F	Cursor Home Down
→^{c}	ESC 5	Right Margin Set
←^{c}	ESC 4	Left Margin Set
CLEAR DSPLY key	ESC J	Clear memory from cursor position
CLEAR DSPLY^{c}	ESC K	Clear line from cursor
ROLL UP key	ESC S	Scroll the display up one line
ROLL DOWN key	ESC T	Scroll the display down one line
NEXT PAGE key	ESC U	Display the next 24 lines of memory
PREV PAGE key	ESC V	Display the previous 24 lines of memory
NEXT PAGE^{c}	ESC j (On) ESC k (Off)	Display User-Defined Soft Keys
SET TAB key	ESC 1	Set tab at the currpnt cursor column
CLEAR TAB key	ESC 2	Clear a tab at the current cursor column
CLEAR TAB^{c}	ESC 3	Clear all tabs
Ten-Key Numeric Group	–	Adding machine format keyboard
EDIT GROUP		
INSERT LINE key	ESC L	Blank line inserted
DELETE LINE key	ESC M	Line containing cursor deleted
$\boxed{\text{Green}}$ INSERT LINE	ESC & p 9C	Turn-on tape Write-Backspace-Read Mode
$\boxed{\text{Green}}$ DELETE LINE	ESC & p 10C	Turn-off tape Write-Backspace-Read Mode
INSERT CHAR key	ESC Q (On) ESC R (Off)	Succeeding inputs inserted at cursor
DELETE CHAR key	ESC P	Character at cursor deleted
INSERT CHAR^{c}	ESC N (On) ESC R (Off)	Line Wraparound Mode. Succeeding inputs inserted at cursor with wraparound to left margin of next line.
DELETE CHAR^{c}	ESC 0	Delete character with wraparound from left margin of next line.
COMMUNICATIONS GROUP		
DUPLEX SWITCH	–	Half/Full
PARITY switch	–	Even/Off/None
BAUD RATE switch	–	110, 150, 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600 external
CONTROL GROUP		
RESET TERMINAL key	ESC g	(First press) Free the keyboard and clears I/O operations
	ESC E	(Second press) Set the terminal to power-on state
TEST key TEST^{c}	ESC z	2641 Self-Test (no cartridges) Conditions tapes
$\boxed{\text{GREEN}}\boxed{\text{TEST}}$	–	2641 Self-Test (tests cartridges)
DISPLAY FUNCTIONS key & indicator	ESC Y (On) ESC Z (Off)	Control functions disabled and displayed
DISPLAY FUNCTIONS^{c}	ESC y (On) ESC Z (Off)	Monitor Mode. Display all codes recorded from data comm lines.

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
BLOCK MODE latching key	–	Block Mode: data displayed but not transmitted until requested: otherwise, terminal in Character Mode and data transmitted as typed.
REMOTE latching key	–	Remote (on-line) operations; otherwise, off-line operation
CAPS LOCK latching key	–	Upper-case alphabetical lock
APL key & indicator	ESC < (On) ESC > (Off)	Turns on APL Mode when lighted. Otherwise terminal is in TTY/ASCII mode.
AUTO LF latching key	–	Line Feed with each terminal carriage return
ADDITIONAL FUNCTIONS		
–	ENQ (E^{c})	Enquiry from the computer
–	ACK (F^{c})	Acknowledge – response to ENQ
–	BEL (G^{c})	Bell
–	ESC)	Define Alternate Character Set: (@, A, B, C)
–	SO (N^{c})	Turn on Alternate Character Set
–	SI (0^{c})	Turn off Alternate Character Set
–	DCI (Q^{c})	Block Transfer Trigger
–	DC2 (R^{c})	Block Transfer Enable from Terminal
–	ESC d	Block Transfer Enable from Computer
–	RS (\\$^{c}$)	Record Separator
–	US (_^{c})	Unit Separator
–	ESC & a	Cursor Addressing
–	ESC a	Cursor Sensing (absolute)
–	ESC\`	Cursor Sensing (Relative)
–	ESC _	Write Non-Displaying Terminator
–	ESC b	Keyboard Enable
–	ESC c	Keyboard Disable
–	ESC e	Fast Binary Read
–	ESC f	Modem Disconnect
–	ESC 6	Alphabetic Only Field
–	ESC 7	Numeric Only Field
–	ESC 8	Alphanumeric Field
–	ESC I	Tab
–	ESC G	Cursor Return
–	ESC H	Home cursor (excluding transmit only fields)
–	ESC \\	Terminal Status
–	ESC ~	Extended Status Request
–	ESC @	Delay one second
–	ESC (escape)	ESC ([^{c}) Leads off an ASCII escape sequence
–	ESC & b	HP Diagnostic ONLY
–	ESC & f	Define User-Defined Soft Keys
–	ESC & g	Simulate PA, PF Keys
–	ESC & k	Define Latching Keys
–	ESC l	Turn on memory lock
–	ESC m	Turn off memory lock
–	ESC & p	I/O Control Sequence
–	ESC & s	Define Strap Settings
USER-DEFINED SOFT KEY GROUP		
f_1 key	ESC p	User-Defined Soft Keys Or up to 80-character user-defined sequence for each key (Display, transmit, or both)
f_2 key	ESC q	
f_3 key	ESC r	
f_4 key	ESC s	
f_5 key	ESC t	
f_6 key	ESC u	
f_7 key	ESC v	
f_8 key	ESC w	

Data subject to change

Table B-1. Programmers Reference Table (2641A) (Continued)

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
f_1^c	ESC & d	Turn on Display Enhancement: (see table below)
f_2^c	ESC [	Start Unprotected Field
f_3^c	ESC]	End Unprotected or Transmit-Only Field
f_4^c	ESC W (On)	Format Mode. Protected fields can not be modified.
f_5^c	ESC X (Off)	
f_6^c	ESC {	Start Transmit – Only Field

Display Enhancement:

	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
Half-Bright									x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Under-line					x	x	x	x					x	x	x	x
Inverse Video			x	x			x	x			x	x			x	x
Blinking		x		x		x		x		x		x		x		x

DATA PATH GROUP

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
READ key	–	One file transferred from selected source device to display (LOCAL) or transmitted (REMOTE)
READ ^{c}	–	Read page without DC handshake
GREEN READ ^{c}	–	Read tape beyond end-of-data mark
RECORD key	–	One file from the display (LOCAL) or data received (REMOTE) transferred to selected printer, display and/or tape
ENTER key	–	Same as RECORD (LOCAL) or enables block transfer (REMOTE)
GREEN ENTER	ESC x	Data Comm Self-Test
TRANSMIT indicator	–	Data Link Exists
BREAK key	–	Transmit BREAK signal to interrupt computer
GOLD f_1 L TAPE	ESC & p1S	Assign LEFT TAPE as source
GOLD f_2 R. TAPE	ESC & p2S	Assign RIGHT TAPE as source
GOLD f_3 DISPLAY	ESC & p3S	Assign DISPLAY as source
GOLD f_5 L. TAPE	ESC & p1D	Assign LEFT TAPE as destination
GOLD f_6 R. TAPE	ESC & p2D	Assign RIGHT TAPE as destination
GOLD f_7 DISPLAY	ESC & p3D	Assign DISPLAY as destination
GOLD f_8 PRINTER	ESC & p4D	Assign PRINTER as destination

NOTE: One source and multiple destinations can be set up with the same sequence.

Example: GOLD f_1 f_7 f_8
L. TAPE DISPLAY PRINTER
ESC &p 1s3d 4D

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
COPY ALL GREEN f_1	ESC &pM	All data (current source position) from source transferred to destination
COPY FILE GREEN f_2	ESC &pF	One file (current source position) from source transferred to destination
COPY LINE GREEN f_3	ESC &pB	One line (current source position) from source transferred to destination
GREEN f_1^c	ESC &p 1M	Compare data between source and destination
or f_2^c	ESC &p 1F	
or f_3^c	ESC &p 1B	
EDIT GREEN f_4	–	Toggle EDIT mode to provide automatic data logging. Lines of data transferred to destination(s) or as deleted from top of memory.

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE OR CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
REWIND GREEN f_5 L. TAPE f_5	ESC &p 10μ0C	Rewinds LEFT TAPE
or R. TAPE f_6	or ESC &p 2μ0C	or RIGHT TAPE
MARK FILE GREEN f_6 L. TAPE f_5	ESC &p 1μ5C	Write a FILE MARK on LEFT TAPE
or R. TAPE f_6	or ESC &p 2μ5C	or RIGHT TAPE
SKIP LINE GREEN f_7 ±n L. TAPE f_5	ESC &p ±np1μ1C	Positions selected cartridge ±n records
or R. TAPE f_6	or ESC &p ±np2μ1C	
FIND FILEn GREEN f_8 ±n L. TAPE f_5	ESC &p (±)np1μ2C	Positions selected cartridge to (±)n files
or R. TAPE f_6	or ESC &p (±)np 2μC	
GREEN space	.	Display file, inches remaining for each tape.

MAINFRAME REAR PANEL SWITCHES

PWR ON/OFF switch — Primary power to terminal

Alternative Strappable Functions:

- Function key transmission
- Space overwrite (SPOW) latch enable
- Cursor end-of-line wraparound
- Block mode, page
- Paper tape mode
- Fast Binary read
- Block transfer handshake
- Eliminate block handshake
- ENTER inserts terminator automatically
- Reverse effect of CNTL on Insert Delete Char.
- Send display codes to printer
- Self test inhibit
- Delete terminator after transmission
- Set code translate table for bit paired or typewriter paired printer

Status Information: memory size, strap settings, latching keys, transfer pending flags, error condition flags, device status, terminal type, data comm. status.

Table B-2. Character Code Chart (2641A)

BIT 7 6 5 / 4321	CONTROL (CNTL) CHARACTERS		DISPLAYABLE CHARACTERS						CNTL [(ESCAPE) PRESSED FIRST					
	0 0 0	0 0 1	0 1 0	0 1 1	1 0 0	1 0 1	1 1 0	1 1 1	0 1 0	0 1 1	1 0 0	1 0 1	1 1 0	1 1 1
0000	NU NUL	DL DLE	SP	0	@	P	\`	p	SP	0	@ DELAY 1 SEC.	P DELETE CHAR	\` CURSOR RELATIVE SENSE	p f_1
0001	SH SOH	D1 DC1	!	1	A	Q	a	q	!	1 SET TAB	A ↑ CURSOR UP	Q INSERT CHAR ON	a CURSOR ABSOLUTE SENSE	q f_2
0010	SX STX	D2 DC2	"	2	B	R	b	r	"	2 CLEAR TAB	B ↓ CURSOR DOWN	R INSERT CHAR OFF	b KEYBOARD ENABLE	r f_3
0011	EX ETX	D3 DC3	#	3	C	S	c	s	#	3 CLEAR ALL TABS	C → CURSOR RIGHT	S ROLL UP	c KEYBOARD DISABLE	s f_4
0100	ET EOT	D4 DC4	$	4	D	T	d	t	$	4 SET LEFT MARGIN	D ← CURSOR LEFT	T ROLL DOWN	d ENTER	t f_5
0101	EQ ENQ	NK NAK	%	5	E	U	e	u	%	5 SET RIGHT MARGIN	E RESET TERMINAL	U NEXT PAGE	e BINARY READ	u f_6
0110	AK ACK	SY SYN	&	6	F	V	f	v	& PARA-METER SEQUENCE	6 START ALPHA FIELD	F CURSOR HOME DOWN	V PREV PAGE	f MODEM DIS-CONNECT	v f_7
0111	🔔 BEL	EB ETB	'	7	G	W	g	w	'	7 START NUMERIC FIELD	G CURSOR RETURN	W FORMAT MODE ON	g SOFT RESET	w f_8
1000	BS BS	CN CAN	(	8	H	X	h	x	(	8 START ALPH-NUM FIELD	H HOME CURSOR (SEE NOTE 3)	X FORMAT MODE OFF	h HOME CURSOR (SEE NOTE 3)	x DATA COM SELF TEST
1001	HT HT	EM EM	)	9	I	Y	i	y	) DEFINE CHAR SET	9	I HORI-ZONTAL TAB	Y DISPLAY FUNCTIONS ON	i BACK TAB	y MONITOR MODE ON
1010	LF LF	SB SUB	*	:	J	Z	j	z	*	:	J CLEAR DSPLY	Z DISPLAY FUNCTIONS OFF	j SOFT KEY DISPLAY ON	z TERMINAL SELF TEST
1011	VT VT	EC ESC	+	;	K	[	k	{	+	;	K ERASE TO END OF LINE	[START UNPROTECT FIELD	k SOFT KEY DISPLAY OFF	{ START XMIT ONLY FIELD
1100	FF FF	FS FS	,	<	L	\	l	¦	,	< APL MODE ON	L INSERT LINE	\	l MEMORY LOCK ON	¦
1101	CR CR	GS GS	—	=	M	]	m	}	—	=	M DELETE LINE	] END UNPROTECT FIELD	m MEMORY LOCK OFF	}
1110	SO SO	RS RS	.	>	N	∧	n	~	.	> APL MODE OFF	N INSERT CHAR W/WRAP ON	∧ TERM PRIMARY STATUS	n	~ SEND SECOND-ARY STATUS
1111	SI SI	US US	/	?	O	__	o	DEL	/	?	O DELETE CHAR W/WRAP	— INSERT NON-DISP TERMINATR	o	DEL

Example: J is bits 1001010; Control J is LF line feed; Escape ([C) followed by J is CLEAR DISPLAY

LEGEND

AK	— ACKNOWLEDGE	EM	— END OF MEDIUM	NK	— NEGATIVE ACKNOWLEDGE
🔔	— BELL	EQ	— ENQUIRY	RS	— RECORD SEPARATOR
BS	— BACKSPACE	ET	— END OF TRANSMISSION	SI	— SHIFT IN
CN	— CANCEL LINE	EC	— ESCAPE	SO	— SHIFT OUT
CR	— CARRIAGE RETURN	EB	— END OF TRANSMISSION BLOCK	SP	— SPACE
D1	— DEVICE CONTROL 1	EX	— END OF TEXT	SH	— START OF HEADING
D2	— DEVICE CONTROL 2	FF	— FORM FEED	SX	— START OF TEXT
D3	— DEVICE CONTROL 3	FS	— FILE SEPARATOR	SB	— SUBSTITUTE
D4	— DEVICE CONTROL 4	GS	— GROUP SEPARATOR	SY	— SYNCHRONOUS IDLE
DEL	— DELETE	HT	— HORIZONTAL TABULATION	US	— UNIT SEPARATOR
DL	— DATA LINK ESCAPE	LF	— LINE FEED	VT	— VERTICAL TABULATION

NOTES: 1. LOWER CASE LETTER, LOWER CASE SYMBOL, AND CONTROL CHARACTER CODES ARE GENERATED BY STANDARD TERMINAL, BUT ASSOCIATED CHARACTERS ARE NOT DISPLAYED ON THE THE SCREEN. REFER TO SECTION VII FOR DISPLAYABLE CHARACTER SET.

2. SINGLE CHARACTER ESCAPE SEQUENCES AND CONTROL CODES NOT LISTED WITH A FUNCTION ARE NEITHER ACTED UPON NOR DISPLAYED.

3. ESC H HOMES CURSOR INCLUDING TRANSMIT-ONLY FIELDS. ESC h HOMES CURSOR EXCLUDING TRANSMIT-ONLY FIELDS.

Table B-3. APL Symbols

SYMBOL NAMES

SYMBOL	NAME	SYMBOL	NAME
¨	dieresis	⍺	alpha
¯	overbar	⌈	upstile
<	less	⌊	downstile
≤	not greater	_	underbar
=	equal	∇	del
≥	not less	∆	delta
>	greater	∘	null
≠	not equal	'	quote
∨	or	⎕	quad
∧	and	(	open paren
−	bar	)	close paren
÷	divide	[	open bracket
+	plus	]	close bracket
×	times	⊂	open shot
?	query	⊃	close shoe
⍵	omega	∩	cap
∊	epsilon	∪	cup
⍴	rho	⊥	base
~	tilde	⊤	top
↑	up (arrow)	∣	stile
↓	down (arrow)	;	semicolon
⍳	iota	:	colon
○	circle	,	comma
⋆	star	.	dot
→	right (arrow)	\	slope
←	left (arrow)	/	slash
			space

FORMING OVERSTRIKE SYMBOLS

OVERSTRIKE CHARACTER	FORMED BY: OVERSTRIKING	FORMED BY: WITH	OVERSTRIKE CHARACTER	FORMED BY: OVERSTRIKING	FORMED BY: WITH	OVERSTRIKE CHARACTER	FORMED BY: OVERSTRIKING	FORMED BY: WITH
⍑	¯	⊤	⍬	0	~	⍍	∆	⎕
<⃒	<	∣	0⃞	0	⎕	⌾	∘	○
⍃	<	⎕	]⃘	]	∘	⍕	∘	⊤
<>	<	>	]̵	]	−	∣⃘	∘	∣
≤⃞	≤	⎕	⌷	]	[	⌻	∘	⎕
¥	=	Y	[⃘	[	∘	⍞	'	⎕
⌸	=	⎕	[̵	[	−	⌹	÷	⎕
≥⃞	≥	⎕	£	−	L	⍈	→	⎕
>⃒	>	∣	⊖	−	○	⍓	∧	⎕
⍄	>	⎕	⊟	−	⎕	⍐	↑	⎕
⍯	≠	⎕	⍀	−	\	⍗	↓	⎕
✡	∨	∧	⍉	\	○	~⃞	~	⎕
⍱	∨	~	⍂	\	⎕	⋆⃞	⋆	⎕
∨⃞	∨	⎕	⍇	←	⎕	⌼	○	⎕
⍦	,	∪	⌶	⊥	⊤	∣⃞	∣	⎕
∇̦	,	∇	⍎	⊥	∘	$	S	∣
,̄	,	¯	⍝	∩	∘	¢	⊂	∣
!	.	'	⍫	∇	~	⌽	○	∣
Ø	/	○	⍒	∇	∣	⊗	×	○
⍁	/	⎕	⍔	∇	⎕	⍟	⋆	○
⌿	/	−	⍋	∆	∣	⍲	∧	~

$\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{T}}}$ character is displayed where an invalid overstrike is attempted.

Table B-4. APL-ASCII Bit-Pairing Transmission Codes

BIT 765 / 4321	CONTROL (CNTL) CHARACTERS 000	001	DISPLAYABLE CHARACTERS 010	011	100	101	110	111
0000	NUL (N_U)	DLE (D_L)	SP	0	←	⋆	→	P
0001	SOH (S_H)	DC1 (D_1)	¨	1	α	?	A	Q
0010	STX (S_X)	DC2 (D_2)	¯	2	⊥	⍴	B	R
0011	ETX (E_X)	DC3 (D_3)	<	3	∩	⌈	C	Ṡ
0100	EOT (E_T)	DC4 (D_4)	≤	4	⌊	~	D	T
0101	ENQ (E_Q)	NAK (N_K)	=	5	∊	↓	E	U
0110	ACK (A_K)	SYN (S_Y)	≥	6	_	∪	F	V
0111	BEL	ETB (E_B)	>	7	∇	⍵	G	W
1000	BS (B_S)	CAN (C_N)	≠	8	∆	⊃	H	X
1001	HT (H_T)	EM (E_M)	∨	9	⍳	↑	I	Y
1010	LF (L_F)	SUB (S_B)	)	]	∘	⊂	J	Z
1011	VT (V_T)	ESC (E_C)	(	[	'	⊢	K	⊣
1100	FF (F_F)	FS (F_S)	,	;	⎕	◊	L	$
1101	CR (C_R)	GS (G_S)	+	−	∣	{	M	}
1110	SO (S_O)	RS (R_S)	.	:	⊤	×	N	÷
1111	SI (S_I)	US (U_S)	/	\	○	∧	0	DEL

Table B-5. APL-ASCII Typewriter-Pairing Transmission Codes (see Note)

BIT 765 / 4321	CONTROL (CNTL) CHARACTERS 000	001	DISPLAYABLE CHARACTERS 010	011	100	101	110	111
0000	NUL (N_U)	DLE (D_L)	SP	0	¯	⋆	◊	P
0001	SOH (S_H)	DC1 (D_1)	¨	1	α	?	A	Q
0010	STX (S_X)	DC2 (D_2)	)	2	⊥	⍴	B	R
0011	ETX (E_X)	DC3 (D_3)	<	3	∩	⌈	C	S
0100	EOT (E_T)	DC4 (D_4)	≤	4	⌊	~	D	T
0101	ENQ (E_Q)	NAK (N_K)	=	5	∊	↓	E	U
0110	ACK (A_K)	SYN (S_Y)	>	6	_	∪	F	V
0111	BEL	ETB (E_B)	]	7	∇	⍵	G	W
1000	BS (B_S)	CAN (C_N)	∨	8	∆	⊃	H	X
1001	HT (H_T)	EM (E_M)	∧	9	⍳	↑	I	Y
1010	LF (L_F)	SUB (S_B)	≠	(	∘	⊂	J	Z
1011	VT (V_T)	ESC (E_C)	÷	[	'	←	K	{
1100	FF (F_F)	FS (F_S)	,	;	⎕	⊢	L	⊣
1101	CR (C_R)	GS (G_S)	+	×	∣	→	M	}
1110	SO (S_O)	RS (R_S)	.	:	⊤	≥	N	$
1111	SI (S_I)	US (U_S)	/	\	○	¯	0	DEL

NOTE: These codes apply only when transmitting data to a printer. (Strapping option P on Keyboard Interface PCA controls which code will be sent to the printer — strap P closed = Bit Pairing, strap P open = Typewriter Pairing.

Table B-6. Options and Accessories (2641A)

PRODUCT NUMBER	DESCRIPTION
2641A	DISPLAY STATION Block or character mode, 128 character APL set, 64 character APL overstrike set, 64 character set upper case Roman, 4096 bytes of RAM memory, optionally expandable to 12K bytes, editing features, 8 user-defined soft keys, 110-9600 baud, RS232C, 5 option slots, inverse video, half-bright, underline, blinking, supports one additional character set. *Note: No interface cable included.*
-001	128 Character Set – Roman. Adds lower case
-007	Integrated Dual Cartridge Tape – Mini Data Station Adds two built-in cartridge tape transports and electronics to provide Mini Data Station capabilities (requires 2 option slots). Includes device support firmware.
-013	5 Mini Cartridges
-015	50 Hertz
-030	Delete Standard Asynchronous Communications *Note: One of the 13260 data communications accessories must be ordered when option 030 is ordered.*
-201	64 Character Mathematic Symbol Set. Adds display of integral signs, Greek letters, etc.
-202	64 Character Line Drawing Set Adds display of continuous horizontal and vertical line segments for forms, histograms, etc.
-203	Large Character Set *Note: Only one 200 series option can be ordered with each 2641A.*
ACCESSORIES	
13234A	TERMINAL MEMORY MODULE (+4K) Adds 4096 bytes of user RAM memory (requires 1 option slot).
13236B	INTEGRATED DUAL CARTRIDGE TAPE UPGRADE KIT Field upgrade for adding two built-in cartridge tape transports and electronics to provide Mini DataStation capabilities (requires 2 option slots). Includes installation. *Note: 13261A also required.*
13238A	TERMINAL DUPLEX REGISTER Adds support for HP 9866A or HP 9871A Line Printer (requires 1 option slot). No interface cable included. *Note: 13261A also required on tapeless 2641A's.*
13245A	PROM CHARACTER SET ACCESSORY Assists user in design of custom character sets (requires 1 option slot).
13250A	SERIAL PRINTER INTERFACE Adds interface for connecting RS232C serial printing devices (requires 1 option slot). No interface cable included. *Note: 13261A also required on tapeless 2641A's.*
13260A	STANDARD ASYNCHRONOUS COMMUNICATIONS Upgrade which provides standard RS232C communications interface for the 2641A. *Note: This is identical to the capability deleted by 2641A-030.*
13260B	EXTENDED ASYNCHRONOUS COMMUNICATIONS Provides either an RS232C or 20mA current loop communication interface for the 2641A. Has split speed and custom baud rates. *Note: 2641A-030 must be ordered to delete the Standard Asynchronous interface.*
13260C	ASYNCHRONOUS MULTIPOINT COMMUNICATIONS Provides asynchronous (patterned after Bisync) multipoint communications interface for the 2641A allowing daisy chained line sharing. *Note: 2641A-030 must be ordered to delete the Standard Asynchronous interface.*
-001	Add Monitor Mode Capability
13260D	SYNCHRONOUS MULTIPOINT COMMUNICATIONS – BISYNC Provides synchronous (Binary Synchronous Multipoint Communications compatible, Bisync.; *Note: IBM communications compatible, not plug-to-plug compatible because of differences in text character sequences for controlling terminal features)* multipoint communications interface for the 2641A allowing daisy chained line sharing. *Note: 2641A-030 must be ordered to delete the Standard Asynchronous interface.*
-001	Add Monitor Mode Capability
13261A -001	DEVICE SUPPORT FIRMWARE Required by tapeless 2641A's to support printers, tape upgrade or other I/O devices.
13246A	HP 9866A Thermal Dot Matrix Printer Subsystem – Prints Upper Case Roman Only.
13246B	HP 9866B Thermal Dot Matrix Printer Subsystem – Prints Upper & Lower Case Roman Only.
13349A	HP 9871A Fullfont Printer Subsystem – Prints Upper and Lower Case Roman Only.
9162-0061	MINI CARTRIDGE (purchased from Corporate Parts Center)
CABLES	
13232C	RS232C Cable. 2641A/female RS232C, 5 ft.
13232F	Current Loop Connector Kit. 2641A/four wire, 5 ft.
13232N	Modem Cable. 2641A/male RS232C, 15 ft.
13232P	Modem/Multipoint Cable. Male RS232C/2641A/male multipoint connector, 30 ft. total.
13232Q	Multipoint Cable. Male multipoint/2641A/female multipoint connector, 30 ft. total.
13232R	Multipoint Extension Cable. Male multipoint/female multipoint connector, 100 ft.
13232T	Power Protect Multipoint Cable. Male multipoint/2641A connector with relays/female multipoint connector, 30 ft. total.
13232U	Modem Bypass Cable. Female RS232C/female RS232C, 5 ft.

Table B-7. 2641A Specifications

GENERAL
Screen Size: 127 mm (5 inches) × 254 mm (10 inches)
Screen Capacity: 24 lines × 80 columns (1,920 character)
Character Generation: 7 × 9 enhanced dot matrix; 9 × 15 dot character cell; non-interlaced raster scan
Character Size: 2.46 mm (.097 inches) × 3.175 mm (.125 inches)
Character Set: 128 character APL; 64 character upper-case Roman; 64 character APL overstrike
Note: The 2641A supports only one additional character set.
Cursor: Blinking-Underline
Display Modes: White on Black; Black on White (Inverse Video), Blinking, half-bright, Underline.
Refresh Rate: 60 Hz (50 Hz optional)
Tube Phosphor: P4
Implosion Protection: Bonded implosion panel
Memory: MOS, ROM: 24K bytes (program); RAM; std. 4096 bytes; 12 kilobytes max. (16K including max. data comm. buffer)
Option slots: 5 available
Keyboard: Detachable, full APL/ASCII code bit pairing keyboard, user-defined soft keys, and 18 additional control and editing keys; ten-key numeric pad; cursor pad; multispeed auto-repeat, N-key roll-over; 1.22m. (4 foot cable).
Cartridge Tape (option): Two mechanisms
Read/Write Speed: 10 ips
Search/Rewind Speed: 60 ips
Recording: 800 bpi
Mini Cartridge: 110 kilobyte capacity (maximum per cartridge)

DATA COMMUNICATIONS
Data Rate: 110, 150, 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600 baud, and external. Switch selectable. (110 selects two stop bits). Operating above 4800 baud in APL mode may require nulls or handshake protocol to insure data integrity.
Standard Asynchronous Communications Interface: EIA standard RS232C; fully compatible with Bell 103A modems; compatible with Bell 202C/D/S/T modems. Choice of main channel or reverse channel line turnaround for half duplex operation.
Optional Communications Interfaces (see 13260A/B/C/D Communications data sheet for details):
- Current loop, split speed, custom baud rates
- Asynchronous Multipoint Communications
- Synchronous Multipoint Communications – Bisync

Transmission Modes: Full or half duplex, asynchronous
Operating Modes: On-Line; Off-Line; Character, Block
Parity: Switch selectable; Even, Odd, None

ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS
Temperature, Free Space Ambient:
Non-Operating: −40 to +75°C (−40 to +167°F)
Operating: 0 to 55°C (+32 to +131°F)
Temperature, Free Space Ambient (Tape):
Non-Operating: −10 to 60°C (−15 to +140°F)
Operating: 5 to 40°C (+41 to +104°F)
Humidity: 5 to 95% (non-condensing)
Altitude:
Non-Operating: Sea level to 7620 metres (25,000 feet)
Operating: Sea level to 4572 metres (15,000 feet)
Vibration and Shock (Type tested to qualify for normal shipping and handling in original shipping carton):
Vibration: .37 mm (0.015") pp, 10 to 55 Hz, 3 axis
Shock: 30g, 11ms, 1/2 sine

PHYSICAL SPECIFICATIONS
Display Monitor Weight: 19.6kg (43 pounds)
Keyboard Weight: 3.2kg (7 pounds)
Display Monitor Dimensions: 444 mmW × 457 mmD × 342 mmH (17.5"W × 18"D × 13.5"H) (648 mmD (25.5"D) including keyboard)
Keyboard Dimensions: 444 mmW × 216 mmD × 90 mmH (17.5"W × 8.5"D × 3.5"H)

POWER REQUIREMENTS
Input Voltage: 115 (+10% −23%) at 60 Hz (±0.2%)
230 (+10% −23%) at 50 Hz (±0.2%)
Power Consumption: 85 W to 140 W max.

PRODUCT SAFETY
Product meets:
UL Requirements for: EDP equipment, office appliances, teaching equipment
CSA Requirements for: EDP equipment
U.L. and CSA labels are applied to equipment shipped to the U.S. and Canada.

PRODUCT SUPPORT

HP SYSTEMS SUPPORT
Refer to appropriate HP system data sheet for use and support of 2641A in systems. If this product is used in a customer-assembled system, the overall operational responsibility of the system rests with the customer.

HARDWARE SUPPLIED
2641A Display Station

DOCUMENTATION SUPPLIED
2641A Display Station User's Manual
2641A Reference Manual

ORDERING EXAMPLE

Here is an example for ordering a 2641A Terminal with upper and lower case Roman character sets, line drawing character set, cartridge tape capability and five extra cartridges to be operated over phone lines:

2641A	APL Display Station
-001	Adds Lower Case Roman Character Set
-007	Adds Cartridge Tape Capability
-013	Adds Five Mini Cartridges
-202	Adds Line Drawing Character Set
13232N	Adds 103/202 Modem Cable — 15 ft.

Table B-8. Programmers Reference Table (2645A)

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
CHARACTER SET GROUP		
Alphabetical, numerical and symbol keys		Similar to typewriter keyboard
TAB key	HT (I^C)	Forward cursor to next tab position.
TAB^C or Back Space^C	ESC i	Back tab
ESC (escape) key	ESC ($[^C$)	Leads off an ASCII escape sequence.
CNTL (control) key	^{C}	Used to generate ASCII control codes.
BACK SPACE key	BS (H^C)	Cursor left one space
RETURN key	CR (M^C)	Return cursor to start of line; clears I/O operations, screen messages; abort Green key operations.
^{C}Control key (CNTL) depressed at same time		
NUMERICAL AND DISPLAY CONTROL GROUP		
↑ key	ESC A	Cursor Up
↓ key	ESC B	Cursor Down
→ key	ESC C	Cursor Right
← key	ESC D	Cursor Left
↖ key	ESC h	Cursor Home
↖^{C}	ESC F	Cursor Home Down
→^{C}	ESC 5	Right Margin Set
←^{C}	ESC 4	Left Margin Set
CLEAR DSPLY key	ESC J	Clear memory from cursor position
CLEAR DSPLY^C	ESC K	Clear line from cursor
ROLL UP key	ESC S	Scroll the display up one line
ROLL DOWN key	ESC T	Scroll the display down one line
NEXT PAGE key	ESC U	Display the next 24 lines of memory
PREV PAGE key	ESC V	Display the previous 24 lines of memory
NEXT PAGE^C	ESC j (On) ESC k (Off)	Display User-Defined Soft Keys
SET TAB key	ESC 1	Set tab at the current cursor column
CLEAR TAB key	ESC 2	Clear a tab at the current cursor column
CLEAR TAB^C	ESC 3	Clear all tabs
Ten-Key Numeric Group	–	Adding machine format keyboard
EDIT GROUP		
INSERT LINE key	ESC L	Blank line inserted
DELETE LINE key	ESC M	Line containing cursor deleted
Green INSERT LINE	ESC & p 9C	Turn-on tape Write-Backspace-Read Mode
Green DELETE LINE	ESC & p 10C	Turn-off tape Write-Backspace-Read Mode
INSERT CHAR key	ESC Q (On) ESC R (Off)	Succeeding inputs inserted at cursor
DELETE CHAR key	ESC P	Character at cursor deleted
INSERT CHAR^C	ESC N (On) ESC R (Off)	Line Wraparound Mode. Succeeding inputs inserted at cursor with wraparound to next line.
DELETE CHAR^C	ESC 0	Delete character with wraparound from next line
COMMUNICATIONS GROUP		
DUPLEX SWITCH	–	Half/Full
PARITY switch	–	Even/Odd/None
BAUD RATE switch	–	110, 150, 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, external
CONTROL GROUP		
RESET TERMINAL key	ESC g	(First press) Free the keyboard and clears I/O operations
	ESC E	(Second press) Set the terminal to power-on state
TEST key TEST^C	ESC z	2645 Self-Test (no cartridges) Conditions tape
GREEN TEST	–	2645 Self-Test (tests cartridges)
DISPLAY FUNCTIONS key & indicator	ESC Y (On) ESC Z (Off)	Control functions disabled and displayed
DISPLAY FUNCTIONS^C	ESC y (On) ESC Z (Off)	Monitor Mode. Display all codes recorded from data comm lines.
BLOCK MODE latching key	–	Block Mode: data displayed but not transmitted until requested: otherwise, terminal in Character Mode and data transmitted as typed.
REMOTE latching key	–	Remote (on-line) operations; otherwise, off-line operation
CAPS LOCK latching key	–	Upper-case alphabetical lock
MEMORY LOCK key & indicator	ESC l (On) ESC m (Off)	Memory overflow protect; display lock
AUTO LF latching key	–	Line Feed with each terminal carriage return
ADDITIONAL FUNCTIONS		
–	ENQ (E^C)	Enquiry from the computer
–	ACK (F^C)	Acknowledge – response to ENQ
–	BEL (G^C)	Bell
–	ESC)	Define Alternate Character Set: (@, A, B, C)
–	SO (N^C)	Turn on Alternate Character Set
–	SI (O^C)	Turn off Alternate Character Set
–	DC1 (Q^C)	Block Transfer Trigger
–	DC2 (R^C)	Block Transfer Enable from Terminal
–	ESC d	Block Transfer Enable from Computer
–	RS ($\wedge^C$)	Record Separator
–	US ($\_^C$)	Unit Separator
–	ESC & a	Cursor Addressing
–	ESC a	Cursor Sensing (absolute)
–	ESC '	Cursor Sensing (Relative)
–	ESC _	Write Non-Displaying Terminator
–	ESC b	Keyboard Enable
–	ESC c	Keyboard Disable
–	ESC e	Fast Binary Read
–	ESC f	Modem Disconnect
–	ESC 6	Alphabetic Only Field
–	ESC 7	Numeric Only Field
–	ESC 8	Alphanumeric Field
–	ESC I	Tab
–	ESC G	Cursor Return
–	ESC H	Home cursor (excluding transmit only fields)
–	ESC ∧	Terminal Status
–	ESC ~	Extended Status Request
–	ESC @	Delay one second
–	LF (J^C)	Move Cursor Down One Line
–	ESC & b	HP Diagnostic ONLY
–	ESC & f	Define User-Defined Soft Keys
–	ESC & g	Simulate PA, PF Keys
–	ESC & k	Define Latching Keys
–	ESC & p	I/O Control Sequence
–	ESC & s	Define Strap Settings
USER DEFINED SOFT KEY GROUP		
f_1 key	ESC p	User-Defined Soft Keys *Or* up to 80-character user-defined sequence for each key (Display, transmit, or both)
f_2 key	ESC q	
f_3 key	ESC r	
f_4 key	ESC s	
f_5 key	ESC t	
f_6 key	ESC u	
f_7 key	ESC v	
f_8 key	ESC w	

Data subject to change

Table B-8. Programmers Reference Table (2645A) (Continued)

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
f_1^c	ESC & d	Turn on Display Enhancement: (see table below)
f_2^c	ESC [	Start Unprotected Field
f_3^c	ESC]	End Unprotected or Transmit-Only Field
f_4^c	ESC W (On)	Format Mode. Protected fields can not be modified.
f_5^c	ESC X (Off)	
f_6^c	ESC {	Start Transmit – Only Field

	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
Half-Bright									x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Under-line					x	x	x	x					x	x	x	x
Inverse Video			x	x			x	x			x	x			x	x
Blinking		x		x		x		x		x		x		x		x

DATA PATH GROUP

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
READ key	–	One file transferred from selected source device to display (LOCAL) or transmitted (REMOTE)
READ ^{c}	–	Read page without DC handshake
GREEN READ ^{c}	–	Read tape beyond end-of-data mark
RECORD key	–	One file from the display (LOCAL) or data received (REMOTE) transferred to selected printer, display and/or tape
ENTER key	–	Same as RECORD (LOCAL) or enables block transfer (REMOTE)
GREEN ENTER	ESC x	Data Comm Self-Test
TRANSMIT indicator	–	Data Link Exists
BREAK key	–	Transmit BREAK signal to interrupt computer
GOLD f_1 L. TAPE	ESC & p1S	Assign LEFT TAPE as source
GOLD f_2 R. TAPE	ESC & p2S	Assign RIGHT TAPE as source
GOLD f_3 DISPLAY	ESC & p3S	Assign DISPLAY as source
GOLD f_5 L. TAPE	ESC & p1D	Assign LEFT TAPE as destination
GOLD f_6 R. TAPE	ESC & p2D	Assign RIGHT TAPE as destination
GOLD f_7 DISPLAY	ESC & p3D	Assign DISPLAY as destination
GOLD f_8 PRINTER	ESC & p4D	Assign PRINTER as destination

NOTE: One source and multiple destinations can be set up with the same sequence.

Example: GOLD f_1 (L. TAPE) f_7 (DISPLAY) f_8 (PRINTER)

ESC &p 1s3d 4D

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
COPY ALL: GREEN f_1	ESC &pM	All data (current source position) from source transferred to destination
COPY FILE: GREEN f_2	ESC &pF	One file (current source position) from source transferred to destination
COPY LINE: GREEN f_3	ESC &pB	One line (current source position) from source transferred to destination
GREEN f_1^c	ESC &p1M	Compare data between source and destination
or f_2^c	ESC &p1F	
or f_3^c	ESC &p1B	
EDIT: GREEN f_4	–	Toggle EDIT mode to provide automatic data logging. Lines of data transferred to destination(s) or as deleted from top of memory.

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE OR CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
REWIND: GREEN f_5 — L. TAPE f_5 or R. TAPE f_6	ESC &p 10u0C or ESC &p 2u0C	Rewinds LEFT TAPE or RIGHT TAPE
MARK FILE: GREEN f_6 — L. TAPE f_5 or R. TAPE f_6	ESC &p 1u5C or ESC &p 2u5C	Write a FILE MARK on LEFT TAPE or RIGHT TAPE
SKIP LINE: GREEN f_7 ± n — L. TAPE f_5 or R. TAPE f_6	ESC &p ±np1u1C or ESC &p ±np2u1C	Positions selected cartridge ±n records
FIND FILEn: GREEN f_8 ± n — L. TAPE f_5 or R. TAPE f_6	ESC &p (±)np1u2C or ESC &p (±)np2uC	Positions selected cartridge to (±)n files
GREEN space		Display file, inches remaining for each tape.

MAINFRAME REAR PANEL SWITCHES

PWR ON/OFF switch	–	Primary power to terminal

Alternative Strappable Functions:

- Function key transmission
- Space overwrite (SPOW) latch enable
- Cursor end-of-line wraparound
- Block mode, page
- Paper tape mode
- Fast Binary read
- Block transfer handshake
- Eliminate block handshake
- ENTER inserts terminator automatically
- Reverse effect of CNTL on Insert/Delete Char.
- Send display codes to printer
- Self test inhibit
- Delete terminator after transmission

Status Information: memory size, strap settings, latching keys, transfer pending flags, error condition flags, device status, terminal type, data comm. status.

Tape, printer, display enhancement, monitor mode are optional capabilities.

Table B-9. Character Code Chart (2645A)

	CONTROL (CNTL) CHARACTERS		DISPLAYABLE CHARACTERS						ESCAPE PRESSED FIRST					
BIT 7 6 5 / 4321	0 0 0	0 0 1	0 1 0	0 1 1	1 0 0	1 0 1	1 1 0	1 1 1	0 1 0	0 1 1	1 0 0	1 0 1	1 1 0	1 1 1
0000	N_U NUL	D_L DLE	SP	0	@	P	`	p	SP	0	@ DELAY 1 SEC.	P DELETE CHAR	\ CURSOR RELATIVE SENSE	p f_1
0001	S_H SOH	D_1 DC1	!	1	A	Q	a	q	!	1 SET TAB	A ↑ CURSOR UP	Q INSERT CHAR ON	a CURSOR ABSOLUTE SENSE	q f_2
0010	S_X STX	D_2 DC2	"	2	B	R	b	r	"	2 CLEAR TAB	B ↓ CURSOR DOWN	R INSERT CHAR OFF	b KEYBOARD ENABLE	r f_3
0011	E_X ETX	D_3 DC3	#	3	C	S	c	s	#	3 CLEAR ALL TABS	C → CURSOR RIGHT	S ROLL UP	c KEYBOARD DISABLE	s f_4
0100	E_T EOT	D_4 DC4	$	4	D	T	d	t	$	4 SET LEFT MARGIN	D ← CURSOR LEFT	T ROLL DOWN	d ENTER	t f_5
0101	E_Q ENQ	N_K NAK	%	5	E	U	e	u	%	5 SET RIGHT MARGIN	E RESET TERMINAL	U NEXT PAGE	e BINARY READ	u f_6
0110	A_K ACK	S_Y SYN	&	6	F	V	f	v	& PARA-METER SEQUENCE	6 START ALPHA FIELD	F CURSOR HOME DOWN	V PREV PAGE	f MODEM DIS-CONNECT	v f_7
0111	🔔 BEL	E_B ETB	'	7	G	W	g	w	'	7 START NUMERIC FIELD	G CURSOR RETURN	W FORMAT MODE ON	g SOFT RESET	w f_8
1000	B_S BS	C_N CAN	(	8	H	X	h	x	(	8 START ALPH-NUM FIELD	H HOME CURSOR (SEE NOTE 3)	X FORMAT MODE OFF	h HOME CURSOR (SEE NOTE 3)	x DATA COM SELF TEST
1001	H_T HT	E_M EM	)	9	I	Y	i	y	) DEFINE CHAR SET	9	I HORI-ZONTAL TAB	Y DISPLAY FUNCTIONS ON	i BACK TAB	y MONITOR MODE ON
1010	L_F LF	S_B SUB	*	:	J	Z	j	z	*	:	J CLEAR DSPLY	Z DISPLAY FUNCTIONS OFF	j SOFT KEY DISPLAY ON	z TERMINAL SELF TEST
1011	V_T VT	E_C ESC	+	;	K	[	k	{	+	;	K ERASE TO END OF LINE	[START UNPROTECT FIELD	k SOFT KEY DISPLAY OFF	{ START XMIT ONLY FIELD
1100	F_F FF	F_S FS	,	<	L	\	l	¦	,	<	L INSERT LINE	\	l MEMORY LOCK ON	¦
1101	C_R CR	G_S GS	—	=	M	]	m	}	—	=	M DELETE LINE	] END UNPROTECT FIELD	m MEMORY LOCK OFF	}
1110	S_O SO	R_S RS	.	>	N	^	n	~	.	>	N INSERT CHAR W/WRAP ON	^ TERM PRIMARY STATUS	n	~ SEND SECOND-ARY STATUS
1111	S_I SI	U_S US	/	?	O	_	o	DEL	/	?	O DELETE CHAR W/WRAP	_ INSERT NON-DISP TERMINATR	o	DEL

Example: J is bits 1001010; Control J is LF line feed; Escape ($[^C$) followed by J is CLEAR DISPLAY

LEGEND

AK	— ACKNOWLEDGE	EM	— END OF MEDIUM	NK	— NEGATIVE ACKNOWLEDGE
🔔	— BELL	EQ	— ENQUIRY	RS	— RECORD SEPARATOR
BS	— BACKSPACE	ET	— END OF TRANSMISSION	SI	— SHIFT IN
CN	— CANCEL LINE	EC	— ESCAPE	SO	— SHIFT OUT
CR	— CARRIAGE RETURN	EB	— END OF TRANSMISSION BLOCK	SP	— SPACE
D1	— DEVICE CONTROL 1	EX	— END OF TEXT	SH	— START OF HEADING
D2	— DEVICE CONTROL 2	FF	— FORM FEED	SX	— START OF TEXT
D3	— DEVICE CONTROL 3	FS	— FILE SEPARATOR	SB	— SUBSTITUTE
D4	— DEVICE CONTROL 4	GS	— GROUP SEPARATOR	SY	— SYNCHRONOUS IDLE
DEL	— DELETE	HT	— HORIZONTAL TABULATION	US	— UNIT SEPARATOR
DL	— DATA LINK ESCAPE	LF	— LINE FEED	VT	— VERTICAL TABULATION

NOTES:
1. LOWER CASE LETTER, LOWER CASE SYMBOL, AND CONTROL CHARACTER CODES ARE GENERATED BY STANDARD TERMINAL, BUT ASSOCIATED CHARACTERS ARE NOT DISPLAYED ON THE THE SCREEN. REFER TO SECTION VII FOR DISPLAYABLE CHARACTER SET.
2. SINGLE CHARACTER ESCAPE SEQUENCES AND CONTROL CODES NOT LISTED WITH A FUNCTION ARE NEITHER ACTED UPON NOR DISPLAYED.
3. ESC H HOMES CURSOR INCLUDING TRANSMIT-ONLY FIELDS. ESC h HOMES CURSOR EXCLUDING TRANSMIT-ONLY FIELDS.

Table B-10. Options and Accessories (2645A)

PRODUCT NUMBER	DESCRIPTION
2645A	DISPLAY STATION Block or character mode, 64 character set upper case Roman, 4096 bytes of RAM memory, optionally expandable to 12K bytes, inverse video, editing features, 8 user-defined soft keys, 110-9600 baud, RS232C, 7 option slots. *Note: No interface cable included.*
-001	128 Character Set – Roman Adds lower case and displayable control codes.
-007	Integrated Dual Cartridge Tape – Mini DataStation Adds two built-in cartridge tape transports and electronics to provide Mini DataStation capabilities (requires 2 option slots). Includes device support firmware.
-013	5 Mini Cartridges
-015	50 Hertz
-030	Delete Standard Asynchronous Communications *Note: One of the 13260 data communications accessories must be ordered when option 030 is ordered.*
13231A	DISPLAY ENHANCEMENTS Adds blinking, half-bright and underline; and provides for addition of three 128 character sets (requires 1 option slot).
-201	64 Character Mathematic Symbol Set Adds display of integral signs, Greek letters, etc.
-202	64 Character Line Drawing Set Adds display of continuous horizontal and vertical line segments for forms, histograms, etc.
-203	Large Character Set Adds display of character segments for combination into large characters.
13234A	TERMINAL MEMORY MODULE (+4K) Adds 4096 bytes of user RAM memory (requires 1 option slot).
13236B	INTEGRATED DUAL CARTRIDGE TAPE UPGRADE KIT Field upgrade for adding two built-in cartridge tape transports and electronics to provide Mini DataStation capabilities (requires 2 option slots). Includes installation. Note: 13261A also required.
13238A	TERMINAL DUPLEX REGISTER Adds support for HP 9866A or HP 9871A Line Printer (requires 1 option slot). No interface cable included. Note: 13261A also required on tapeless 2645A's.
13245A	PROM CHARACTER SET ACCESSORY Assists user in design of custom character sets (requires 1 option slot).
13250A	SERIAL PRINTER INTERFACE Adds interface for connecting RS232C serial printing devices (requires 1 option slot). No interface cable included. Note: 13261A also required on tapeless 2645A's.
13260A	STANDARD ASYNCHRONOUS COMMUNICATIONS Upgrade which provides standard RS232C communications interface for the 2645A. *Note: This is identical to the capability deleted by 2645A-030.*
13260B	EXTENDED ASYNCHRONOUS COMMUNICATIONS Provides either an RS232C or 20mA current loop communication interface for the 2645A. Has split speed and custom baud rates. *Note: 2645A-030 must be ordered to delete the Standard Asynchronous interface.*
13260C	ASYNCHRONOUS MULTIPOINT COMMUNICATIONS Provides asynchronous (patterned after Bisync) multipoint communications interface for the 2645A allowing daisy chained line sharing. *Note: 2645A-030 must be ordered to delete the Standard Asynchronous interface.*
-001	Add Monitor Mode Capability
13260D	SYNCHRONOUS MULTIPOINT COMMUNICATIONS – BISYNC Provides synchronous (Binary Synchronous Multipoint Communications compatible, Bisync.; *Note: IBM communications compatible, not plug-to-plug compatible because of differences in text character sequences for controlling terminal features)* multipoint communications interface for the 2645A allowing daisy chained line sharing. *Note: 2645A-030 must be ordered to delete the Standard Asynchronous interface.*
-001	Add Monitor Mode Capability
13261A	DEVICE SUPPORT FIRMWARE Required by tapeless 2645A's to support printers, tape upgrade or other I/O devices.
CABLES	
13232C	RS232C Cable. 2645A/female RS232C, 5 ft.
13232F	Current Loop Connector Kit. 2645A/four wire, 5 ft.
13232N	Modem Cable. 2645A/male RS232C, 15 ft.
13232P	Modem/Multipoint Cable. Male RS232C/2645A/male multipoint connector, 30 ft. total.
13232Q	Multipoint Cable. Male multipoint/2645A/female multipoint connector, 30 ft. total.
13232R	Multipoint Extension Cable. Male multipoint/female multipoint connector, 100 ft.
13232T	Power Protect Multipoint Cable. Male multipoint/2645A connector with relays/female multipoint connector, 30 ft. total.
13232U	Modem Bypass Cable. Female RS232C/female RS232C, 5 ft.
13246A, 13246B, 13349A	Printer subsystems for the HP9866A/B/9871A printers are available for the 2645A
9162-0061	MINI CARTRIDGE (purchased from Corporate Parts Center)

Table B-11. 2645A Specifications

GENERAL

Screen Size: 127 mm (5 inches) X 254 mm (10 inches)

Screen Capacity: 24 lines X 80 columns (1,920 character

Character Generation: 7 X 9 enhanced dot matrix; 9 X 15 dot character cell; non-interlaced raster scan

Character Size: 2.46 mm (.097 inches) X 3.175 mm (.125 inches)

Character Set: 64 upper-case Roman

Cursor: Blinking-Underline

Display Modes: White on Black; Black on White (Inverse Video)

Refresh Rate: 60 Hz (50 Hz optional)

Tube Phosphor: P4

Implosion Protection: Bonded implosion panel

Memory: MOS, ROM: 22K bytes (program); RAM; std. 4096 bytes; 12 kilobytes max. (16K including max. data comm. buffer)

Keyboard: Detachable, full ASCII code keyboard, user-defined soft keys, and 18 additional control and editing keys; ten-key numeric pad; cursor pad; multi-speed auto-repeat, N-key roll-over; 1.22m. (4 foot cable).

Cartridge Tape (option): Two mechanisms

- Read/Write Speed: 10 ips
- Search/Rewind Speed: 60 ips
- Recording: 800 bpi
- Mini Cartridge: 110 kilobyte capacity (maximum per cartridge)

DATA COMMUNICATIONS

Data Rate: 110, 150, 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600 baud, and external-switch selectable (110 selects two stop bits)

Standard Asynchronous Communications Interface: EIA standard RS232C; fully compatible with Bell 103A modems; compatible with Bell 202C/D/S/T modems. Choice of main channel or reverse channel line turnaround for half duplex operation.

Optional Communications Interfaces (see 13260A/B/C/D Communications data sheet for details):

- Current loop, split speed, custom baud rates
- Asynchronous Multipoint Communications
- Synchronous Multipoint Communications — Bisync

Transmission Modes: Full or half duplex, asynchronous

Operating Modes: On-Line; Off-line; Character, Block

Parity: Switch selectable; Even, Odd, None

ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Temperature, Free Space Ambient:
Non-Operating: –40 to +75°C (–40 to +167°F)
Operating: 0 to 55°C (+32 to +131°F)

Temperature, Free Space Ambient (Tape):
Non-Operating: –10 to +60°C (–15 to +140°F)
Operating: 5 to +40°C (+41 to +104°F)

Humidity: 5 to 95% (non-condensing)

Humidity (Tape): 20 to 80% (non-condensing)

Altitude:

Non-Operating: Sea level to 7620 metres (25,000 feet)
Operating: Sea level to 4572 metres (15,000 feet)

Vibration and Shock (Type tested to qualify for normal shipping and handling):

Vibration: .37 mm (0.012") pp, 10 to 55 Hz, 3 axis

Shock: 30g, 11ms, 1/2 sine

PHYSICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Display Monitor Weight: 19.6kg (43 pounds)

Keyboard Weight: 3.2kg (7 pounds)

Display Monitor Dimensions: 444 mmW X 457 mmD X 342 mmH (17.5"W X 18"D X 13.5"H) (648 mmD (25.5"D) including keyboard)

Keyboard Dimensions: 444 mmW X 216 mmD X 90 mmH (17.5"W X 8.5"D X 3.5"H)

POWER REQUIREMENTS

Input Voltage: 115 (+10% -23%) at 60 Hz (±0.2%)
230 (+10% -23%) at 50 Hz (±0.2%)

Power Consumption: 85 W to 140 W max.

Table B-12. Programmers Reference Table (2645S/N)

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
CHARACTER SET GROUP		
Alphabetical, numerical and symbol keys		Similar to typewriter keyboard
TAB key	HT (I^C)	Forward cursor to next tab position.
TAB^C or Back Space^C	ESC i	Back tab
ESC (escape) key	(NOTE 1)	Leads off an ASCII escape sequence.
CNTL (control) key	c	Used to generate ASCII control codes.
BACK SPACE key	BS (H^C)	Cursor left one space
RETURN key	CR (M^C)	Return cursor to start of line; clears I/O operations, screen messages; abort Green key operations.
^{C}Control key (CNTL) depressed at same time		
NUMERICAL AND DISPLAY CONTROL GROUP		
↑ key	ESC A	Cursor Up
↓ key	ESC B	Cursor Down
→ key	ESC C	Cursor Right
← key	ESC D	Cursor Left
↖ key	ESC h	Cursor Home
↖^{C}	ESC F	Cursor Home Down
→^{C}	ESC 5	Right Margin Set
←^{C}	ESC 4	Left Margin Set
CLEAR DSPLY key	ESC J	Clear memory from cursor position
CLEAR DSPLY^C	ESC K	Clear line from cursor
ROLL UP key	ESC S	Scroll the display up one line
ROLL DOWN key	ESC T	Scroll the display down one line
NEXT PAGE key	ESC U	Display the next 24 lines of memory
PREV PAGE key	ESC V	Display the previous 24 lines of memory
NEXT PAGE^C	ESC j (On) ESC k (Off)	Display User-Defined Soft Keys
SET TAB key	ESC 1	Set tab at the current cursor column
CLEAR TAB key	ESC 2	Clear a tab at the current cursor column
CLEAR TAB^C	ESC 3	Clear all tabs
Ten-Key Numeric Group	–	Adding machine format keyboard
EDIT GROUP		
INSERT LINE key	ESC L	Blank line inserted
DELETE LINE key	ESC M	Line containing cursor deleted
Green INSERT LINE	ESC & p 9C	Turn-on tape Write-Backspace-Read Mode
Green DELETE LINE	ESC & p 10C	Turn-off tape Write-Backspace-Read Mode
INSERT CHAR key and indicator	ESC Q (On) ESC R (Off)	Succeeding inputs inserted at cursor
DELETE CHAR key	ESC P	Character at cursor deleted
INSERT CHAR^C	ESC N (On) ESC R (Off)	Line Wraparound Mode. Succeeding inputs inserted at cursor with wraparound to next line.
DELETE CHAR^C	ESC O	Delete character with wraparound from next line
COMMUNICATIONS GROUP		
DUPLEX SWITCH	–	Half/Full
PARITY switch	–	Even/Odd/None
BAUD RATE switch	–	110, 150, 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, external
CONTROL GROUP		
RESET TERMINAL key	ESC g	(First press) Free the keyboard and clears I/O operations
	ESC E	(Second press) Set the terminal to power-on state
TEST key TEST^C	ESC z	2645 Self-Test (no cartridges) Conditions tape

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
GREEN TEST	–	2645 Self-Test (tests cartridges)
DISPLAY FUNCTIONS key & indicator	ESC Y (On) ESC Z (Off)	Control functions disabled and displayed
DISPLAY FUNCTIONS^C	ESC y (On) ESC Z (Off)	Monitor Mode. Display all codes recorded from data comm lines.
BLOCK MODE latching key	–	Block Mode: data displayed but not transmitted until requested: otherwise, terminal in Character Mode and data transmitted as typed.
REMOTE latching key	–	Remote (on-line) operations; otherwise, off-line operation
CAPS LOCK latching key	–	Upper-case alphabetical lock
MEMORY LOCK key & indicator	ESC l (On) ESC m (Off)	Memory overflow protect; display lock
AUTO LF latching key	–	Line Feed with each terminal carriage return
ADDITIONAL FUNCTIONS		
–	ENQ (E^C)	Enquiry from the computer
–	ACK (F^C)	Acknowledge – response to ENQ
–	BEL (G^C)	Bell
–	ESC)	Define Alternate Character Set: (@, A, B, C)
–	SO (N^C)	Turn on Alternate Character Set
–	SI (O^C)	Turn off Alternate Character Set
–	DC1 (Q^C)	Block Transfer Trigger
–	DC2 (R^C)	Block Transfer Enable from Terminal
–	ESC d	Block Transfer Enable from Computer
–	(NOTE 2)	Record Separator
–	US (DEL^C)	Unit Separator
–	ESC & a	Cursor Addressing
–	ESC a	Cursor Sensing (absolute)
–	ESC	Cursor Sensing (Relative)
–	ESC _	Write Non-Displaying Terminator
–	ESC b	Keyboard Enable
–	ESC c	Keyboard Disable
–	ESC e	Fast Binary Read
–	ESC f	Modem Disconnect
–	ESC 6	Alphabetic Only Field
–	ESC 7	Numeric Only Field
–	ESC 8	Alphanumeric Field
–	ESC I	Tab
–	ESC G	Cursor Return
–	ESC H	Home cursor (excluding transmit only fields)
–	(NOTE 3)	Terminal Status
–	(NOTE 4)	Extended Status Request
–	ESC @	Delay one second
–	LF (J^C)	Move Cursor Down One Line
–	ESC & b	HP Diagnostic ONLY
–	ESC & f	Define User-Defined Soft Keys
–	ESC & g	Simulate PA, PF Keys
–	ESC & k	Define Latching Keys
–	ESC & p	I/O Control Sequence
–	ESC & s	Define Strap Settings
USER-DEFINED SOFT KEY GROUP		
f_1 key	ESC p	User-Defined Soft Keys *Or* up to 80-character user-defined sequence for each key (Display, transmit, or both)
f_2 key	ESC q	
f_3 key	ESC r	
f_4 key	ESC s	
f_5 key	ESC t	
f_6 key	ESC u	
f_7 key	ESC v	
f_8 key	ESC w	

Data subject to change

Table B-12. Programmers Reference Table (2645S/N) (Continued)

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
f_1^c	ESC & d	Turn on Display Enhancement: (see enhancement table below)
f_2^c	(NOTE 5)	Start Unprotected Field
f_3^c	ESC Å	End Unprotected or Transmit-Only Field
f_4^c	ESC W (On)	Format Mode. Protected fields can not be modified.
f_5^c	ESC X (Off)	
f_6^c	(NOTE 6)	Start Transmit – Only Field
DATA PATH GROUP		
READ key	–	One file transferred from selected source device to display (LOCAL) or transmitted (REMOTE)
READ ^{c}	–	Read page without DC handshake
GREEN READ ^{c}	–	Read tape beyond end-of-data mark
RECORD key	–	One file from the display (LOCAL) or data received (REMOTE) transferred to selected printer, display and/or tape
ENTER key	–	Same as RECORD (LOCAL) or enables block transfer (REMOTE)
GREEN ENTER	ESC x	Data Comm Self-Test
TRANSMIT indicator	–	Data Link Exists
BREAK key	–	Transmit BREAK signal to interrupt computer
GOLD f_1 L. TAPE	ESC & p1S	Assign LEFT TAPE as source
GOLD f_2 R. TAPE	ESC & p2S	Assign RIGHT TAPE as source
GOLD f_3 DISPLAY	ESC & p3S	Assign DISPLAY as source
GOLD f_5 L. TAPE	ESC & p1D	Assign LEFT TAPE as destination
GOLD f_6 R. TAPE	ESC & p2D	Assign RIGHT TAPE as destination
GOLD f_7 DISPLAY	ESC & p3D	Assign DISPLAY as destination
GOLD f_8 PRINTER	ESC & p4D	Assign PRINTER as destination

Turn on Display Enhancement:

	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
Half-Bright									x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Under-line					x	x	x	x					x	x	x	x
Inverse Video			x	x			x	x			x	x			x	x
Blinking		x		x		x		x		x		x		x		x

NOTE: One source and multiple destinations can be set up with the same sequence.

Example: GOLD f_1 f_7 f_8

L. TAPE DISPLAY PRINTER

ESC &p 1s3d 4D

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE or CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
COPY ALL GREEN f_1	ESC &pM	All data (current source position) from source transferred to destination
COPY FILE GREEN f_2	ESC &pF	One file (current source position) from source transferred to destination
COPY LINE GREEN f_3	ESC &pB	One line (current source position) from source transferred to destination
GREEN f_1 ^{c}	ESC &p1M	Compare data between source and destination
or f_2 ^{c}	ESC &p1F	
or f_3 ^{c}	ESC &p1B	
EDIT GREEN f_4	–	Toggle EDIT mode to provide automatic data logging. Lines of data transferred to destination(s) or as deleted from top of memory.

KEY or SWITCH	ESCAPE OR CONTROL CODE	FUNCTION
REWIND GREEN f_5 L. TAPE f_5	ESC &p 10u0C	Rewinds LEFT TAPE
or R. TAPE f_6	or ESC &p 2u0C	or RIGHT TAPE
MARK FILE GREEN f_6 L. TAPE f_5	ESC &p 1u5C	Write a FILE MARK on LEFT TAPE or RIGHT TAPE
or R. TAPE f_6	or ESC &p 2u5C	
SKIP LINE GREEN f_7 ± n L. TAPE f_5	ESC &p ±np1u1C	Positions selected cartridge ±n records
or R. TAPE f_6	or ESC &p ±np2u1C	
FIND FILEn GREEN f_8 ± n L. TAPE f_5	ESC &p (±)np1u2C	Positions selected cartridge to (±)n files
or R. TAPE f_6	or ESC &p (±)np2uC	
GREEN space		Display file, inches remaining for each tape.
MAINFRAME REAR PANEL SWITCHES		
PWR ON/OFF switch	–	Primary power to terminal

Alternative Strappable Functions:

- Function key transmission
- Space overwrite (SPOW) latch enable
- Cursor end-of-line wraparound
- Block mode, page
- Paper tape mode
- Fast Binary read
- Block transfer handshake
- Eliminate block handshake
- ENTER inserts terminator automatically
- Reverse effect of CNTL on Insert/Delete Char.
- Send display codes to printer
- Self test inhibit
- Delete terminator after transmission

Status Information: memory size, strap settings, latching keys, transfer pending flags, error condition flags, device status, terminal type, data comm. status.

Tape, printer, display enhancement, monitor mode are optional capabilities.

NOTES: Note the following differences:

	2645S	2645N
1.	ESC (Ä^c)	ESC (Æ^c)
2.	RS (^^{c})	RS (Ü^c)
3.	ESC ^	ESC Ü
4.	ESC –	ESC ü
5.	ESC Ä	ESC Æ
6.	ESC ä	ESC æ

Table B-13. Character Code Chart (2645S/N)

BIT 7 6 5 / 4321	CONTROL (CNTL) CHARACTERS		DISPLAYABLE CHARACTERS						ESCAPE PRESSED FIRST					
	0 0 0	0 0 1	0 1 0	0 1 1	1 0 0	1 0 1	1 1 0	1 1 1	0 1 0	0 1 1	1 0 0	1 0 1	1 1 0	1 1 1
0000	NUL (NU)	DLE (DL)	SP	0	@	P	`	p	SP	0	@ DELAY 1 SEC.	P DELETE CHAR	` CURSOR RELATIVE SENSE	p f_1
0001	SOH (SH)	DC1 (D_1)	!	1	A	Q	a	q	!	1 SET TAB	A ↑ CURSOR UP	Q INSERT CHAR ON	a CURSOR ABSOLUTE SENSE	q f_2
0010	STX (SX)	DC2 (D_2)	"	2	B	R	b	r	"	2 CLEAR TAB	B ↓ CURSOR DOWN	R INSERT CHAR OFF	b KEYBOARD ENABLE	r f_3
0011	ETX (EX)	DC3 (D_3)	#	3	C	S	c	s	#	3 CLEAR ALL TABS	C → CURSOR RIGHT	S ROLL UP	c KEYBOARD DISABLE	s f_4
0100	EOT (ET)	DC4 (D_4)	$	4	D	T	d	t	$	4 SET LEFT MARGIN	D ← CURSOR LEFT	T ROLL DOWN	d ENTER	t f_5
0101	ENQ (EQ)	NAK (NK)	%	5	E	U	e	u	%	5 SET RIGHT MARGIN	E RESET TERMINAL	U NEXT PAGE	e BINARY READ	u f_6
0110	ACK (AK)	SYN (SY)	&	6	F	V	f	v	& PARA-METER SEQUENCE	6 START ALPHA FIELD	F CURSOR HOME DOWN	V PREV PAGE	f MODEM DIS-CONNECT	v f_7
0111	BEL (🔔)	ETB (EB)	'	7	G	W	g	w	'	7 START NUMERIC FIELD	G CURSOR RETURN	W FORMAT MODE ON	g SOFT RESET	w f_8
1000	BS (BS)	CAN (CN)	(	8	H	X	h	x	(	8 START ALPH-NUM FIELD	H HOME CURSOR (SEE NOTE 3)	X FORMAT MODE OFF	h HOME CURSOR (SEE NOTE 3)	x DATA COM SELF TEST
1001	HT (HT)	EM (EM)	)	9	I	Y	i	y	) DEFINE CHAR SET	9	I HORI-ZONTAL TAB	Y DISPLAY FUNCTIONS ON	i BACK TAB	y MONITOR MODE ON
1010	LF (LF)	SUB (SB)	*	:	J	Z	j	z	*	:	J CLEAR DSPLY	Z DISPLAY FUNCTIONS OFF	j SOFT KEY DISPLAY ON	z TERMINAL SELF TEST
1011	VT (VT)	ESC (EC)	+	;	K	Ä	k	ä	+	;	K ERASE TO END OF LINE	Ä START UNPROTECT FIELD	k SOFT KEY DISPLAY OFF	ä START XMIT ONLY FIELD
1100	FF (FF)	FS (FS)	,	<	L	Ö	l	ö	,	<	L INSERT LINE	Ö	l MEMORY LOCK ON	ö
1101	CR (CR)	GS (GS)	—	=	M	Å	m	å	—	=	M DELETE LINE	Å END UNPROTECT FIELD	m MEMORY LOCK OFF	å
1110	SO (SO)	RS (RS)	.	>	N	^	n	~	.	>	N INSERT CHAR W/WRAP ON	^ TERM PRIMARY STATUS	n	~ SEND SECOND-ARY STATUS
1111	SI (SI)	US (US)	/	?	O	_	o	DEL	/	?	O DELETE CHAR W/WRAP	_ INSERT NON-DISP TERMINATR	o	DEL

Example: J is bits 1001010; Control J is LF line feed; Escape ($[^C$) followed by J is CLEAR DISPLAY

LEGEND

AK	ACKNOWLEDGE	EM	END OF MEDIUM	NK	NEGATIVE ACKNOWLEDGE
🔔	BELL	EQ	ENQUIRY	RS	RECORD SEPARATOR
BS	BACKSPACE	ET	END OF TRANSMISSION	SI	SHIFT IN
CN	CANCEL LINE	EC	ESCAPE	SO	SHIFT OUT
CR	CARRIAGE RETURN	EB	END OF TRANSMISSION BLOCK	SP	SPACE
D1	DEVICE CONTROL 1	EX	END OF TEXT	SH	START OF HEADING
D2	DEVICE CONTROL 2	FF	FORM FEED	SX	START OF TEXT
D3	DEVICE CONTROL 3	FS	FILE SEPARATOR	SB	SUBSTITUTE
D4	DEVICE CONTROL 4	GS	GROUP SEPARATOR	SY	SYNCHRONOUS IDLE
DEL	DELETE	HT	HORIZONTAL TABULATION	US	UNIT SEPARATOR
DL	DATA LINK ESCAPE	LF	LINE FEED	VT	VERTICAL TABULATION

NOTES:

1. LOWER CASE LETTER, LOWER CASE SYMBOL, AND CONTROL CHARACTER CODES ARE GENERATED BY STANDARD TERMINAL, BUT ASSOCIATED CHARACTERS ARE NOT DISPLAYED ON THE THE SCREEN. REFER TO SECTION VII FOR DISPLAYABLE CHARACTER SET.
2. SINGLE CHARACTER ESCAPE SEQUENCES AND CONTROL CODES NOT LISTED WITH A FUNCTION ARE NEITHER ACTED UPON NOR DISPLAYED.
3. ESC H HOMES CURSOR INCLUDING TRANSMIT-ONLY FIELDS. ESC h HOMES CURSOR EXCLUDING TRANSMIT-ONLY FIELDS.
4. NOTE THE DIFFERENCES FOR 2645N:

2645S	Ä	ä	Ö	ö	Å	å	^	~
2645N	Æ	æ	Ø	ø	Å	å	Ü	ü

Table B-14. Options and Accessories (2645S/N)

PRODUCT NUMBER	DESCRIPTION
2645S	DISPLAY STATION Block or character mode, 64 character set upper case Swedish/Finnish or Norwegian/Danish 4096 bytes of RAM memory, optionally expandable to 12K bytes, inverse video, editing features, 8 user-defined soft keys, 110-9600 baud, RS232C, 7 option slots. *Note: No interface cable included.*
−001	128 Character Set — Swedish/Finnish or Norwegian/Danish Adds lower case and displayable control codes.
−007	Integrated Dual Cartridge Tape — Mini DataStation Adds two built-in cartridge tape transports and electronics to provide Mini DataStation capabilities (requires 2 option slots). Includes device support firmware.
−013	5 Mini Cartridges
−015	50 Hertz
−030	Delete Standard Asynchronous Communications *Note: One of the 13260 data communications accessories must be ordered when option 030 is ordered.*
13231A	DISPLAY ENHANCEMENTS Adds blinking, half-bright and underline; and provides for addition of three 128 character sets (requires 1 option slot).
−201	64 Character Mathematic Symbol Set—Adds display of integral signs, Greek letters, etc.
−202	64 Character Line Drawing Set—Adds display of continuous horizontal and vertical line segments for forms, histographs, etc.
−203	Large Character Set—Adds display of character segments for combination into large characters.
ACCESSORIES	
13234A	TERMINAL MEMORY MODULE (+4K) Adds 4096 bytes of user RAM memory (requires 1 option slot).
13236B	INTEGRATED DUAL CARTRIDGE TAPE UPGRADE KIT Field upgrade for adding two built-in cartridge tape transports and electronics to provide Mini DataStation capabilities (requires 2 option slots). Includes installation. Note: 13261A also required.
13238A	TERMINAL DUPLEX REGISTER Adds support for HP 9866A or HP 9871A Line Printer (requires 1 option slot). No interface cable included. Note: 13261A also required on tapeless 2645S's or 2645N's.
13245A	PROM CHARACTER SET ACCESSORY Assists user in design of custom character sets (requires 1 option slot).
13250B	SERIAL PRINTER INTERFACE Adds interface for connecting RS232C serial printing devices (requires 1 option slot). No interface cable included. Note: 13261A also required on tapeless 2645S's or 2645N's.
13260A	STANDARD ASYNCHRONOUS COMMUNICATIONS Upgrade which provides standard RS232C communications interface for the 2645S/N. *Note: This is identical to the capability deleted by 2645S-030 or 2645N-030.*
13260B	EXTENDED ASYNCHRONOUS COMMUNICATIONS Provides either an RS232C or 20mA current loop communication interface for the 2645S/N. Has split speed and custom baud rates. *Note: 2645S-030 or 2645N-030 must be ordered to delete the Standard Asynchronous interface.*
13260C	ASYNCHRONOUS MULTIPOINT COMMUNICATIONS Provides asynchronous (patterned after Bisync) multipoint communications interface for the 2645S allowing daisy chained line sharing. *Note: 2645S-030 or 2645N-030 must be ordered to delete the Standard Asynchronous interface.*
−001	Add monitor Mode Capability
13260D	SYNCHRONOUS MULTIPOINT COMMUNICATIONS — BISYNC Provides synchronous (Binary Synchronous Multipoint Communications compatible, Bisync.; *Note: IBM communications compatible, not plug-to-plug compatible because of differences in text character sequences for controlling terminal features)* multipoint communications interface for the 2645S/N allowing daisy chained line sharing. *Note: 2645S-030 or 2645N-030 must be ordered to delete the Standard Asynchronous interface.*
−001	Add Monitor Mode Capability
13261A	DEVICE SUPPORT FIRMWARE Required by tapeless 2645S's and 2645N's to support printers, tape upgrade or other I/O devices.
13246A	HP 9866A Thermal Dot Matrix Printer Subsystem — Prints Upper Case Roman Only.
13246B	HP 9866B Thermal Dot Matrix Printer Subsystem — Prints Upper & Lower Case Roman Only.
13349A	HP 9871A Fullfont Printer Subsystem — Prints Upper and Lower Case Roman Only.
9162-0061	MINI CARTRIDGE (purchased from Corporate Parts Center)
CABLES	
13232C	RS232C Cable. 2645/female RS232C, 5 ft.
13232F	Current Loop Connector Kit. 2645/four wire, 5 ft.
13232N	Modem Cable. 2645/male RS232C, 15 ft.
13232P	Modem/Multipoint Cable. Male RS232C/2645/male multipoint connector, 30 ft. total.
13232Q	Multipoint Cable. Male multipoint/2645/female multipoint connector, 30 ft. total.
13232R	Multipoint Extension Cable. Male multipoint/female multipoint connector, 100 ft.
13232T	Power Protect Multipoint Cable. Male multipoint/2645 connector with relays/female multipoint connector, 30 ft. total.
13232U	Modem Bypass Cable. Female RS232C/female RS232C, 5 ft.

Table B-15. 2645S/N Specifications

GENERAL

Screen Size: 127 mm (5 inches) X 254 mm (10 inches)

Screen Capacity: 24 lines X 80 columns (1,920 characters)

Character Generation: 7 X 9 enhanced dot matrix; 9 X 15 dot character cell; non-interlaced raster scan

Character Size: 2.46 mm (.097 inches) X 3.175 mm (.125 inches)

Character Set: 64 upper-case Swedish/Finnish (2645S) or 64 upper-case Norwegian/Danish (2645N)

Cursor: Blinking-Underline

Display Modes: White on Black; Black on White Inverse Video)

Refresh Rate: 60 Hz (50 Hz optional)

Tube Phosphor: P4

Implosion Protection: Bonded implosion panel

Memory: MOS, ROM: 22K bytes (program); RAM; std. 4096 bytes; 12 kilobytes max. (16K including max. data comm buffer)

Keyboard: Detachable, full IOS code keyboard, user-defined soft keys, and 18 additional control and editing keys; ten-key numeric pad; multi-speed auto-repeat, N-key roll-over; 1.22m (4 foot cable).

Cartridge Tape (option): Two mechanisms
- Read/Write Speed: 10 ips
- Search/Rewind Speed: 60 ips
- Recording: 800 bpi
- Mini Cartridge: 110 kilobyte capacity (maximum per cartridge)

DATA COMMUNICATIONS

Data Rate: 110, 150, 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600 baud, and external-switch selectable (110 selects two stop bits)

Standard Asynchronous Communications Interface: EIA standard RS232C; fully compatible with Bell 103A modems; compatible with Bell 202C/D/S/T modems. Choice of main channel or reverse channel line turnaround for half duplex operation.

Optional Communications Interfaces (see 13260A/B/C/D Communications data sheet for details):
- Current loop, split speed, custom baud rates
- Asynchronous Multipoint Communications
- Synchronous Multipoint Communications — Bisync

Transmission Modes: Full or half duplex, asynchronous

Operating Modes: On-Line; Off-Line: Character, Block

Parity: Switch selectable; Even, Odd, None

ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Temperature, Free Space Ambient:
Non-Operating: −40 to +75°C (−40 to +167°F)
Operating: 0 to 55°C (+32 to +131°F)

Temperature, Free Space Ambient (Tape):
Non-Operating: −10 to +60°C (−15 to +140°F)
Operating: 5 to +40°C (+41 to +104°F)

Humidity: 5 to 95% (non-condensing)

Humidity (Tape): 20 to 80% (non-condensing)

Altitude:
Non-Operating: Sea level to 7620 metres (25,000 feet)
Operating: Sea level to 4572 metres (15,000 feet)

Vibration and Shock (type tested to quality for normal shipping and handling):
Vibration: 0.37 mm (0.012") pp, 10 to 55 Hz, 3 axis
Shock: 30g, 11ms, 1/2 sine

PHYSICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Display Monitor Weight: 19.6 kg (43 pounds)

Keyboard Weight: 3.2 kg (7 pounds)

Display Monitor Dimensions: 444 mmW X 457 mmD X 342 mmH (17.5"W X 18"D X 13.5"H) (648 mmD (25.5"D) including keyboard)

Keyboard Dimensions: 444 mmW X 216mmD X 90 mmH (17.5"W X 8.5"D X 3.5"H)

POWER REQUIREMENTS

Input Voltage: 115 (+10% −23%) at 60 Hz (±0.2%)
230 (+10% −23%) at 50 Hz (±0.2%)

Power Consumption: 85W to 140W max.

PRODUCT SAFETY

Product meets UL requirements for:
- EDP equipment
- office appliances
- teaching equipment

Product meets CSA requirements for:
- EDP equipment

U.L. and CSA labels are applied to equipment shipped to the U.S. and Canada.

PRODUCT SUPPORT

WARRANTY

90 day on-site parts and labor warranty

HP SYSTEMS SUPPORT

Refer to appropriate HP system data sheet for use and support of 2645S/N in systems. If this product is used in a customer-assembled system, the overall operational responsibility of the system rests with the customer.

INSTALLATION

All product preparation can be performed by the owner/user. Refer to reference manual supplied with unit for detailed instructions. HP assistance is provided for installation upon request and at prevailing rates.

HARDWARE SUPPLIED

2645S/N Display Station

DOCUMENTATION SUPPLIED

2645S Display Station User's Manual (02645-90024)
2645S Reference Manual (02645-90005)
2645N User's/Reference Manual Supplement (02645-90044)

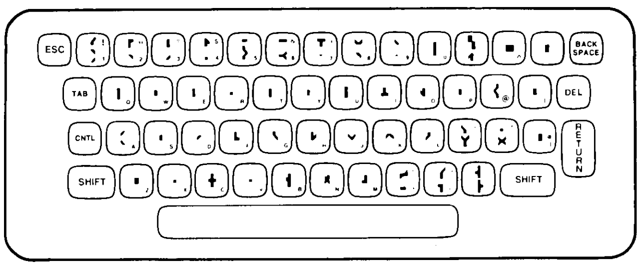
ORDERING EXAMPLE

Here is an example for ordering a 2645S/N Terminal with upper and lower case Swedish/Finnish or Norwegian/Danish character sets, line drawing character set, cartridge tape capability and five extra cartridges to be operated over phone lines:

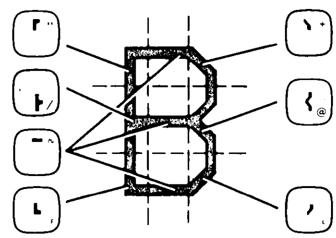
2645S/N	Swedish/Finnish or Norwegian/Danish Station
-001	Adds Lower Case Swedish/Finnish or Norwegian/Danish Character Set
-007	Adds Cartridge Tape Capability
-013	Adds Five Mini Cartridges
-202	Adds Line Drawing Character Set
13232N	Adds 103/202 Modem Cable — 15 ft.

Table B-16. Coding the Large Character Set

The elements of the Large Character Set are associated with the keyboard as pictured below:



Each large character is actually made up of nine character segments. An example of constructing the letter "B" using the Large Character Set follows:



!	# 0 S	—	%&,	9	!&+ G&? G&L	E	"&, /& F&,	Q	!&+ 0 0 G&N	]	%. 0 %M	i	* # E	u	## FM
"	##	▪	Z	:	Z Z	F	"&, /& E	R	"&+ /&@ E E	^	9 K	j	* # GL	v	## GL
#	CC CC	÷	* %&, 4	;	Y L	G	!&+ 0 . G&L	S	!&+ G&+ G&L	▬	^^^	k	# /@ EE	w	## HO
$	!C+ GC+ GCL	0	!&+ 0 0 G&L	<	3 2	H	# # /&? E E	T	%', 0 E	`	+	l	# 0 E	x	5@ EE
%	P P 3<D Y Y	1	- 0 E	=	%&, %&,	I	' 0 I	U	# # 0 0 G&L	a	!. GM	m	$- EE	y	## G?
&	!+ 5IC G&L	2	!&+ !&L F&,	>	) D	J	# 0 L	V	# # 0 0 2JD	b	# /+ FL	n	"+ EE	z	%. F,
'	#	3	!&+ &@ G&L	?	!&+ >D S	K	# # /6A E E	W	# # 090 HKD	c	!, G,	o	!+ GL	{	!, @ G,
(	!, 0 G,	4	# # F&C E	@	!&+ !.0 GIL	L	# 0 F&,	X	# # 1:A E E	d	# !? GM	p	"+ /L	¦	Q U
)	%+ 0 %L	5	"&, F&+ G&L	A	!&+ /&? E E	M	$(- 070 E E	Y	# # 2;D E	e	!+ G,	q	!. G?	}	%+ 5 %L
×	1:A	6	!&+ /&+ G&L	B	"&+ /&@ F&L	N	$)# 08B E E	Z	"&. 3<D F&M	f	!+ C E	r	!, E	~	!&L
+	* %C, 4	7	%&. >D E	C	!&+ 0 G&L	▯	"&. 0 0 F&M	[	", 0 F,	g	!. G?	s	!, %L	▒	*** *** ***
,	L	8	!&+ 5&@ G&L	D	"&+ 0 0 F&L	P	"&+ /&L E		# 2:) E	h	# /+ EE	t	* C GL		

COMMUNICATIONS FLOWCHARTS

APPENDIX C

This appendix contains reference information on terminal communication functions. This material consists of the following flowcharts and tables:

- ASCII code table
- ASCII to EBCDIC code conversion table
- Overall point-to-point communications flowchart
- Keyboard communication switches

Table C-1 is a list of the ASCII characters and their decimal equivalents. Tables C-2 and C-3 contain information for converting data between the ASCII and EBCDIC character sets.

The flowchart in figure C-1 illustrates the overall point-to-point communication function. The various configuration parameters (switches) are included in the diagram. Detailed descriptions of the switches are given in Sections V and VII. Figure C-2 illustrates the way the terminal responds to various keyboard switches.

MULTIPOINT COMPATIBILITY

Earlier versions of the Multipoint data communications code provide slightly different features and require a different configuration procedure. The configuration switches affected are on the Keyboard Interface and Multipoint Communications Interface PCA's.

The following backdating information is required for functional compatibility if your terminal uses any of the following ROM circuit part numbers:

1818-0214	1818-0433
1818-0261	1818-0434
1818-0288	1818-0435

The following multipoint features are not available in the earlier code versions:

- Space Compression
- Internal Data Set Ready
- Transparency

Tables C-4 and C-5 contain the switch definitions for the older code versions. The definitions for switches not shown are unchanged. Use these definitions instead of those given in Sections V and VII.

Table C-1. ASCII Character Set

DECIMAL VALUE	GRAPHIC	COMMENTS	ALTERNATE CHARACTER	DECIMAL VALUE	GRAPHIC	COMMENTS
0		Null	$@^c$	64	@	Commercial at
1		Start of heading	A^c	65	A	Uppercase A
2		Start of text	B^c	66	B	Uppercase B
3		End of text	C^c	67	C	Uppercase C
4		End of transmission	D^c	68	D	Uppercase D
5		Enquiry	E^c	69	E	Uppercase E
6		Acknowledge	F^c	70	F	Uppercase F
7		Bell	G^c	71	G	Uppercase G
8		Backspace	H^c	72	H	Uppercase H
9		Horizontal tabulation	I^c	73	I	Uppercase I
10		Line feed	J^c	74	J	Uppercase J
11		Vertical tabulation	K^c	75	K	Uppercase K
12		Form feed	L^c	76	L	Uppercase L
13		Carriage return	M^c	77	M	Uppercase M
14		Shift out	N^c	78	N	Uppercase N
15		Shift in	O^c	79	O	Uppercase O
16		Data link escape	P^c	80	P	Uppercase P
17		Device control 1 (X-ON)	Q^c	81	Q	Uppercase Q
18		Device control 2	R^c	82	R	Uppercase R
19		Device control 3 (X-OFF)	S^c	83	S	Uppercase S
20		Device control 4	T^c	84	T	Uppercase T
21		Negative acknowledge	U^c	85	U	Uppercase U
22		Synchronous idle	V^c	86	V	Uppercase V
23		End of transmission block	W^c	87	W	Uppercase W
24		Cancel	X^c	88	X	Uppercase X
25		End of medium	Y^c	89	Y	Uppercase Y
26		Substitute	Z^c	90	Z	Uppercase Z
27		Escape	$[^c$	[1] 91	[	Opening bracket
28		File separator	$\backslash^c$	[2] 92	\	Reverse slant
29		Group separator	$]^c$	[1] 93	]	Closing bracket
30		Record separator	$\wedge^c$	[1] 94	^	Circumflex
31		Unit separator	$\_^c$	[2] 95	_	Underscore
32		Space (Blank)		96	`	Grave accent
[1]33	!	Exclamation point		97	a	Lowercase a
34	"	Quotation mark		98	b	Lowercase b
35	#	Number sign		99	c	Lowercase c
36	$	Dollar sign		100	d	Lowercase d
37	%	Percent sign		101	e	Lowercase e
38	&	Ampersand		102	f	Lowercase f
39	'	Apostrophe		103	g	Lowercase g
40	(	Opening parenthesis		104	h	Lowercase h
41	)	Closing parenthesis		105	i	Lowercase i
42	*	Asterisk		106	j	Lowercase j
43	+	Plus		107	k	Lowercase k
44	,	Comma		108	l	Lowercase l
45	-	Hyphen (Minus)		109	m	Lowercase m
46	.	Period (Decimal)		110	n	Lowercase n
47	/	Slant		111	o	Lowercase o
48	0	Zero		112	p	Lowercase p
49	1	One		113	q	Lowercase q
50	2	Two		114	r	Lowercase r
51	3	Three		115	s	Lowercase s
52	4	Four		116	t	Lowercase t
53	5	Five		117	u	Lowercase u
54	6	Six		118	v	Lowercase v
55	7	Seven		119	w	Lowercase w
56	8	Eight		120	x	Lowercase x
57	9	Nine		121	y	Lowercase y
58	:	Colon		122	z	Lowercase z
59	;	Semicolon		[2]123	{	Opening (left) brace
60	<	Less than		[2]124	|	Vertical line
61	=	Equals		[2]125	}	Closing (right) brace
62	>	Greater than		[2]126	~	Tilde
63	?	Question mark		127		Delete

Notes: 1. The equivalent EBCDIC character uses a different graphic.
2. No equivalent character exists in EBCDIC.

Table C-2. ASCII (7-Bit) Character Codes

GRAPHIC	DEC	OCT	HEX
NUL	0	0	0
SOH	1	1	1
STX	2	2	2
ETX	3	3	3
EOT	4	4	4
ENQ	5	5	5
ACK	6	6	6
BEL	7	7	7
BS	8	10	8
HT	9	11	9
LF	10	12	A
VT	11	13	B
FF	12	14	C
CR	13	15	D
SO	14	16	E
SI	15	17	F
DLE	16	20	10
DC1	17	21	11
DC2	18	22	12
DC3	19	23	13
DC4	20	24	14
NAK	21	25	15
SYN	22	26	16
ETB	23	27	17
CAN	24	30	18
EM	25	31	19
SUB	26	32	1A
ESC	27	33	1B
FS	28	34	1C
GS	29	35	1D
RS	30	36	1E
US	31	37	1F
SP	32	40	20
!	33	41	21
"	34	42	22
#	35	43	23
$	36	44	24
%	37	45	25
&	38	46	26
'	39	47	27
(	40	50	28
)	41	51	29
*	42	52	2A
+	43	53	2B
,	44	54	2C
-	45	55	2D
.	46	56	2E
/	47	57	2F
0	48	60	30
1	49	61	31
2	50	62	32
3	51	63	33
4	52	64	34
5	53	65	35
6	54	66	36
7	55	67	37
8	56	70	38
9	57	71	39
:	58	72	3A
;	59	73	3B
<	60	74	3C
=	61	75	3D
>	62	76	3E
?	63	77	3F
@	64	100	40
A	65	101	41
B	66	102	42
C	67	103	43
D	68	104	44
E	69	105	45
F	70	106	46
G	71	107	47
H	72	110	48
I	73	111	49
J	74	112	4A
K	75	113	4B
L	76	114	4C
M	77	115	4D
N	78	116	4E
O	79	117	4F
P	80	120	50
Q	81	121	51
R	82	122	52
S	83	123	53
T	84	124	54
U	85	125	55
V	86	126	56
W	87	127	57
X	88	130	58
Y	89	131	59
Z	90	132	5A
[	91	133	5B
\	92	134	5C
]	93	135	5D
^	94	136	5E
_	95	137	5F
`	96	140	60
a	97	141	61
b	98	142	62
c	99	143	63
d	100	144	64
e	101	145	65
f	102	146	66
g	103	147	67
h	104	150	68
i	105	151	69
j	106	152	6A
k	107	153	6B
l	108	154	6C
m	109	155	6D
n	110	156	6E
o	111	157	6F
p	112	160	70
q	113	161	71
r	114	162	72
s	115	163	73
t	116	164	74
u	117	165	75
v	118	166	76
w	119	167	77
x	120	170	78
y	121	171	79
z	122	172	7A
{	123	173	7B
¦	124	174	7C
}	125	175	7D
~	126	176	7E
■	127	177	7F

Table C-3. EBCDIC Character Codes

GRAPHIC	DEC	OCT	HEX
NUL	0	0	0
SOH	1	1	1
STX	2	2	2
ETX	3	3	3
PF	4	4	4
HT	5	5	5
	6	6	6
DEL	7	7	7
	8	10	8
	9	11	9
	10	12	A
VT	11	13	B
FF	12	14	C
CR	13	15	D
SO	14	16	E
SI	15	17	F
DLE	16	20	10
DC1	17	21	11
DC2	18	22	12
TM	19	23	13
RES	20	24	14
NL	21	25	15
BS	22	26	16
IL	23	27	17
CAN	24	30	18
EM	25	31	19
CC	26	32	1A
CU1	27	33	1B
IFS	28	34	1C
IGS	29	35	1D
IRS	30	36	1E
IUS	31	37	1F
DS	32	40	20
SOS	33	41	21
FS	34	42	22
	35	43	23
BYP	36	44	24
LF	37	45	25
ETB	38	46	26
ESC	39	47	27
	40	50	28
	41	51	29
SM	42	52	2A
CU2	43	53	2B
	44	54	2C
ENQ	45	55	2D
ACK	46	56	2E
BEL	47	57	2F
	48	60	30
	49	61	31
SYN	50	62	32
	51	63	33
PN	52	64	34
RS	53	65	35
UC	54	66	36
EOT	55	67	37
	56	70	38
	57	71	39
	58	72	3A
CU3	59	73	3B
DC4	60	74	3C
NAK	61	75	3D
	62	76	3E
SUB	63	77	3F

GRAPHIC	DEC	OCT	HEX
SP	64	100	40
	65	101	41
	66	102	42
	67	103	43
	68	104	44
	69	105	45
	70	106	46
	71	107	47
	72	110	48
	73	111	49
	74	112	4A
.	75	113	4B
<	76	114	4C
(	77	115	4D
+	78	116	4E
[illegible]	79	117	4F
&	80	120	50
	81	121	51
	82	122	52
	83	123	53
	84	124	54
	85	125	55
	86	126	56
	87	127	57
	88	130	58
	89	131	59
!	90	132	5A
$	91	133	5B
*	92	134	5C
)	93	135	5D
;	94	136	5E
¬	95	137	5F
-	96	140	60
/	97	141	61
	98	142	62
	99	143	63
	100	144	64
	101	145	65
	102	146	66
	103	147	67
	104	150	68
	105	151	69
¦	106	152	6A
,	107	153	6B
%	108	154	6C
_	109	155	6D
>	110	156	6E
?	111	157	6F
	112	160	70
	113	161	71
	114	162	72
	115	163	73
	116	164	74
	117	165	75
	118	166	76
	119	167	77
	120	170	78
	121	171	79
:	122	172	7A
#	123	173	7B
@	124	174	7C
'	125	175	7D
=	126	176	7E
"	127	177	7F

Table C-3. EBCDIC Character Codes (Continued)

GRAPHIC	DEC	OCT	HEX
	128	200	80
a	129	201	81
b	130	202	82
c	131	203	83
d	132	204	84
e	133	205	85
f	134	206	86
g	135	207	87
h	136	210	88
i	137	211	89
	138	212	8A
	139	213	8B
	140	214	8C
	141	215	8D
	142	216	8E
	143	217	8F
	144	220	90
j	145	221	91
k	146	222	92
l	147	223	93
m	148	224	94
n	149	225	95
o	150	226	96
p	151	227	97
q	152	230	98
r	153	231	99
	154	232	9A
	155	233	9B
	156	234	9C
	157	235	9D
	158	236	9E
	159	237	9F
	160	240	A0
~	161	241	A1
s	162	242	A2
t	163	243	A3
u	164	244	A4
v	165	245	A5
w	166	246	A6
x	167	247	A7
y	168	250	A8
z	169	251	A9
	170	252	AA
	171	253	AB
	172	254	AC
[	173	255	AD
	174	256	AE
	175	257	AF
	176	260	B0
	177	261	B1
	178	262	B2
	179	263	B3
	180	264	B4
	181	265	B5
	182	266	B6
	183	267	B7
	184	270	B8
	185	271	B9
	186	272	BA
	187	273	BB
	188	274	BC
]	189	275	BD
	190	276	BE
	191	277	BF

GRAPHIC	DEC	OCT	HEX
{	192	300	C0
A	193	301	C1
B	194	302	C2
C	195	303	C3
D	196	304	C4
E	197	305	C5
F	198	306	C6
G	199	307	C7
H	200	310	C8
I	201	311	C9
	202	312	CA
	203	313	CB
	204	314	CC
	205	315	CD
	206	316	CE
	207	317	CF
}	208	320	D0
J	209	321	D1
K	210	322	D2
L	211	323	D3
M	212	324	D4
N	213	325	D5
O	214	326	D6
P	215	327	D7
Q	216	330	D8
R	217	331	D9
	218	332	DA
	219	333	DB
	220	334	DC
	221	335	DD
	222	336	DE
	223	337	DF
\	224	340	E0
	225	341	E1
S	226	342	E2
T	227	343	E3
U	228	344	E4
V	229	345	E5
W	230	346	E6
X	231	347	E7
Y	232	350	E8
Z	233	351	E9
	234	352	EA
	235	353	EB
	236	354	EC
	237	355	ED
	238	356	EE
	239	357	EF
0	240	360	F0
1	241	361	F1
2	242	362	F2
3	243	363	F3
4	244	364	F4
5	245	365	F5
6	246	366	F6
7	247	367	F7
8	248	370	F8
9	249	371	F9
	250	372	FA
	251	373	FB
	252	374	FC
	253	375	FD
	254	376	FE
	255	377	FF

Table C-4. Keyboard Interface Switch Definitions for Earlier Multipoint Code

STRAP	STRAPPING OPTION	NORMAL OPERATION (SWTICH CLOSED)	OPERATION WITH STRAPPING OPTION (SWITCH OPEN)
R	Set Trailing Pad	If in ASCII mode (switch J07 closed on multipoint PCA), sets pad to 177 (octal) + parity. If in EBCDIC mode (switch J07 open on multipoint PCA), sets pad to 377 (octal).	Sets pad to 377 (octal) if any of the following conditions are present: (1) PARITY switch on keyboard is set to NONE. (2) Switch Z on this PCA is open. (3) CRC-16 is selected (switch J06 on multipoint PCA is closed).
S	(not used)		
V	Continuous Carrier	Continuous carrier off indicates that the modem does not have continuous carrier.	Continuous carrier on indicates that the modem does have continuous carrier. Allows firmware to abort operation.
Z	Parity	The PARITY switch on the terminal keyboard is affected as follows: **None:** (Force 0). Send 8 bits and receive 8 bits. Force bit 8 to zero. Check for parity error.† **Odd Parity:** Send 7 bits + odd parity. Receive 7 bits + odd parity. Check for parity error. **Even Parity:** Send 7 bits + even parity. Receive 7 bits + even parity. Check for parity error. †Allows Transparency Mode.	**None:** (Force 1). Send 8 bits and receive 8 bits. Force bit 8 to one. Check for parity error.† **Odd Parity:** Send 7 bits + odd parity. Receive 7 bits + odd parity. Check for parity error.† **Even Parity:** Send 7 bits + even parity. Receive 7 bits + even parity. Check for parity error.†

Table C-5. Multipoint Communications Interface Switch Definitions for Earlier Multipoint Code

STRAP	STRAPPING OPTION	DESCRIPTION
J05	Sync Mode (Asynchronous Interface Only)	**Open:** Enables the insertion and deletion of sync characters to be compatible with a single, generalized data communications driver. **Closed:** Sync Mode disabled.
J15	Block Mode	**Open:** An entire input block must be received correctly before being processed by the terminal firmware. (See Block Check Character.) **Closed:** Each character is processed by the terminal firmware as it is received from the computer.

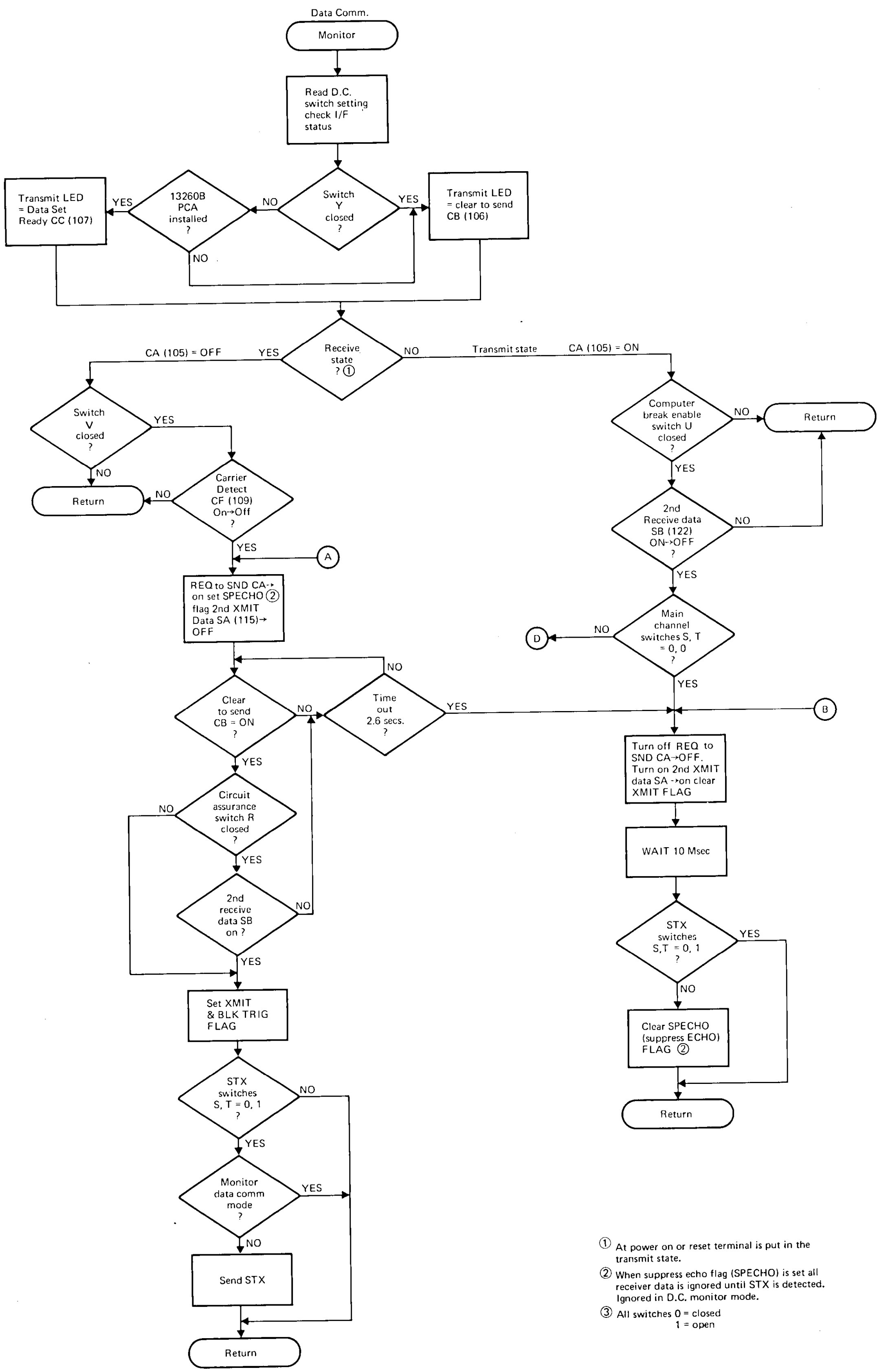


Figure C-1. Point-to-Point Communication Flowcharts (Sheet 1 of 3)

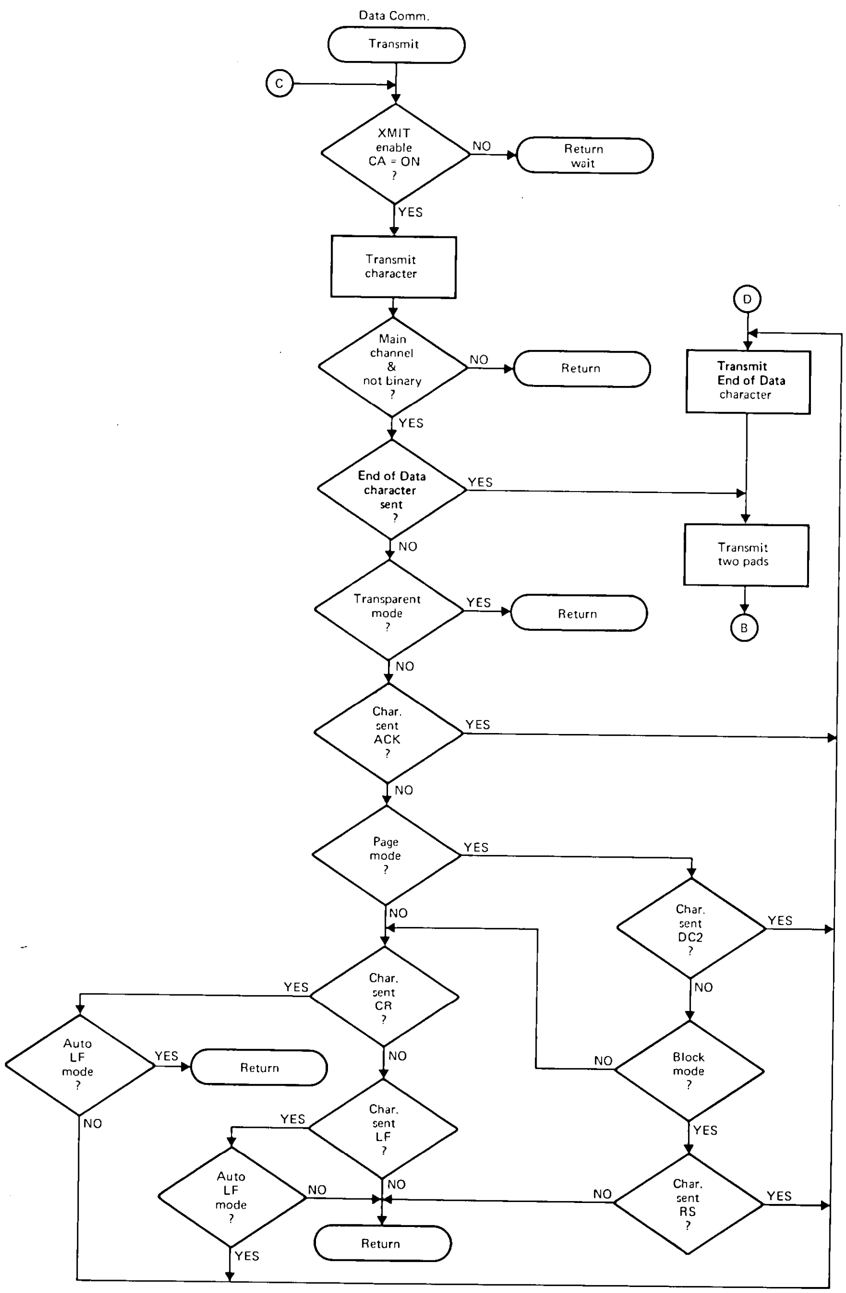


Figure C-1. Point-to-Point Communication Flowcharts (Sheet 2 of 3)

MULTIPLE CHARACTERS TRANSFER STRAP CONTROLS

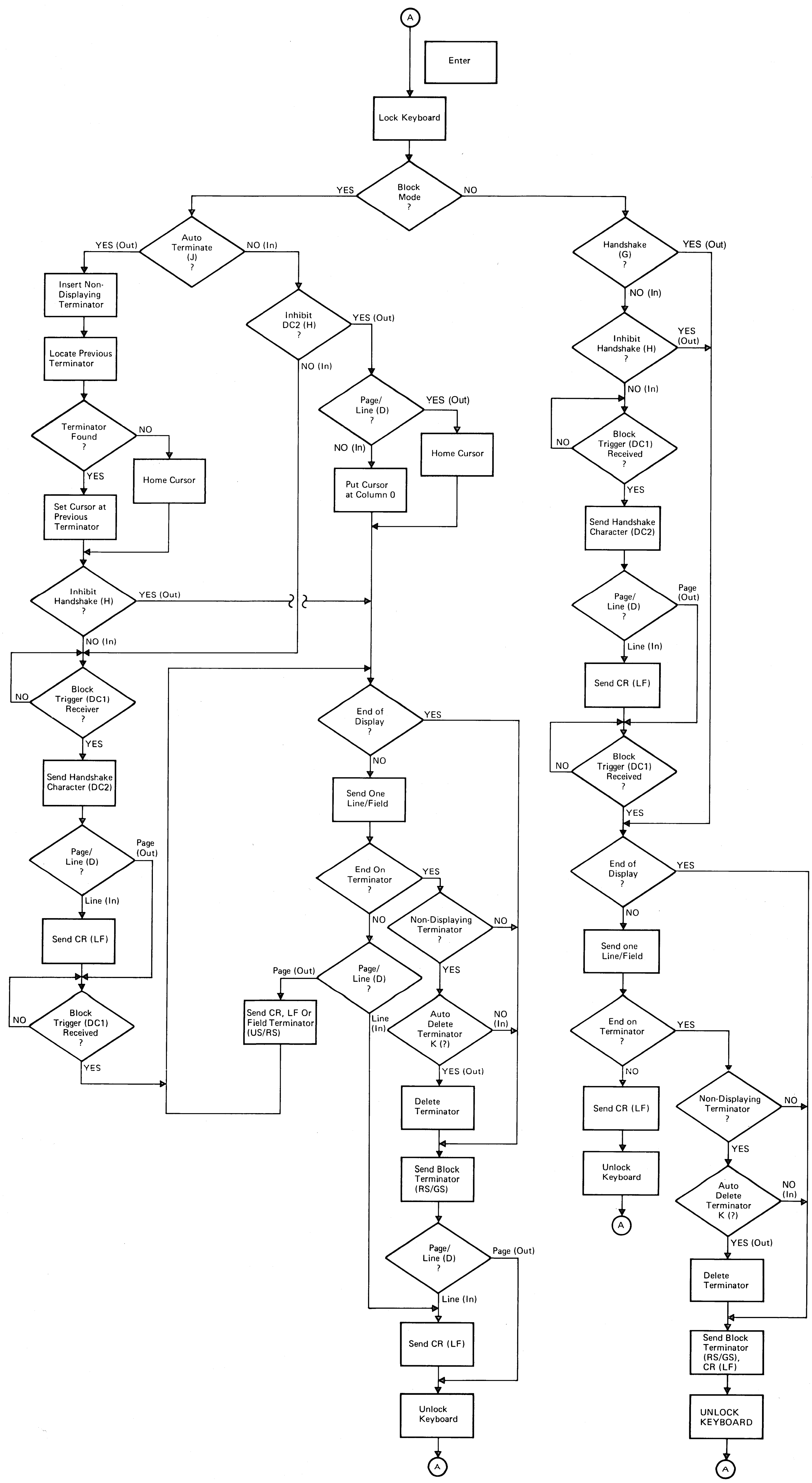


Figure C-2. Keyboard Communication Switches Flowcharts (Sheet 1 of 4)

MULTIPLE CHARACTERS TRANSFER STRAP CONTROLS

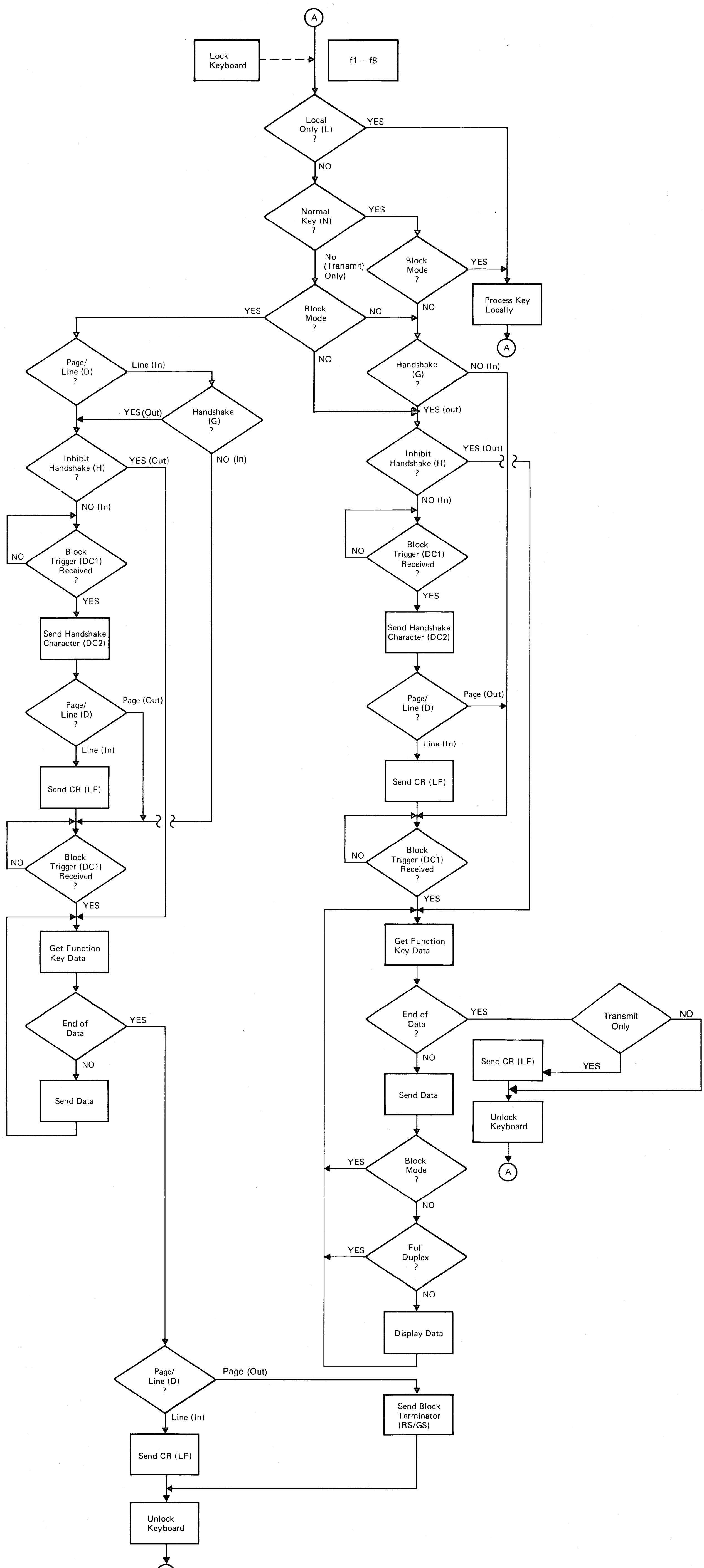


Figure C-2. Keyboard Communication Switches Flowcharts (Sheet 2 of 4)

MULTIPLE CHARACTERS TRANSFER STRAP CONTROLS

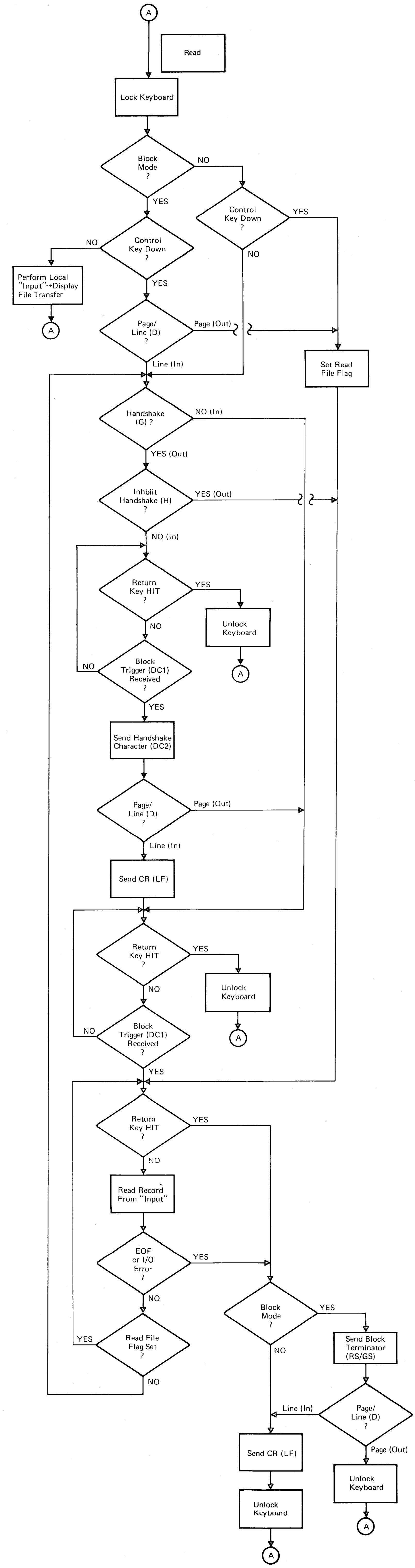


Figure C-2. Keyboard Communication Switches Flowcharts (Sheet 3 of 4)

MULTIPLE CHARACTERS TRANSFER STRAP CONTROLS

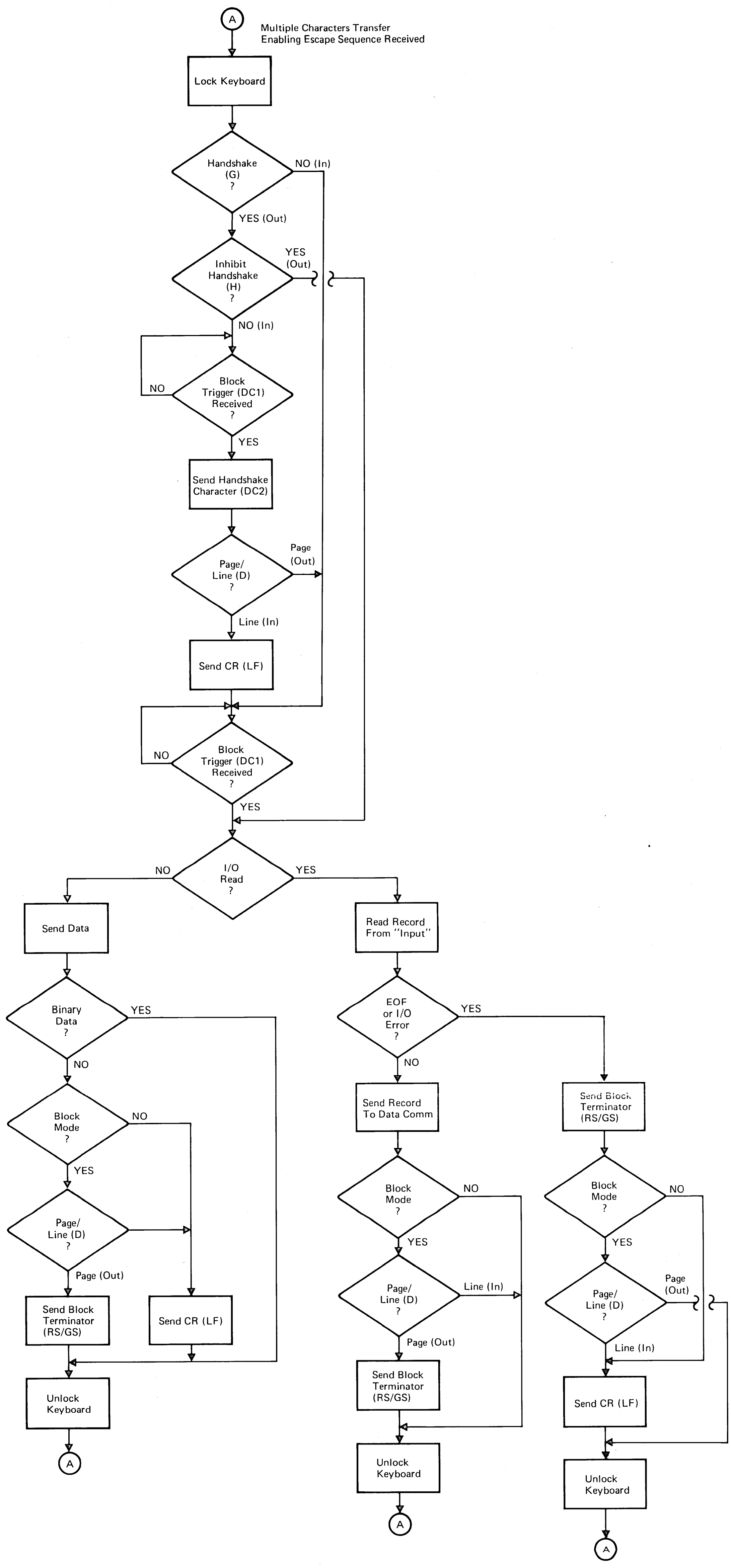


Figure C-2. Keyboard Communication Switches Flowcharts (Sheet 4 of 4)

TAPE CARTRIDGE RETHREADING

APPENDIX D

Tape rethreading is difficult and is not recommended unless the data recorded on the runoff tape must be recovered. Instead, when tape runoff occurs, it is recommended to replace the entire tape cartridge. The rethreading procedures contained in this paragraph are for rethreading tape onto the tape cartridge's left tape hub. If a tape run-off condition occurs from the right tape hub, use the left tape hub rethreading instructions except interchange all right-hand and left-hand instructions and change all counter-clockwise directions to clockwise directions. This procedure requires the use of a small Phillips-head screwdriver. Rethread tape onto the left tape hub as follows:

CAUTION

Whenever the tape cartridge top cover is removed, the spring-loaded door and spring can easily slide off the door pivot post. To prevent loss of parts, ensure that door is always completely seated on its pivot post as long as the tape cartridge top cover and backplate are separated.

a. Remove tape cartridge top cover by removing four screws from backplate with Phillips-head screwdriver.

b. As shown in figure D-1, view A, rethread loose end of tape around right tape guide, through tape cleaner (use tweezers, if necessary), past belt drive puck, outside guide pin, and around left tape guide so that approximately 1-3/4 inches of tape is clear of guide.

c. Hold tape cartridge as shown in figure D-1, view B, so that right hand can be used to rotate belt drive puck and left hand can be used to maintain tape tension at left tape guide.

d. Moisten inside surface of free end of tape and, while maintaining tape tension at left tape guide, rotate belt drive puck counterclockwise to wrap free end of tape around left tape hub until tape reaches point where drive belt touches tape hub.

e. While maintaining tape tension, use any small round-tipped tool to trap free end of tape between drive belt and left tape hub as shown in figure D-1, view C.

f. Rotate belt drive puck counterclockwise until tape is wrapped several times around left tape hub past first set of tape holes (approximately two feet).

g. Replace tape cartridge top cover on backplate and secure in place with four screws.

h. Condition tape [CNTL] [ ] (TAPE TEST), [f_5] (TO: L. TAPE) or [f_6] (TO: R. TAPE).

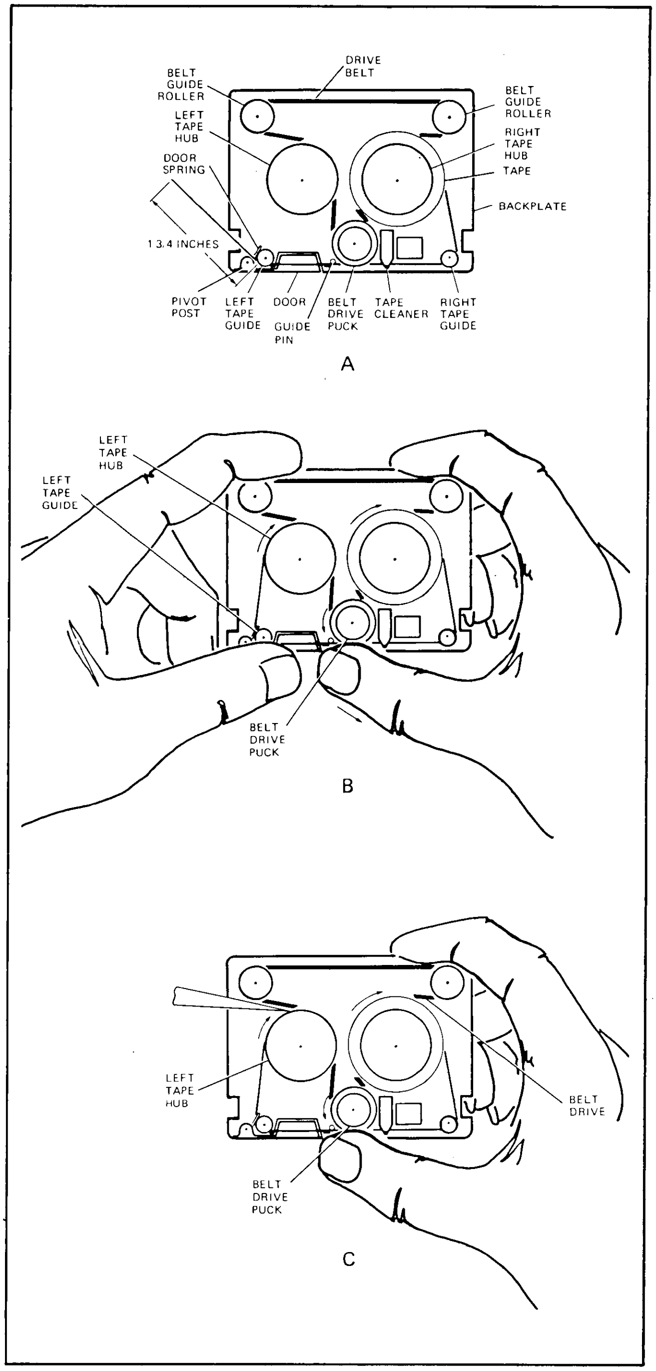


Figure D-1. Tape Cartridge Rethreading

INDEX

HEWLETT PACKARD

02645-90005

Printed in U.S.A.